

# Babel

Version 3.69.2622  
2022/01/19

Johannes L. Braams  
Original author

Javier Bezos  
Current maintainer

Localization and  
internationalization

Unicode

T<sub>E</sub>X

pdfT<sub>E</sub>X

LuaT<sub>E</sub>X

XeT<sub>E</sub>X

# Contents

<b>I</b>	<b>User guide</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>The user interface</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	Monolingual documents . . . . .	4
1.2	Multilingual documents . . . . .	6
1.3	Mostly monolingual documents . . . . .	8
1.4	Modifiers . . . . .	8
1.5	Troubleshooting . . . . .	8
1.6	Plain . . . . .	9
1.7	Basic language selectors . . . . .	9
1.8	Auxiliary language selectors . . . . .	10
1.9	More on selection . . . . .	11
1.10	Shorthands . . . . .	12
1.11	Package options . . . . .	16
1.12	The base option . . . . .	18
1.13	ini files . . . . .	18
1.14	Selecting fonts . . . . .	26
1.15	Modifying a language . . . . .	28
1.16	Creating a language . . . . .	29
1.17	Digits and counters . . . . .	33
1.18	Dates . . . . .	35
1.19	Accessing language info . . . . .	35
1.20	Hyphenation and line breaking . . . . .	36
1.21	Transforms . . . . .	38
1.22	Selection based on BCP 47 tags . . . . .	41
1.23	Selecting scripts . . . . .	42
1.24	Selecting directions . . . . .	43
1.25	Language attributes . . . . .	47
1.26	Hooks . . . . .	47
1.27	Languages supported by babel with ldf files . . . . .	48
1.28	Unicode character properties in luatex . . . . .	49
1.29	Tweaking some features . . . . .	50
1.30	Tips, workarounds, known issues and notes . . . . .	50
1.31	Current and future work . . . . .	51
1.32	Tentative and experimental code . . . . .	52
<b>2</b>	<b>Loading languages with language.dat</b>	<b>52</b>
2.1	Format . . . . .	52
<b>3</b>	<b>The interface between the core of babel and the language definition files</b>	<b>53</b>
3.1	Guidelines for contributed languages . . . . .	54
3.2	Basic macros . . . . .	55
3.3	Skeleton . . . . .	56
3.4	Support for active characters . . . . .	57
3.5	Support for saving macro definitions . . . . .	58
3.6	Support for extending macros . . . . .	58
3.7	Macros common to a number of languages . . . . .	58
3.8	Encoding-dependent strings . . . . .	58
3.9	Executing code based on the selector . . . . .	62
<b>4</b>	<b>Changes</b>	<b>62</b>
4.1	Changes in babel version 3.9 . . . . .	62

<b>II</b>	<b>Source code</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Identification and loading of required files</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>locale directory</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Tools</b>	<b>64</b>
7.1	Multiple languages . . . . .	68
7.2	The Package File ( <code>\LaTeX</code> , <code>babel.sty</code> ) . . . . .	69
7.3	<code>base</code> . . . . .	70
7.4	<code>key=value</code> options and other general option . . . . .	71
7.5	Conditional loading of shorthands . . . . .	73
7.6	Interlude for Plain . . . . .	74
<b>8</b>	<b>Multiple languages</b>	<b>74</b>
8.1	Selecting the language . . . . .	77
8.2	Errors . . . . .	86
8.3	Hooks . . . . .	88
8.4	Setting up language files . . . . .	90
8.5	Shorthands . . . . .	92
8.6	Language attributes . . . . .	101
8.7	Support for saving macro definitions . . . . .	103
8.8	Short tags . . . . .	104
8.9	Hyphens . . . . .	105
8.10	Multiencoding strings . . . . .	106
8.11	Macros common to a number of languages . . . . .	113
8.12	Making glyphs available . . . . .	113
8.12.1	Quotation marks . . . . .	113
8.12.2	Letters . . . . .	115
8.12.3	Shorthands for quotation marks . . . . .	116
8.12.4	Umlauts and tremas . . . . .	117
8.13	Layout . . . . .	118
8.14	Load engine specific macros . . . . .	118
8.15	Creating and modifying languages . . . . .	119
<b>9</b>	<b>Adjusting the Babel behavior</b>	<b>140</b>
9.1	Cross referencing macros . . . . .	142
9.2	Marks . . . . .	145
9.3	Preventing clashes with other packages . . . . .	146
9.3.1	<code>ifthen</code> . . . . .	146
9.3.2	<code>varioref</code> . . . . .	147
9.3.3	<code>hhline</code> . . . . .	147
9.4	Encoding and fonts . . . . .	148
9.5	Basic bidi support . . . . .	149
9.6	Local Language Configuration . . . . .	153
9.7	Language options . . . . .	153
<b>10</b>	<b>The kernel of Babel (<code>babel.def</code>, <code>common</code>)</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Loading hyphenation patterns</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Font handling with <code>fontspec</code></b>	<b>161</b>

<b>13</b>	<b>Hooks for XeTeX and LuaTeX</b>	<b>166</b>
13.1	XeTeX . . . . .	166
13.2	Layout . . . . .	168
13.3	LuaTeX . . . . .	169
13.4	Southeast Asian scripts . . . . .	175
13.5	CJK line breaking . . . . .	177
13.6	Arabic justification . . . . .	179
13.7	Common stuff . . . . .	183
13.8	Automatic fonts and ids switching . . . . .	183
13.9	Bidi . . . . .	188
13.10	Layout . . . . .	190
13.11	Lua: transforms . . . . .	195
13.12	Lua: Auto bidi with basic and basic-r . . . . .	203
<b>14</b>	<b>Data for CJK</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>The ‘nil’ language</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>16</b>	<b>Support for Plain T<sub>E</sub>X (plain.def)</b>	<b>215</b>
16.1	Not renaming hyphen.tex . . . . .	215
16.2	Emulating some L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X features . . . . .	216
16.3	General tools . . . . .	216
16.4	Encoding related macros . . . . .	220
<b>17</b>	<b>Acknowledgements</b>	<b>223</b>

## Troubleshooting

Paragraph ended before \UTFviii@three@octets was complete . . . . .	5
No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for (babel) the language ‘LANG’ into the format . . . . .	6
You are loading directly a language style . . . . .	8
Unknown language ‘LANG’ . . . . .	9
Argument of \language@active@arg” has an extra } . . . . .	13
Package fontspec Warning: ‘Language ‘LANG’ not available for font ‘FONT’ with script ‘SCRIPT’ ‘Default’ language used instead’ . . . . .	28
Package babel Info: The following fonts are not babel standard families . . . . .	28

# Part I

## User guide

**What is this document about?** This user guide focuses on internationalization and localization with  $\LaTeX$  and `pdftex`, `xetex` and `luatex` with the `babel` package. There are also some notes on its use with `e-Plain` and `pdf-Plain`  $\TeX$ . Part II describes the code, and usually it can be ignored.

**What if I'm interested only in the latest changes?** Changes and new features with relation to version 3.8 are highlighted with `New X.XX`, and there are some notes for the latest versions in [the babel site](#). The most recent features can be still unstable.

**Can I help?** Sure! If you are interested in the  $\TeX$  multilingual support, please join the [kadingira mail list](#). You can follow the development of `babel` in [GitHub](#) and make suggestions; feel free to fork it and make pull requests. If you are the author of a package, send to me a few test files which I'll add to mine, so that possible issues can be caught in the development phase.

**It doesn't work for me!** You can ask for help in some forums like [tex.stackexchange](#), but if you have found a bug, I strongly beg you to report it in [GitHub](#), which is much better than just complaining on an e-mail list or a web forum. Remember *warnings are not errors* by themselves, they just warn about possible problems or incompatibilities.

**How can I contribute a new language?** See section 3.1 for contributing a language.

**I only need learn the most basic features.** The first subsections (1.1-1.3) describe the traditional way of loading a language (with `ldf` files), which is usually all you need. The alternative way based on `ini` files, which complements the previous one (it does *not* replace it, although it is still necessary in some languages), is described below; go to 1.13.

**I don't like manuals. I prefer sample files.** This manual contains lots of examples and tips, but in [GitHub](#) there are many [sample files](#).

## 1 The user interface

### 1.1 Monolingual documents

In most cases, a single language is required, and then all you need in  $\LaTeX$  is to load the package using its standard mechanism for this purpose, namely, passing that language as an optional argument. In addition, you may want to set the font and input encodings. Another approach is making the language a global option in order to let other packages detect and use it. This is the standard way in  $\LaTeX$  for an option – in this case a language – to be recognized by several packages.

Many languages are compatible with `xetex` and `luatex`. With them you can use `babel` to localize the documents. When these engines are used, the Latin script is covered by default in current  $\LaTeX$  (provided the document encoding is UTF-8), because the font loader is preloaded and the font is switched to `lmroman`. Other scripts require loading `fontspec`. You may want to set the font attributes with `fontspec`, too.

**EXAMPLE** Here is a simple full example for “traditional”  $\TeX$  engines (see below for `xetex` and `luatex`). The packages `fontenc` and `inputenc` do not belong to `babel`, but they are included in the example because typically you will need them. It assumes UTF-8, the default encoding:

PDFTEX

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}

\usepackage[french]{babel}

\begin{document}

Plus ça change, plus c'est la même chose!

\end{document}
```

Now consider something like:

```
\documentclass[french]{article}
\usepackage{babel}
\usepackage{varioref}
```

With this setting, the package `varioref` will also see the option `french` and will be able to use it.

**EXAMPLE** And now a simple monolingual document in Russian (text from the Wikipedia) with `xetex` or `luatex`. Note neither `fontenc` nor `inputenc` are necessary, but the document should be encoded in UTF-8 and a so-called Unicode font must be loaded (in this example `\babelfont` is used, described below).

LUATEX/XETEX

```
\documentclass[russian]{article}

\usepackage{babel}

\babelfont{rm}{DejaVu Serif}

\begin{document}

Россия, находящаяся на пересечении множества культур, а также
с учётом многонационального характера её населения, — отличается
высокой степенью этнокультурного многообразия и способностью к
межкультурному диалогу.

\end{document}
```

**TROUBLESHOOTING** A common source of trouble is a wrong setting of the input encoding. Depending on the  $\TeX$  version you can get the following somewhat cryptic error:

```
! Paragraph ended before \UTFviii@three@octets was complete.
```

Or the more explanatory:

```
! Package inputenc Error: Invalid UTF-8 byte ...
```

Make sure you set the encoding actually used by your editor.

**NOTE** Because of the way babel has evolved, “language” can refer to (1) a set of hyphenation patterns as preloaded into the format, (2) a package option, (3) an ldf file, and (4) a name used in the document to select a language or dialect. So, a package option refers to a language in a generic way – sometimes it is the actual language name used to select it, sometimes it is a file name loading a language with a different name, sometimes it is a file name loading several languages. Please, read the documentation for specific languages for further info.

**TROUBLESHOOTING** The following warning is about hyphenation patterns, which are not under the direct control of babel:

```
Package babel Warning: No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for
(babel)                the language `LANG' into the format.
(babel)                Please, configure your TeX system to add them and
(babel)                rebuild the format. Now I will use the patterns
(babel)                preloaded for \language=0 instead on input line 57.
```

The document will be typeset, but very likely the text will not be correctly hyphenated. Some languages may be raising this warning wrongly (because they are not hyphenated); it is a bug to be fixed – just ignore it. See the manual of your distribution (MacTeX, MikTeX, TeXLive, etc.) for further info about how to configure it.

**NOTE** With hyperref you may want to set the document language with something like:

```
\usepackage[pdflang=es-MX]{hyperref}
```

This is not currently done by babel and you must set it by hand.

**NOTE** Although it has been customary to recommend placing `\title`, `\author` and other elements printed by `\maketitle` after `\begin{document}`, mainly because of shorthands, it is advisable to keep them in the preamble. Currently there is no real need to use shorthands in those macros.

## 1.2 Multilingual documents

In multilingual documents, just use a list of the required languages as package or class options. The last language is considered the main one, activated by default. Sometimes, the main language changes the document layout (eg, spanish and french).

**EXAMPLE** In  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , the preamble of the document:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[dutch,english]{babel}
```

would tell  $\text{\LaTeX}$  that the document would be written in two languages, Dutch and English, and that English would be the first language in use, and the main one.

You can also set the main language explicitly, but it is discouraged except if there is a real reason to do so:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[main=english,dutch]{babel}
```

Examples of cases where `main` is useful are the following.

**NOTE** Some classes load babel with a hardcoded language option. Sometimes, the main language can be overridden with something like that before `\documentclass`:

```
\PassOptionsToPackage{main=english}{babel}
```

**WARNING** Languages may be set as global and as package option at the same time, but in such a case you should set explicitly the main language with the package option `main`:

```
\documentclass[italian]{book}  
\usepackage[ngerman,main=italian]{babel}
```

**WARNING** In the preamble the main language has *not* been selected, except hyphenation patterns and the name assigned to `\language` (in particular, shorthands, captions and date are not activated). If you need to define boxes and the like in the preamble, you might want to use some of the language selectors described below.

To switch the language there are two basic macros, described below in detail:

`\selectlanguage` is used for blocks of text, while `\foreignlanguage` is for chunks of text inside paragraphs.

**EXAMPLE** A full bilingual document with pdfTeX follows. The main language is french, which is activated when the document begins. It assumes UTF-8:

PDFTEX

```
\documentclass{article}  
  
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}  
  
\usepackage[english,french]{babel}  
  
\begin{document}  
  
Plus ça change, plus c'est la même chose!  
  
\selectlanguage{english}  
  
And an English paragraph, with a short text in  
\foreignlanguage{french}{français}.  
  
\end{document}
```

**EXAMPLE** With xetex and luatex, the following bilingual, single script document in UTF-8 encoding just prints a couple of ‘captions’ and `\today` in Danish and Vietnamese. No additional packages are required.

LUATEX/XETEX

```
\documentclass{article}  
  
\usepackage[vietnamese,danish]{babel}  
  
\begin{document}  
  
\prefacename{} -- \alsoname{} -- \today  
  
\selectlanguage{vietnamese}  
  
\prefacename{} -- \alsoname{} -- \today  
  
\end{document}
```

**NOTE** Once loaded a language, you can select it with the corresponding BCP47 tag. See section 1.22 for further details.



### 1.3 Mostly monolingual documents

**New 3.39** Very often, multilingual documents consist of a main language with small pieces of text in another languages (words, idioms, short sentences). Typically, all you need is to set the line breaking rules and, perhaps, the font. In such a case, babel now does not require declaring these secondary languages explicitly, because the basic settings are loaded on the fly when the language is selected (and also when provided in the optional argument of `\babelfont`, if used.)

This is particularly useful, too, when there are short texts of this kind coming from an external source whose contents are not known on beforehand (for example, titles in a bibliography). At this regard, it is worth remembering that `\babelfont` does *not* load any font until required, so that it can be used just in case.

**EXAMPLE** A trivial document with the default font in English and Spanish, and FreeSerif in Russian is:

LUATEX/XETEX

```
\documentclass[english]{article}
\usepackage{babel}

\babelfont[russian]{rm}{FreeSerif}

\begin{document}

English. \foreignlanguage{russian}{Русский}.
\foreignlanguage{spanish}{Español}.

\end{document}
```

**NOTE** Instead of its name, you may prefer to select the language with the corresponding BCP47 tag. This alternative, however, must be activated explicitly, because a two- or three-letter word is a valid name for a language (eg, `yi`). See section 1.22 for further details.

### 1.4 Modifiers

**New 3.9c** The basic behavior of some languages can be modified when loading babel by means of *modifiers*. They are set after the language name, and are prefixed with a dot (only when the language is set as package option – neither global options nor the main key accepts them). An example is (spaces are not significant and they can be added or removed):<sup>1</sup>

```
\usepackage[latin.medieval, spanish.notilde.lcroman, danish]{babel}
```

Attributes (described below) are considered modifiers, ie, you can set an attribute by including it in the list of modifiers. However, modifiers are a more general mechanism.

### 1.5 Troubleshooting

- Loading directly sty files in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (ie, `\usepackage{⟨language⟩}`) is deprecated and you will get the error:<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>No predefined “axis” for modifiers are provided because languages and their scripts have quite different needs.

<sup>2</sup>In old versions the error read “You have used an old interface to call babel”, not very helpful.

```
! Package babel Error: You are loading directly a language style.
(babel)                This syntax is deprecated and you must use
(babel)                \usepackage[language]{babel}.
```

- Another typical error when using babel is the following:<sup>3</sup>

```
! Package babel Error: Unknown language `#1'. Either you have
(babel)                misspelled its name, it has not been installed,
(babel)                or you requested it in a previous run. Fix its name,
(babel)                install it or just rerun the file, respectively. In
(babel)                some cases, you may need to remove the aux file
```

The most frequent reason is, by far, the latest (for example, you included spanish, but you realized this language is not used after all, and therefore you removed it from the option list). In most cases, the error vanishes when the document is typeset again, but in more severe ones you will need to remove the aux file.

## 1.6 Plain

In e-Plain and pdf-Plain, load languages styles with `\input` and then use `\begindocument` (the latter is defined by babel):

```
\input estonian.sty
\begindocument
```

**WARNING** Not all languages provide a sty file and some of them are not compatible with those formats. Please, refer to [Using babel with Plain](#) for further details.

## 1.7 Basic language selectors

This section describes the commands to be used in the document to switch the language in multilingual documents. In most cases, only the two basic macros `\selectlanguage` and `\foreignlanguage` are necessary. The environments `otherlanguage`, `otherlanguage*` and `hyphenrules` are auxiliary, and described in the next section.

The main language is selected automatically when the document environment begins.

`\selectlanguage`  $\{ \langle language \rangle \}$

When a user wants to switch from one language to another he can do so using the macro `\selectlanguage`. This macro takes the language, defined previously by a language definition file, as its argument. It calls several macros that should be defined in the language definition files to activate the special definitions for the language chosen:

```
\selectlanguage{german}
```

This command can be used as environment, too.

**NOTE** For “historical reasons”, a macro name is converted to a language name without the leading `\`; in other words, `\selectlanguage{\german}` is equivalent to `\selectlanguage{german}`. Using a macro instead of a “real” name is deprecated. **New 3.43** However, if the macro name does not match any language, it will get expanded as expected.

<sup>3</sup>In old versions the error read “You haven’t loaded the language LANG yet”.

**NOTE** Bear in mind `\selectlanguage` can be automatically executed, in some cases, in the auxiliary files, at heads and foots, and after the environment `otherlanguage*`.

**WARNING** If used inside braces there might be some non-local changes, as this would be roughly equivalent to:

```
{\selectlanguage{<inner-language>} ...}\selectlanguage{<outer-language>}
```

If you want a change which is really local, you must enclose this code with an additional grouping level.

**WARNING** There are a couple of issues related to the way the language information is written to the auxiliary files:

- `\selectlanguage` should not be used inside some boxed environments (like floats or minipage) to switch the language if you need the information written to the aux be correctly synchronized. This rarely happens, but if it were the case, you must use `otherlanguage` instead.
- In addition, this macro inserts a `\write` in vertical mode, which may break the vertical spacing in some cases (for example, between lists). **New 3.64** The behavior can be adjusted with `\babeladjust{select.write=<mode>}`, where `<mode>` is `shift` (which shifts the skips down and adds a `\penalty`); `keep` (the default – with it the `\write` and the skips are kept in the order they are written), and `omit` (which may seem a too drastic solution, because nothing is written, but more often than not this command is applied to more or less shorts texts with no sectioning or similar commands and therefore no language synchronization is necessary).

**`\foreignlanguage`** [*<option-list>*]{*<language>*}{*<text>*}

The command `\foreignlanguage` takes two arguments; the second argument is a phrase to be typeset according to the rules of the language named in its first one.

This command (1) only switches the extra definitions and the hyphenation rules for the language, *not* the names and dates, (2) does not send information about the language to auxiliary files (i.e., the surrounding language is still in force), and (3) it works even if the language has not been set as package option (but in such a case it only sets the hyphenation patterns and a warning is shown). With the `bidir` option, it also enters in horizontal mode (this is not done always for backwards compatibility), and since it is meant for phrases only the text direction (and not the paragraph one) is set.

**New 3.44** As already said, captions and dates are not switched. However, with the optional argument you can switch them, too. So, you can write:

```
\foreignlanguage[date]{polish}{\today}
```

In addition, captions can be switched with `captions` (or both, of course, with `date`, `captions`). Until 3.43 you had to write something like `{\selectlanguage{...} ...}`, which was not always the most convenient way.

## 1.8 Auxiliary language selectors

**`\begin{otherlanguage}`** {*<language>*} ... **`\end{otherlanguage}`**

The environment `otherlanguage` does basically the same as `\selectlanguage`, except that language change is (mostly) local to the environment.

Actually, there might be some non-local changes, as this environment is roughly equivalent to:

```

\begingroup
\selectlanguage{<inner-language>}
...
\endgroup
\selectlanguage{<outer-language>}

```

If you want a change which is really local, you must enclose this environment with an additional grouping, like braces {}.

Spaces after the environment are ignored.

`\begin{otherlanguage*}` [*<option-list>*] {*<language>*} ... `\end{otherlanguage*}`

Same as `\foreignlanguage` but as environment. Spaces after the environment are *not* ignored.

This environment was originally intended for intermixing left-to-right typesetting with right-to-left typesetting in engines not supporting a change in the writing direction inside a line. However, by default it never complied with the documented behavior and it is just a version as environment of `\foreignlanguage`, except when the option `bidi` is set – in this case, `\foreignlanguage` emits a `\leavevmode`, while `otherlanguage*` does not.

## 1.9 More on selection

`\babeltags` {*<tag1>* = *<language1>*, *<tag2>* = *<language2>*, ...}

**New 3.9i** In multilingual documents with many language-switches the commands above can be cumbersome. With this tool shorter names can be defined. It adds nothing really new – it is just syntactical sugar.

It defines `\text{<tag1>}{<text>}` to be `\foreignlanguage{<language1>}{<text>}`, and `\begin{<tag1>}` to be `\begin{otherlanguage*}{<language1>}`, and so on. Note `\<tag1>` is also allowed, but remember to set it locally inside a group.

**WARNING** There is a clear drawback to this feature, namely, the ‘prefix’ `\text...` is heavily overloaded in  $\text{\LaTeX}$  and conflicts with existing macros may arise (`\textlatin`, `\textbar`, `\textit`, `\textcolor` and many others). The same applies to environments, because `arabic` conflicts with `\arabic`. Furthermore, and because of this overloading, detecting the language of a chunk of text by external tools can become unfeasible. Except if there is a reason for this ‘syntactical sugar’, the best option is to stick to the default selectors or to define your own alternatives.

**EXAMPLE** With

```
\babeltags{de = german}
```

you can write

```
text \textde{German text} text
```

and

```

text
\begin{de}
  German text
\end{de}
text

```

**NOTE** Something like `\babeltags{finnish = finnish}` is legitimate – it defines `\textfinnish` and `\finnish` (and, of course, `\begin{finnish}`).

**NOTE** Actually, there may be another advantage in the ‘short’ syntax `\text{tag}`, namely, it is not affected by `\MakeUppercase` (while `\foreignlanguage` is).

`\babelensure` [`include=<commands>`], `exclude=<commands>`], `fontenc=<encoding>`]{<language>}

**New 3.9i** Except in a few languages, like russian, captions and dates are just strings, and do not switch the language. That means you should set it explicitly if you want to use them, or hyphenation (and in some cases the text itself) will be wrong. For example:

```
\foreignlanguage{russian}{text \foreignlanguage{polish}{\seename} text}
```

Of course,  $\TeX$  can do it for you. To avoid switching the language all the while, `\babelensure` redefines the captions for a given language to wrap them with a selector:

```
\babelensure{polish}
```

By default only the basic captions and `\today` are redefined, but you can add further macros with the key `include` in the optional argument (without commas). Macros not to be modified are listed in `exclude`. You can also enforce a font encoding with the option `fontenc`.<sup>4</sup> A couple of examples:

```
\babelensure[include=\Today]{spanish}  
\babelensure[fontenc=T5]{vietnamese}
```

They are activated when the language is selected (at the `afterextras` event), and it makes some assumptions which could not be fulfilled in some languages. Note also you should include only macros defined by the language, not global macros (eg, `\TeX` or `\dag`). With `ini` files (see below), captions are ensured by default.

## 1.10 Shorthands

A *shorthand* is a sequence of one or two characters that expands to arbitrary  $\TeX$  code. Shorthands can be used for different kinds of things; for example: (1) in some languages shorthands such as "a are defined to be able to hyphenate the word if the encoding is OT1; (2) in some languages shorthands such as ! are used to insert the right amount of white space; (3) several kinds of discretionaries and breaks can be inserted easily with "-", "=", etc. The package `inputenc` as well as `xetex` and `luatex` have alleviated entering non-ASCII characters, but minority languages and some kinds of text can still require characters not directly available on the keyboards (and sometimes not even as separated or precomposed Unicode characters). As to the point 2, now `pdfTeX` provides `\knbcode`, and `luatex` can manipulate the glyph list. Tools for point 3 can be still very useful in general. There are four levels of shorthands: *user*, *language*, *system*, and *language user* (by order of precedence). In most cases, you will use only shorthands provided by languages.

**NOTE** Keep in mind the following:

1. Activated chars used for two-char shorthands cannot be followed by a closing brace `}` and the spaces following are gobbled. With one-char shorthands (eg, `:`), they are preserved.

---

<sup>4</sup>With it, encoded strings may not work as expected.

2. If on a certain level (system, language, user, language user) there is a one-char shorthand, two-char ones starting with that char and on the same level are ignored.
3. Since they are active, a shorthand cannot contain the same character in its definition (except if deactivated with, eg, `\string`).

**TROUBLESHOOTING** A typical error when using shorthands is the following:

```
! Argument of \language@active@arg" has an extra }.
```

It means there is a closing brace just after a shorthand, which is not allowed (eg, `"}`). Just add `{}` after (eg, `"{}}`).

`\shorthandon` `{⟨shorthands-list⟩}`  
`\shorthandoff` `*{⟨shorthands-list⟩}`

It is sometimes necessary to switch a shorthand character off temporarily, because it must be used in an entirely different way. For this purpose, the user commands `\shorthandoff` and `\shorthandon` are provided. They each take a list of characters as their arguments. The command `\shorthandoff` sets the `\catcode` for each of the characters in its argument to other (12); the command `\shorthandon` sets the `\catcode` to active (13). Both commands only work on ‘known’ shorthand characters.

**New 3.9a** However, `\shorthandoff` does not behave as you would expect with characters like `~` or `^`, because they usually are not “other”. For them `\shorthandoff*` is provided, so that with

```
\shorthandoff*{~^}
```

`~` is still active, very likely with the meaning of a non-breaking space, and `^` is the superscript character. The catcodes used are those when the shorthands are defined, usually when language files are loaded.

If you do not need shorthands, or prefer an alternative approach of your own, you may want to switch them off with the package option `shorthands=off`, as described below.

**WARNING** It is worth emphasizing these macros are meant for temporary changes. Whenever possible and if there are not conflicts with other packages, shorthands must be always enabled (or disabled).

`\usesshorthands` `*{⟨char⟩}`

The command `\usesshorthands` initiates the definition of user-defined shorthand sequences. It has one argument, the character that starts these personal shorthands.

**New 3.9a** User shorthands are not always alive, as they may be deactivated by languages (for example, if you use `"` for your user shorthands and switch from german to french, they stop working). Therefore, a starred version `\usesshorthands*{⟨char⟩}` is provided, which makes sure shorthands are always activated.

Currently, if the package option `shorthands` is used, you must include any character to be activated with `\usesshorthands`. This restriction will be lifted in a future release.

`\defineshorthand` `[⟨language⟩,⟨language⟩,...]{⟨shorthand⟩}{⟨code⟩}`

The command `\defineshorthand` takes two arguments: the first is a one- or two-character shorthand sequence, and the second is the code the shorthand should expand to.

**New 3.9a** An optional argument allows to (re)define language and system shorthands (some languages do not activate shorthands, so you may want to add

`\languageshorthands{⟨lang⟩}` to the corresponding `\extras⟨lang⟩`, as explained below). By default, user shorthands are (re)defined. User shorthands override language ones, which in turn override system shorthands. Language-dependent user shorthands (new in 3.9) take precedence over “normal” user shorthands.

**EXAMPLE** Let’s assume you want a unified set of shorthand for discretionaries (languages do not define shorthands consistently, and “-”, “\”, “=” have different meanings). You can start with, say:

```
\usesshorthands*{"}
\defineshorthand{"*"}{\babelhyphen{soft}}
\defineshorthand{"-"}{\babelhyphen{hard}}
```

However, the behavior of hyphens is language-dependent. For example, in languages like Polish and Portuguese, a hard hyphen inside compound words are repeated at the beginning of the next line. You can then set:

```
\defineshorthand[*polish,*portuguese]{"-"}{\babelhyphen{repeat}}
```

Here, options with `*` set a language-dependent user shorthand, which means the generic one above only applies for the rest of languages; without `*` they would (re)define the language shorthands instead, which are overridden by user ones.

Now, you have a single unified shorthand (“-”), with a content-based meaning (‘compound word hyphen’) whose visual behavior is that expected in each context.

## `\languageshorthands` {⟨language⟩}

The command `\languageshorthands` can be used to switch the shorthands on the language level. It takes one argument, the name of a language or none (the latter does what its name suggests).<sup>5</sup> Note that for this to work the language should have been specified as an option when loading the babel package. For example, you can use in english the shorthands defined by ngerman with

```
\addto\extrasenglish{\languageshorthands{ngerman}}
```

(You may also need to activate them as user shorthands in the preamble with, for example, `\usesshorthands` or `\usesshorthands*`.)

**EXAMPLE** Very often, this is a more convenient way to deactivate shorthands than `\shorthandoff`, for example if you want to define a macro to easy typing phonetic characters with tipa:

```
\newcommand{\myipa}[1]{\{\languageshorthands{none}\tipaencoding#1}}
```

## `\babelshorthand` {⟨shorthand⟩}

With this command you can use a shorthand even if (1) not activated in shorthands (in this case only shorthands for the current language are taken into account, ie, not user shorthands), (2) turned off with `\shorthandoff` or (3) deactivated with the internal `\bbl@deactivate`; for example, `\babelshorthand{"u}` or `\babelshorthand{:}`. (You can conveniently define your own macros, or even your own user shorthands provided they do not overlap.)

<sup>5</sup>Actually, any name not corresponding to a language group does the same as none. However, follow this convention because it might be enforced in future releases of babel to catch possible errors.

**EXAMPLE** Since by default shorthands are not activated until `\begin{document}`, you may use this macro when defining the `\title` in the preamble:

```
\title{Documento científico\babelshorthand{"-}técnico}
```

For your records, here is a list of shorthands, but you must double check them, as they may change:<sup>6</sup>

**Languages with no shorthands** Croatian, English (any variety), Indonesian, Hebrew, Interlingua, Irish, Lower Sorbian, Malaysian, North Sami, Romanian, Scottish, Welsh  
**Languages with only " as defined shorthand character** Albanian, Bulgarian, Danish, Dutch, Finnish, German (old and new orthography, also Austrian), Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese (also Brazilian), Russian, Serbian (with Latin script), Slovene, Swedish, Ukrainian, Upper Sorbian

**Basque** " ' ~  
**Breton** : ; ? !  
**Catalan** " ' `   
**Czech** " -  
**Esperanto** ^  
**Estonian** " ~  
**French** (all varieties) : ; ? !  
**Galician** " . ' ~ < >  
**Greek** ~  
**Hungarian** `   
**Kurmanji** ^  
**Latin** " ^ =  
**Slovak** " ^ ' -  
**Spanish** " . < > ' ~  
**Turkish** : ! =

In addition, the babel core declares ~ as a one-char shorthand which is let, like the standard ~, to a non breaking space.<sup>7</sup>

`\ifbabelshorthand`  $\{\langle character \rangle\}\{\langle true \rangle\}\{\langle false \rangle\}$

**New 3.23** Tests if a character has been made a shorthand.

`\aliasshorthand`  $\{\langle original \rangle\}\{\langle alias \rangle\}$

The command `\aliasshorthand` can be used to let another character perform the same functions as the default shorthand character. If one prefers for example to use the character / over " in typing Polish texts, this can be achieved by entering `\aliasshorthand{"}{/}`. For the reasons in the warning below, usage of this macro is not recommended.

**NOTE** The substitute character must *not* have been declared before as shorthand (in such a case, `\aliasshorthands` is ignored).

**EXAMPLE** The following example shows how to replace a shorthand by another

---

<sup>6</sup>Thanks to Enrico Gregorio

<sup>7</sup>This declaration serves to nothing, but it is preserved for backward compatibility.



```
\aliasshorthand{~}{^}
\AtBeginDocument{\shorthandoff*{~}}
```

**WARNING** Shorthands remember somehow the original character, and the fallback value is that of the latter. So, in this example, if no shorthand is found, `^` expands to a non-breaking space, because this is the value of `~` (internally, `^` still calls `\active@char~` or `\normal@char~`). Furthermore, if you change the system value of `^` with `\defineshorthand` nothing happens.

## 1.11 Package options

**New 3.9a** These package options are processed before language options, so that they are taken into account irrespective of its order. The first three options have been available in previous versions.

**KeepShorthandsActive** Tells babel not to deactivate shorthands after loading a language file, so that they are also available in the preamble.

**activeacute** For some languages babel supports this option to set `'` as a shorthand in case it is not done by default.

**activegrave** Same for ```.

**shorthands=** `<char><char>... | off`

The only language shorthands activated are those given, like, eg:

```
\usepackage[esperanto,french,shorthands=:;!]{babel}
```

If `'` is included, `activeacute` is set; if ``` is included, `activegrave` is set. Active characters (like `~`) should be preceded by `\string` (otherwise they will be expanded by  $\TeX$  before they are passed to the package and therefore they will not be recognized); however, `t` is provided for the common case of `~` (as well as `c` for not so common case of the comma). With `shorthands=off` no language shorthands are defined. As some languages use this mechanism for tools not available otherwise, a macro `\babelshorthand` is defined, which allows using them; see above.

**safe=** `none | ref | bib`

Some  $\TeX$  macros are redefined so that using shorthands is safe. With `safe=bib` only `\nocite`, `\bibcite` and `\bibitem` are redefined. With `safe=ref` only `\newlabel`, `\ref` and `\pageref` are redefined (as well as a few macros from `varioref` and `ifthen`).

With `safe=none` no macro is redefined. This option is strongly recommended, because a good deal of incompatibilities and errors are related to these redefinitions. As of

**New 3.34**, in  $\epsilon\TeX$  based engines (ie, almost every engine except the oldest ones) shorthands can be used in these macros (formerly you could not).

**math=** `active | normal`

Shorthands are mainly intended for text, not for math. By setting this option with the value `normal` they are deactivated in math mode (default is `active`) and things like  $\{a'\}$  (a closing brace after a shorthand) are not a source of trouble anymore.

- config=** `<file>`  
Load `<file>.cfg` instead of the default config file `bblopts.cfg` (the file is loaded even with `noconfigs`).
- main=** `<language>`  
Sets the main language, as explained above, ie, this language is always loaded last. If it is not given as package or global option, it is added to the list of requested languages.
- headfoot=** `<language>`  
By default, headlines and footlines are not touched (only marks), and if they contain language-dependent macros (which is not usual) there may be unexpected results. With this option you may set the language in heads and foots.
- noconfigs** Global and language default config files are not loaded, so you can make sure your document is not spoilt by an unexpected `.cfg` file. However, if the key `config` is set, this file is loaded.
- showlanguages** Prints to the log the list of languages loaded when the format was created: number (remember dialects can share it), name, hyphenation file and exceptions file.
- nocase** New 3.9l Language settings for uppercase and lowercase mapping (as set by `\SetCase`) are ignored. Use only if there are incompatibilities with other packages.
- silent** New 3.9l No warnings and no *infos* are written to the log file.<sup>8</sup>
- strings=** `generic` | `unicode` | `encoded` | `<label>` | `<font encoding>`  
Selects the encoding of strings in languages supporting this feature. Predefined labels are `generic` (for traditional  $\TeX$ , LICR and ASCII strings), `unicode` (for engines like `xetex` and `luatex`) and `encoded` (for special cases requiring mixed encodings). Other allowed values are font encoding codes (T1, T2A, LGR, L7X...), but only in languages supporting them. Be aware with encoded captions are protected, but they work in `\MakeUppercase` and the like (this feature misuses some internal  $\LaTeX$  tools, so use it only as a last resort).
- hyphenmap=** `off` | `first` | `select` | `other` | `other*`  
New 3.9g Sets the behavior of case mapping for hyphenation, provided the language defines it.<sup>9</sup> It can take the following values:
- off** deactivates this feature and no case mapping is applied;
  - first** sets it at the first switching commands in the current or parent scope (typically, when the aux file is first read and at `\begin{document}`}, but also the first `\selectlanguage` in the preamble), and it's the default if a single language option has been stated;<sup>10</sup>
  - select** sets it only at `\selectlanguage`;
  - other** also sets it at `otherlanguage`;
  - other\*** also sets it at `otherlanguage*` as well as in heads and foots (if the option `headfoot` is used) and in auxiliary files (ie, at `\select@language`), and it's the default if several

<sup>8</sup>You can use alternatively the package `silence`.

<sup>9</sup>Turned off in plain.

<sup>10</sup>Duplicated options count as several ones.

language options have been stated. The option `first` can be regarded as an optimized version of `other*` for monolingual documents.<sup>11</sup>

**bidi=** `default | basic | basic-r | bidi-l | bidi-r`

**New 3.14** Selects the bidi algorithm to be used in `luatex` and `xetex`. See sec. 1.24.

**layout=**

**New 3.16** Selects which layout elements are adapted in bidi documents. See sec. 1.24.

## 1.12 The base option

With this package option `babel` just loads some basic macros (those in `switch.def`), defines `\AfterBabelLanguage` and exits. It also selects the hyphenation patterns for the last language passed as option (by its name in `language.dat`). There are two main uses: classes and packages, and as a last resort in case there are, for some reason, incompatible languages. It can be used if you just want to select the hyphenation patterns of a single language, too.

**\AfterBabelLanguage** `{⟨option-name⟩}{⟨code⟩}`

This command is currently the only provided by `base`. Executes `⟨code⟩` when the file loaded by the corresponding package option is finished (at `\ldf@finish`). The setting is global. So

```
\AfterBabelLanguage{french}{...}
```

does ... at the end of `french.ldf`. It can be used in `ldf` files, too, but in such a case the code is executed only if `⟨option-name⟩` is the same as `\CurrentOption` (which could not be the same as the option name as set in `\usepackage!`).

**EXAMPLE** Consider two languages `foo` and `bar` defining the same `\macro` with `\newcommand`. An error is raised if you attempt to load both. Here is a way to overcome this problem:

```
\usepackage[base]{babel}
\AfterBabelLanguage{foo}{%
  \let\macroFoo\macro
  \let\macro\relax}
\usepackage[foo,bar]{babel}
```

**WARNING** Currently this option is not compatible with languages loaded on the fly.

## 1.13 ini files

An alternative approach to define a language (or, more precisely, a *locale*) is by means of an `ini` file. Currently `babel` provides about 200 of these files containing the basic data required for a locale.

`ini` files are not meant only for `babel`, and they have been devised as a resource for other packages. To easy interoperability between  $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$  and other systems, they are identified with the BCP 47 codes as preferred by the Unicode Common Locale Data Repository, which was used as source for most of the data provided by these files, too (the main exception being the `\...name` strings).

<sup>11</sup>Providing `foreign` is pointless, because the case mapping applied is that at the end of the paragraph, but if either `xetex` or `luatex` change this behavior it might be added. On the other hand, `other` is provided even if I [JBL] think it isn't really useful, but who knows.

Most of them set the date, and many also the captions (Unicode and LICR). They will be evolving with the time to add more features (something to keep in mind if backward compatibility is important). The following section shows how to make use of them by means of `\babelprovide`. In other words, `\babelprovide` is mainly meant for auxiliary tasks, and as alternative when the `ldf`, for some reason, does work as expected.

**EXAMPLE** Although Georgian has its own `ldf` file, here is how to declare this language with an `ini` file in Unicode engines.

LUATEX/XETEX

```
\documentclass{book}

\usepackage{babel}
\babelprovide[import, main]{georgian}

\babelfont{rm}[Renderer=Harfbuzz]{DejaVu Sans}

\begin{document}

\tableofcontents

\chapter{სამზარეულო და სუფრის ტრადიციები}

ქართული ტრადიციული სამზარეულო ერთ-ერთი უმდიდრესია მთელ მსოფლიოში.

\end{document}
```

**New 3.49** Alternatively, you can tell `babel` to load all or some languages passed as options with `\babelprovide` and not from the `ldf` file in a few typical cases. Thus, `provide=*` means ‘load the main language with the `\babelprovide` mechanism instead of the `ldf` file’ applying the basic features, which in this case means `import, main`. There are (currently) three options:

- `provide=*` is the option just explained, for the main language;
- `provide+=*` is the same for additional languages (the main language is still the `ldf` file);
- `provide*=*` is the same for all languages, ie, main and additional.

**EXAMPLE** The preamble in the previous example can be more compactly written as:

```
\documentclass{book}
\usepackage[georgian, provide=*]{babel}
\babelfont{rm}[Renderer=Harfbuzz]{DejaVu Sans}
```

Or also:

```
\documentclass[georgian]{book}
\usepackage[provide=*]{babel}
\babelfont{rm}[Renderer=Harfbuzz]{DejaVu Sans}
```

**NOTE** The `ini` files just define and set some parameters, but the corresponding behavior is not always implemented. Also, there are some limitations in the engines. A few remarks follow (which could no longer be valid when you read this manual, if the packages involved had been updated). The `Harfbuzz` renderer has still some issues, so as a rule of thumb prefer the default renderer, and resort to `Harfbuzz` only if the former does not work for you. Fortunately, fonts can be loaded twice with different renderers; for example:

```
\babelfont[spanish]{rm}{FreeSerif}
\babelfont[hindi]{rm}[Renderer=Harfbuzz]{FreeSerif}
```

**Arabic** Monolingual documents mostly work in luatex, but it must be fine tuned, particularly graphical elements like picture. In xetex babel resorts to the bidi package, which seems to work.

**Hebrew** Niqqud marks seem to work in both engines, but depending on the font cantillation marks might be misplaced (xetex or luatex with Harfbuzz seems better, but still problematic).

**Devanagari** In luatex and the the default renderer many fonts work, but some others do not, the main issue being the ‘ra’. You may need to set explicitly the script to either deva or dev2, eg:

```
\newfontscript{Devanagari}{deva}
```

Other Indic scripts are still under development in the default luatex renderer, but should work with `Renderer=Harfbuzz`. They also work with xetex, although unlike with luatex fine tuning the font behavior is not always possible.

**Southeast scripts** Thai works in both luatex and xetex, but line breaking differs (rules can be modified in luatex; they are hard-coded in xetex). Lao seems to work, too, but there are no patterns for the latter in luatex. Khemer clusters are rendered wrongly with the default renderer. The comment about Indic scripts and lualatex also applies here. Some quick patterns can help, with something similar to:

```
\babelprovide[import, hyphenrules=+]{lao}
\babelpatterns[lao]{ໂ ນ ມ ລ ອ ນ ງ ນ າ} % Random
```

**East Asia scripts** Settings for either Simplified or Traditional should work out of the box, with basic line breaking with any renderer. Although for a few words and shorts texts the ini files should be fine, CJK texts are best set with a dedicated framework (CJK, luatexja, kotex, CTeX, etc.). This is what the class `ltjbook` does with luatex, which can be used in conjunction with the `ldf` for japanese, because the following piece of code loads luatexja:

```
\documentclass[japanese]{ltjbook}
\usepackage{babel}
```

**Latin, Greek, Cyrillic** Combining chars with the default luatex font renderer might be wrong; on then other hand, with the Harfbuzz renderer diacritics are stacked correctly, but many hyphenations points are discarded (this bug seems related to kerning, so it depends on the font). With xetex both combining characters and hyphenation work as expected (not quite, but in most cases it works; the problem here are font clusters).

**NOTE** Wikipedia defines a *locale* as follows: “In computing, a locale is a set of parameters that defines the user’s language, region and any special variant preferences that the user wants to see in their user interface. Usually a locale identifier consists of at least a language code and a country/region code.” Babel is moving gradually from the old and fuzzy concept of *language* to the more modern of *locale*. Note each locale is by itself a separate “language”, which explains why there are so many files. This is on purpose, so that possible variants can be created and/or redefined easily.

Here is the list (u means Unicode captions, and l means LICR captions):

---

af	Afrikaans <sup>ul</sup>	as	Assamese
agq	Aghem	asa	Asu
ak	Akan	ast	Asturian <sup>ul</sup>
am	Amharic <sup>ul</sup>	az-Cyrl	Azerbaijani
ar	Arabic <sup>ul</sup>	az-Latn	Azerbaijani
ar-DZ	Arabic <sup>ul</sup>	az	Azerbaijani <sup>ul</sup>
ar-MA	Arabic <sup>ul</sup>	bas	Basaa
ar-SY	Arabic <sup>ul</sup>	be	Belarusian <sup>ul</sup>

bem	Bemba	fr-CA	French <sup>ul</sup>
bez	Bena	fr-CH	French <sup>ul</sup>
bg	Bulgarian <sup>ul</sup>	fr-LU	French <sup>ul</sup>
bm	Bambara	fur	Friulian <sup>ul</sup>
bn	Bangla <sup>ul</sup>	fy	Western Frisian
bo	Tibetan <sup>u</sup>	ga	Irish <sup>ul</sup>
brx	Bodo	gd	Scottish Gaelic <sup>ul</sup>
bs-Cyrl	Bosnian	gl	Galician <sup>ul</sup>
bs-Latn	Bosnian <sup>ul</sup>	grc	Ancient Greek <sup>ul</sup>
bs	Bosnian <sup>ul</sup>	gsw	Swiss German
ca	Catalan <sup>ul</sup>	gu	Gujarati
ce	Chechen	guz	Gusii
cgg	Chiga	gv	Manx
chr	Cherokee	ha-GH	Hausa
ckb	Central Kurdish	ha-NE	Hausa <sup>l</sup>
cop	Coptic	ha	Hausa
cs	Czech <sup>ul</sup>	haw	Hawaiian
cu	Church Slavic	he	Hebrew <sup>ul</sup>
cu-Cyrs	Church Slavic	hi	Hindi <sup>u</sup>
cu-Glag	Church Slavic	hr	Croatian <sup>ul</sup>
cy	Welsh <sup>ul</sup>	hsb	Upper Sorbian <sup>ul</sup>
da	Danish <sup>ul</sup>	hu	Hungarian <sup>ul</sup>
dav	Taita	hy	Armenian <sup>u</sup>
de-AT	German <sup>ul</sup>	ia	Interlingua <sup>ul</sup>
de-CH	German <sup>ul</sup>	id	Indonesian <sup>ul</sup>
de	German <sup>ul</sup>	ig	Igbo
dje	Zarma	ii	Sichuan Yi
dsb	Lower Sorbian <sup>ul</sup>	is	Icelandic <sup>ul</sup>
dua	Duala	it	Italian <sup>ul</sup>
dyo	Jola-Fonyi	ja	Japanese
dz	Dzongkha	jgo	Ngomba
ebu	Embu	jmc	Machame
ee	Ewe	ka	Georgian <sup>ul</sup>
el	Greek <sup>ul</sup>	kab	Kabyle
el-polyton	Polytonic Greek <sup>ul</sup>	kam	Kamba
en-AU	English <sup>ul</sup>	kde	Makonde
en-CA	English <sup>ul</sup>	kea	Kabuverdianu
en-GB	English <sup>ul</sup>	khq	Koyra Chiini
en-NZ	English <sup>ul</sup>	ki	Kikuyu
en-US	English <sup>ul</sup>	kk	Kazakh
en	English <sup>ul</sup>	kkj	Kako
eo	Esperanto <sup>ul</sup>	kl	Kalaallisut
es-MX	Spanish <sup>ul</sup>	kln	Kalenjin
es	Spanish <sup>ul</sup>	km	Khmer
et	Estonian <sup>ul</sup>	kn	Kannada <sup>ul</sup>
eu	Basque <sup>ul</sup>	ko	Korean
ewo	Ewondo	kok	Konkani
fa	Persian <sup>ul</sup>	ks	Kashmiri
ff	Fulah	ksb	Shambala
fi	Finnish <sup>ul</sup>	ksf	Bafia
fil	Filipino	ksh	Colognian
fo	Faroese	kw	Cornish
fr	French <sup>ul</sup>	ky	Kyrgyz
fr-BE	French <sup>ul</sup>	lag	Langi

lb	Luxembourgish	rof	Rombo
lg	Ganda	ru	Russian <sup>ul</sup>
lkt	Lakota	rw	Kinyarwanda
ln	Lingala	rwk	Rwa
lo	Lao <sup>ul</sup>	sa-Beng	Sanskrit
lrc	Northern Luri	sa-Deva	Sanskrit
lt	Lithuanian <sup>ul</sup>	sa-Gujr	Sanskrit
lu	Luba-Katanga	sa-Knda	Sanskrit
luo	Luo	sa-Mlym	Sanskrit
luy	Luyia	sa-Telu	Sanskrit
lv	Latvian <sup>ul</sup>	sa	Sanskrit
mas	Masai	sah	Sakha
mer	Meru	saq	Samburu
mfe	Morisyen	sbp	Sangu
mg	Malagasy	se	Northern Sami <sup>ul</sup>
mgf	Makhuwa-Meetto	seh	Sena
mgo	Meta'	ses	Koyraboro Senni
mk	Macedonian <sup>ul</sup>	sg	Sango
ml	Malayalam <sup>ul</sup>	shi-Latn	Tachelhit
mn	Mongolian	shi-Tfng	Tachelhit
mr	Marathi <sup>ul</sup>	shi	Tachelhit
ms-BN	Malay <sup>l</sup>	si	Sinhala
ms-SG	Malay <sup>l</sup>	sk	Slovak <sup>ul</sup>
ms	Malay <sup>ul</sup>	sl	Slovenian <sup>ul</sup>
mt	Maltese	smn	Inari Sami
mua	Mundang	sn	Shona
my	Burmese	so	Somali
mzn	Mazanderani	sq	Albanian <sup>ul</sup>
naq	Nama	sr-Cyrl-BA	Serbian <sup>ul</sup>
nb	Norwegian Bokmål <sup>ul</sup>	sr-Cyrl-ME	Serbian <sup>ul</sup>
nd	North Ndebele	sr-Cyrl-XK	Serbian <sup>ul</sup>
ne	Nepali	sr-Cyrl	Serbian <sup>ul</sup>
nl	Dutch <sup>ul</sup>	sr-Latn-BA	Serbian <sup>ul</sup>
nmg	Kwasio	sr-Latn-ME	Serbian <sup>ul</sup>
nn	Norwegian Nynorsk <sup>ul</sup>	sr-Latn-XK	Serbian <sup>ul</sup>
nnh	Ngiemboon	sr-Latn	Serbian <sup>ul</sup>
nus	Nuer	sr	Serbian <sup>ul</sup>
nyn	Nyankole	sv	Swedish <sup>ul</sup>
om	Oromo	sw	Swahili
or	Odia	ta	Tamil <sup>u</sup>
os	Ossetic	te	Telugu <sup>ul</sup>
pa-Arab	Punjabi	teo	Teso
pa-Guru	Punjabi	th	Thai <sup>ul</sup>
pa	Punjabi	ti	Tigrinya
pl	Polish <sup>ul</sup>	tk	Turkmen <sup>ul</sup>
pms	Piedmontese <sup>ul</sup>	to	Tongan
ps	Pashto	tr	Turkish <sup>ul</sup>
pt-BR	Portuguese <sup>ul</sup>	twq	Tasawaq
pt-PT	Portuguese <sup>ul</sup>	tzm	Central Atlas Tamazight
pt	Portuguese <sup>ul</sup>	ug	Uyghur
qu	Quechua	uk	Ukrainian <sup>ul</sup>
rm	Romansh <sup>ul</sup>	ur	Urdu <sup>ul</sup>
rn	Rundi	uz-Arab	Uzbek
ro	Romanian <sup>ul</sup>	uz-Cyrl	Uzbek

uz-Latn	Uzbek	yue	Cantonese
uz	Uzbek	zgh	Standard Moroccan Tamazight
vai-Latn	Vai	zh-Hans-HK	Chinese
vai-Vaii	Vai	zh-Hans-MO	Chinese
vai	Vai	zh-Hans-SG	Chinese
vi	Vietnamese <sup>ul</sup>	zh-Hans	Chinese
vun	Vunjo	zh-Hant-HK	Chinese
wae	Walser	zh-Hant-MO	Chinese
xog	Soga	zh-Hant	Chinese
yav	Yangben	zh	Chinese
yi	Yiddish	zu	Zulu
yo	Yoruba		

---

In some contexts (currently `\babelfont`) an `ini` file may be loaded by its name. Here is the list of the names currently supported. With these languages, `\babelfont` loads (if not done before) the language and script names (even if the language is defined as a package option with an `ldf` file). These are also the names recognized by `\babelprovide` with a valueless `import`.

---

aghem	bosnian-cyrillic
akan	bosnian-cyrl
albanian	bosnian-latin
american	bosnian-latn
amharic	bosnian
ancientgreek	brazilian
arabic	breton
arabic-algeria	british
arabic-DZ	bulgarian
arabic-morocco	burmese
arabic-MA	canadian
arabic-syria	cantonese
arabic-SY	catalan
armenian	centralatlastamazight
assamese	centralkurdish
asturian	chechen
asu	cherokee
australian	chiga
austrian	chinese-hans-hk
azerbaijani-cyrillic	chinese-hans-mo
azerbaijani-cyrl	chinese-hans-sg
azerbaijani-latin	chinese-hans
azerbaijani-latn	chinese-hant-hk
azerbaijani	chinese-hant-mo
bafia	chinese-hant
bambara	chinese-simplified-hongkongsarchina
basaa	chinese-simplified-macausarchina
basque	chinese-simplified-singapore
belarusian	chinese-simplified
bemba	chinese-traditional-hongkongsarchina
bena	chinese-traditional-macausarchina
bengali	chinese-traditional
bodo	chinese



churchslavic	gujarati
churchslavic-cyrs	gusii
churchslavic-oldcyrillic <sup>12</sup>	hausa-gh
churchsslavic-glag	hausa-ghana
churchsslavic-glagolitic	hausa-ne
cognian	hausa-niger
cornish	hausa
croatian	hawaiian
czech	hebrew
danish	hindi
duala	hungarian
dutch	icelandic
dzongkha	igbo
embu	inarisami
english-au	indonesian
english-australia	interlingua
english-ca	irish
english-canada	italian
english-gb	japanese
english-newzealand	jolafonyi
english-nz	kabuverdianu
english-unitedkingdom	kabyle
english-unitedstates	kako
english-us	kalaallisut
english	kalenjin
esperanto	kamba
estonian	kannada
ewe	kashmiri
ewondo	kazakh
faroesse	khmer
filipino	kikuyu
finnish	kinyarwanda
french-be	konkani
french-belgium	korean
french-ca	koyraborosenni
french-canada	koyrachiini
french-ch	kwasio
french-lu	kyrgyz
french-luxembourg	lakota
french-switzerland	langi
french	lao
friulian	latvian
fulah	lingala
galician	lithuanian
ganda	lowersorbian
georgian	lsorbian
german-at	lubakatanga
german-austria	luo
german-ch	luxembourgish
german-switzerland	luyia
german	macedonian
greek	machame

<sup>12</sup>The name in the CLDR is Old Church Slavonic Cyrillic, but it has been shortened for practical reasons.

makhuwameetto  
makonde  
malagasy  
malay-bn  
malay-brunei  
malay-sg  
malay-singapore  
malay  
malayalam  
maltese  
manx  
marathi  
masai  
mazanderani  
meru  
meta  
mexican  
mongolian  
morisyen  
mundang  
nama  
nepali  
newzealand  
ngiemboon  
ngomba  
norsk  
northernluri  
northernsami  
northndebele  
norwegianbokmal  
norwegiannynorsk  
nswissgerman  
nuer  
nyankole  
nynorsk  
occitan  
oriya  
oromo  
ossetic  
pashto  
persian  
piedmontese  
polish  
polytonicgreek  
portuguese-br  
portuguese-brazil  
portuguese-portugal  
portuguese-pt  
portuguese  
punjabi-arab  
punjabi-arabic  
punjabi-gurmukhi  
punjabi-guru  
punjabi

quechua  
romanian  
romansh  
rombo  
rundi  
russian  
rwa  
sakha  
samburu  
samin  
sango  
sangu  
sanskrit-beng  
sanskrit-bengali  
sanskrit-deva  
sanskrit-devanagari  
sanskrit-gujarati  
sanskrit-gujr  
sanskrit-kannada  
sanskrit-knda  
sanskrit-malayalam  
sanskrit-mlym  
sanskrit-telu  
sanskrit-telugu  
sanskrit  
scottishgaelic  
sena  
serbian-cyrillic-bosniaherzegovina  
serbian-cyrillic-kosovo  
serbian-cyrillic-montenegro  
serbian-cyrillic  
serbian-cyrl-ba  
serbian-cyrl-me  
serbian-cyrl-xk  
serbian-cyrl  
serbian-latin-bosniaherzegovina  
serbian-latin-kosovo  
serbian-latin-montenegro  
serbian-latin  
serbian-latn-ba  
serbian-latn-me  
serbian-latn-xk  
serbian-latn  
serbian  
shambala  
shona  
sichuanyi  
sinhala  
slovak  
slovene  
slovenian  
soga  
somali  
spanish-mexico

spanish-mx	usenglish
spanish	usorbian
standardmoroccantamazight	uyghur
swahili	uzbek-arab
swedish	uzbek-arabic
swissgerman	uzbek-cyrillic
tachelhit-latin	uzbek-cyrl
tachelhit-latn	uzbek-latin
tachelhit-tfng	uzbek-latn
tachelhit-tifinagh	uzbek
tachelhit	vai-latin
taita	vai-latn
tamil	vai-vai
tasawaq	vai-vaii
telugu	vai
teso	vietnam
thai	vietnamese
tibetan	vunjo
tigrinya	walser
tongan	welsh
turkish	westernfrisian
turkmen	yangben
ukenglish	yiddish
ukrainian	yoruba
uppersorbian	zarma
urdu	zulu afrikaans

---

### Modifying and adding values to ini files

**New 3.39** There is a way to modify the values of ini files when they get loaded with `\babelprovide` and `import`. To set, say, `digits.native` in the `numbers` section, use something like `numbers/digits.native=abcdefghijklj`. Keys may be added, too. Without `import` you may modify the identification keys.

This can be used to create private variants easily. All you need is to import the same ini file with a different locale name and different parameters.

## 1.14 Selecting fonts

**New 3.15** Babel provides a high level interface on top of `fontspec` to select fonts. There is no need to load `fontspec` explicitly – babel does it for you with the first `\babelfont`.<sup>13</sup>

**\babelfont** [*<language-list>*]{*<font-family>*}[*<font-options>*]{*<font-name>*}

**NOTE** See the note in the previous section about some issues in specific languages.

The main purpose of `\babelfont` is to define at once in a multilingual document the fonts required by the different languages, with their corresponding language systems (script and language). So, if you load, say, 4 languages, `\babelfont{rm}{FreeSerif}` defines 4 fonts (with their variants, of course), which are switched with the language by babel. It is a tool to make things easier and transparent to the user.

Here *font-family* is `rm`, `sf` or `tt` (or newly defined ones, as explained below), and *font-name* is the same as in `fontspec` and the like.

If no language is given, then it is considered the default font for the family, activated when a language is selected.

---

<sup>13</sup>See also the package `combofont` for a complementary approach.

On the other hand, if there is one or more languages in the optional argument, the font will be assigned to them, overriding the default one. Alternatively, you may set a font for a script – just precede its name (lowercase) with a star (eg, `*devanagari`). With this optional argument, the font is *not* yet defined, but just predeclared. This means you may define as many fonts as you want ‘just in case’, because if the language is never selected, the corresponding `\babelfont` declaration is just ignored.

Babel takes care of the font language and the font script when languages are selected (as well as the writing direction); see the recognized languages above. In most cases, you will not need *font-options*, which is the same as in `fontspec`, but you may add further key/value pairs if necessary.

**EXAMPLE** Usage in most cases is very simple. Let us assume you are setting up a document in Swedish, with some words in Hebrew, with a font suited for both languages.

LUATEX/XETEX

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[swedish, bidi=default]{babel}

\babelprovide[import]{hebrew}

\babelfont{rm}{FreeSerif}

\begin{document}

Svenska \foreignlanguage{hebrew}{עברית} svenska.

\end{document}
```

If on the other hand you have to resort to different fonts, you can replace the red line above with, say:

LUATEX/XETEX

```
\babelfont{rm}{Iwona}
\babelfont[hebrew]{rm}{FreeSerif}
```

`\babelfont` can be used to implicitly define a new font family. Just write its name instead of `rm`, `sf` or `tt`. This is the preferred way to select fonts in addition to the three basic families.

**EXAMPLE** Here is how to do it:

LUATEX/XETEX

```
\babelfont{kai}{FandolKai}
```

Now, `\kaifamily` and `\kaidefault`, as well as `\textkai` are at your disposal.

**NOTE** You may load `fontspec` explicitly. For example:

LUATEX/XETEX

```
\usepackage{fontspec}
\newfontscript{Devanagari}{deva}
\babelfont[hindi]{rm}{Shobhika}
```

This makes sure the OpenType script for Devanagari is `deva` and not `dev2`, in case it is not detected correctly. You may also pass some options to `fontspec`: with `silent`, the warnings about unavailable scripts or languages are not shown (they are only really useful when the document format is being set up).

**NOTE** Directionality is a property affecting margins, indentation, column order, etc., not just text. Therefore, it is under the direct control of the language, which applies both the script and the direction to the text. As a consequence, there is no need to set `Script` when declaring a font with `\babelfont` (nor `Language`). In fact, it is even discouraged.

**NOTE** `\fontspec` is not touched at all, only the preset font families (`rm`, `sf`, `tt`, and the like). If a language is switched when an *ad hoc* font is active, or you select the font with this command, neither the script nor the language is passed. You must add them by hand. This is by design, for several reasons—for example, each font has its own set of features and a generic setting for several of them can be problematic, and also preserving a “lower-level” font selection is useful.

**NOTE** The keys `Language` and `Script` just pass these values to the *font*, and do *not* set the script for the *language* (and therefore the writing direction). In other words, the `ini` file or `\babelprovide` provides default values for `\babelfont` if omitted, but the opposite is not true. See the note above for the reasons of this behavior.

**WARNING** Using `\setxxxxfont` and `\babelfont` at the same time is discouraged, but very often works as expected. However, be aware with `\setxxxxfont` the language system will not be set by `babel` and should be set with `fontspec` if necessary.

**TROUBLESHOOTING** *Package fontspec Warning: ‘Language ‘LANG’ not available for font ‘FONT’ with script ‘SCRIPT’ ‘Default’ language used instead’.*

**This is *not* an error.** This warning is shown by `fontspec`, not by `babel`. It can be irrelevant for English, but not for many other languages, including Urdu and Turkish. This is a useful and harmless warning, and if everything is fine with your document the best thing you can do is just to ignore it altogether.

**TROUBLESHOOTING** *Package babel Info: The following fonts are not babel standard families.*

**This is *not* an error.** `babel` assumes that if you are using `\babelfont` for a family, very likely you want to define the rest of them. If you don’t, you can find some inconsistencies between families. This checking is done at the beginning of the document, at a point where we cannot know which families will be used.

Actually, there is no real need to use `\babelfont` in a monolingual document, if you set the language system in `\setmainfont` (or not, depending on what you want).

As the message explains, *there is nothing intrinsically wrong* with not defining all the families. In fact, there is nothing intrinsically wrong with not using `\babelfont` at all. But you must be aware that this may lead to some problems.

**NOTE** `\babelfont` is a high level interface to `fontspec`, and therefore in `xetex` you can apply Mappings. For example, there is a set of [transliterations for Brahmic scripts](#) by Davis M. Jones. After installing them in your distribution, just set the map as you would do with `fontspec`.

## 1.15 Modifying a language

Modifying the behavior of a language (say, the chapter “caption”), is sometimes necessary, but not always trivial. In the case of caption names a specific macro is provided, because this is perhaps the most frequent change:

`\setlocalecaption`  $\{\langle\textit{language-name}\rangle\}\{\langle\textit{caption-name}\rangle\}\{\langle\textit{string}\rangle\}$

**New 3.51** Here *caption-name* is the name as string without the trailing name. An example, which also shows caption names are often a stylistic choice, is:

```
\setlocalecaption{english}{contents}{Table of Contents}
```

This works not only with existing caption names, because it also serves to define new ones by setting the *caption-name* to the name of your choice (name will be postpended). Captions so defined or redefined behave with the ‘new way’ described in the following note.

**NOTE** There are a few alternative methods:

- With data imported from ini files, you can modify the values of specific keys, like:

```
\babelprovide[import, captions/listtable = Lista de tablas]{spanish}
```

(In this particular case, instead of the captions group you may need to modify the captions.licr one.)

- The ‘old way’, still valid for many languages, to redefine a caption is the following:

```
\addto\captionenglish{%  
  \renewcommand\contentsname{Foo}%  
}
```

As of 3.15, there is no need to hide spaces with % (babel removes them), but it is advisable to do so. This redefinition is not activated until the language is selected.

- The ‘new way’, which is found in bulgarian, azerbaijani, spanish, french, turkish, icelandic, vietnamese and a few more, as well as in languages created with \babelprovide and its key import, is:

```
\renewcommand\spanishchaptername{Foo}
```

This redefinition is immediate.

**NOTE** Do *not* redefine a caption in the following way:

```
\AtBeginDocument{\renewcommand\contentsname{Foo}}
```

The changes may be discarded with a language selector, and the original value restored.

Macros to be run when a language is selected can be add to \extras⟨lang⟩:

```
\addto\extrasrussian{\mymacro}
```

There is a counterpart for code to be run when a language is unselected: \noextras⟨lang⟩.

**NOTE** These macros (\captions⟨lang⟩, \extras⟨lang⟩) may be redefined, but *must not* be used as such – they just pass information to babel, which executes them in the proper context.

Another way to modify a language loaded as a package or class option is by means of \babelprovide, described below in depth. So, something like:

```
\usepackage[danish]{babel}  
\babelprovide[captions=da, hyphenrules=nohyphenation]{danish}
```

first loads danish.ldf, and then redefines the captions for danish (as provided by the ini file) and prevents hyphenation. The rest of the language definitions are not touched. Without the optional argument it just loads some additional tools if provided by the ini file, like extra counters.

## 1.16 Creating a language

**New 3.10** And what if there is no style for your language or none fits your needs? You may then define quickly a language with the help of the following macro in the preamble (which may be used to modify an existing language, too, as explained in the previous subsection).

**`\babelprovide`** [*⟨options⟩*]{*⟨language-name⟩*}

If the language *⟨language-name⟩* has not been loaded as class or package option and there are no *⟨options⟩*, it creates an “empty” one with some defaults in its internal structure: the hyphen rules, if not available, are set to the current ones, left and right hyphen mins are set to 2 and 3. In either case, caption, date and language system are not defined.

If no ini file is imported with `import`, *⟨language-name⟩* is still relevant because in such a case the hyphenation and like breaking rules (including those for South East Asian and CJK) are based on it as provided in the ini file corresponding to that name; the same applies to OpenType language and script.

Conveniently, some options allow to fill the language, and babel warns you about what to do if there is a missing string. Very likely you will find alerts like that in the log file:

```
Package babel Warning: \chaptername not set for 'mylang'. Please,
(babel)                define it after the language has been loaded
(babel)                (typically in the preamble) with:
(babel)                \setlocalecaption{mylang}{chapter}{...}
(babel)                Reported on input line 26.
```

In most cases, you will only need to define a few macros. Note languages loaded on the fly are not yet available in the preamble.

**EXAMPLE** If you need a language named arhinish:

```
\usepackage[danish]{babel}
\babelprovide{arhinish}
\setlocalecaption{arhinish}{chapter}{Chapitula}
\setlocalecaption{arhinish}{refname}{Refirenke}
\renewcommand\arhinishhyphenmins{22}
```

**EXAMPLE** Locales with names based on BCP 47 codes can be created with something like:

```
\babelprovide[import=en-US]{enUS}
```

Note, however, mixing ways to identify locales can lead to problems. For example, is yi the name of the language spoken by the Yi people or is it the code for Yiddish?

The main language is not changed (danish in this example). So, you must add `\selectlanguage{arhinish}` or other selectors where necessary.

If the language has been loaded as an argument in `\documentclass` or `\usepackage`, then `\babelprovide` redefines the requested data.

**`import=`** *⟨language-tag⟩*

**New 3.13** Imports data from an ini file, including captions and date (also line breaking rules in newly defined languages). For example:

```
\babelprovide[import=hu]{hungarian}
```

Unicode engines load the UTF-8 variants, while 8-bit engines load the LICR (ie, with macros like `\'` or `\ss`) ones.

**New 3.23** It may be used without a value. In such a case, the ini file set in the corresponding `babel-<language>.tex` (where *<language>* is the last argument in `\babelprovide`) is imported. See the list of recognized languages above. So, the previous example can be written:

```
\babelprovide[import]{hungarian}
```

There are about 250 ini files, with data taken from the ldf files and the CLDR provided by Unicode. Not all languages in the latter are complete, and therefore neither are the ini files. A few languages may show a warning about the current lack of suitability of some features.

Besides `\today`, this option defines an additional command for dates: `\<language>date`, which takes three arguments, namely, year, month and day numbers. In fact, `\today` calls `\<language>today`, which in turn calls

`\<language>date{\the\year}{\the\month}{\the\day}`. **New 3.44** More convenient is usually `\localedate`, which prints the date for the current locale.

**captions=** *<language-tag>*

Loads only the strings. For example:

```
\babelprovide[captions=hu]{hungarian}
```

**hyphenrules=** *<language-list>*

With this option, with a space-separated list of hyphenation rules, babel assigns to the language the first valid hyphenation rules in the list. For example:

```
\babelprovide[hyphenrules=chavacano spanish italian]{chavacano}
```

If none of the listed hyphenrules exist, the default behavior applies. Note in this example we set `chavacano` as first option – without it, it would select `spanish` even if `chavacano` exists.

A special value is `+`, which allocates a new language (in the  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  sense). It only makes sense as the last value (or the only one; the subsequent ones are silently ignored). It is mostly useful with `luatex`, because you can add some patterns with `\babelpatterns`, as for example:

```
\babelprovide[hyphenrules=+]{neo}  
\babelpatterns[neo]{a1 e1 i1 o1 u1}
```

In other engines it just suppresses hyphenation (because the pattern list is empty).

**New 3.58** Another special value is `unhyphenated`, which activates a line breking mode that allows spaces to be stretched to arbitrary amounts.

**main** This valueless option makes the language the main one (thus overriding that set when babel is loaded). Only in newly defined languages.

**EXAMPLE** Let's assume your document is mainly in Polytonic Greek, but with some sections in Italian. Then, the first attempt should be:

```
\usepackage[italian, greek.polutonic]{babel}
```

But if, say, accents in Greek are not shown correctly, you can try:



```
\usepackage[italian]{babel}
\babelprovide[import, main]{polytonicgreek}
```

Remember there is an alternative syntax for the latter:

```
\usepackage[italian, polytonicgreek, provide=*]{babel}
```

**script=**  $\langle script-name \rangle$

**New 3.15** Sets the script name to be used by fontspec (eg, Devanagari). Overrides the value in the ini file. If fontspec does not define it, then babel sets its tag to that provided by the ini file. This value is particularly important because it sets the writing direction, so you must use it if for some reason the default value is wrong.

**language=**  $\langle language-name \rangle$

**New 3.15** Sets the language name to be used by fontspec (eg, Hindi). Overrides the value in the ini file. If fontspec does not define it, then babel sets its tag to that provided by the ini file. Not so important, but sometimes still relevant.

**alph=**  $\langle counter-name \rangle$

Assigns to `\alph` that counter. See the next section.

**Alph=**  $\langle counter-name \rangle$

Same for `\Alph`.

A few options (only luatex) set some properties of the writing system used by the language. These properties are *always* applied to the script, no matter which language is active. Although somewhat inconsistent, this makes setting a language up easier in most typical cases.

**onchar=** ids | fonts

**New 3.38** This option is much like an ‘event’ called when a character belonging to the script of this locale is found (as its name implies, it acts on characters, not on spaces). There are currently two ‘actions’, which can be used at the same time (separated by a space): with `ids` the `\language` and the `\localeid` are set to the values of this locale; with `fonts`, the fonts are changed to those of this locale (as set with `\babelfont`). This option is not compatible with `mapfont`. Characters can be added or modified with `\babelcharproperty`.

**NOTE** An alternative approach with luatex and Harfbuzz is the font option `RawFeature={multiscript=auto}`. It does not switch the babel language and therefore the line breaking rules, but in many cases it can be enough.

**intraspace=**  $\langle base \rangle \langle shrink \rangle \langle stretch \rangle$

Sets the interword space for the writing system of the language, in em units (so, 0 .1 0 is 0em plus .1em). Like `\spaceskip`, the em unit applied is that of the current text (more precisely, the previous glyph). Currently used only in Southeast Asian scripts, like Thai, and CJK.

**intrapenalty=**  $\langle penalty \rangle$

Sets the interword penalty for the writing system of this language. Currently used only in Southeast Asian scripts, like Thai. Ignored if 0 (which is the default value).

**justification=** kashida | elongated | unhyphenated

**New 3.59** There are currently three options, mainly for the Arabic script. It sets the linebreaking and justification method, which can be based on the the ARABIC TATWEEL character or in the ‘justification alternatives’ OpenType table (jalt). For an explanation see the [babel site](#).

**linebreaking=** **New 3.59** Just a synonymous for justification.

**mapfont=** direction

Assigns the font for the writing direction of this language (only with `bidi=basic`). Whenever possible, instead of this option use `onchar`, based on the script, which usually makes more sense. More precisely, what `mapfont=direction` means is, ‘when a character has the same direction as the script for the “provided” language, then change its font to that set for this language’. There are 3 directions, following the bidi Unicode algorithm, namely, Arabic-like, Hebrew-like and left to right. So, there should be at most 3 directives of this kind.

**NOTE** (1) If you need shorthands, you can define them with `\usesshorthands` and `\defineshorthand` as described above. (2) Captions and `\today` are “ensured” with `\babelensure` (this is the default in ini-based languages).

## 1.17 Digits and counters

**New 3.20** About thirty ini files define a field named `digits.native`. When it is present, two macros are created: `\<language>digits` and `\<language>counter` (only xetex and luatex). With the first, a string of ‘Latin’ digits are converted to the native digits of that language; the second takes a counter name as argument. With the option `maparabic` in `\babelprovide`, `\arabic` is redefined to produce the native digits (this is done *globally*, to avoid inconsistencies in, for example, page numbering, and note as well dates do not rely on `\arabic`.)

For example:

```
\babelprovide[import]{telugu} % Telugu better with XeTeX
% Or also, if you want:
% \babelprovide[import, maparabic]{telugu}
\babelfont{rm}{Gautami}
\begin{document}
\telugudigits{1234}
\telugucounter{section}
\end{document}
```

Languages providing native digits in all or some variants are:

Arabic	Central Kurdish	Khmer	Northern Luri	Nepali
Assamese	Dzongkha	Kannada	Malayalam	Odia
Bangla	Persian	Konkani	Marathi	Punjabi
Tibetar	Gujarati	Kashmiri	Burmese	Pashto
Bodo	Hindi	Lao	Mazanderani	Tamil

Telugu	Uyghur	Uzbek	Cantonese
Thai	Urdu	Vai	Chinese

**New 3.30** With `luatex` there is an alternative approach for mapping digits, namely, `mapdigits`. Conversion is based on the language and it is applied to the typeset text (not math, PDF bookmarks, etc.) before bidi and fonts are processed (ie, to the node list as generated by the  $\TeX$  code). This means the local digits have the correct bidirectional behavior (unlike `Numbers=Arabic` in `fontspec`, which is not recommended).

**NOTE** With `xetex` you can use the option `Mapping` when defining a font.

**New 4.41** Many ‘ini’ locale files has been extended with information about non-positional numerical systems, based on those predefined in CSS. They only work with `xetex` and `luatex` and are fully expendable (even inside an unprotected `\edef`). Currently, they are limited to numbers below 10000. There are several ways to use them (for the available styles in each language, see the list below):

- `\localnumeral{<style>}{<number>}`, like `\localnumeral{abjad}{15}`
- `\localecounter{<style>}{<counter>}`, like `\localecounter{lower}{section}`
- In `\babelprovide`, as an argument to the keys `alph` and `Alph`, which redefine what `\alph` and `\Alph` print. For example:

```
\babelprovide[alph=alphabetic]{thai}
```

The styles are:

**Ancient Greek** lower.ancient, upper.ancient  
**Amharic** afar, agaw, ari, blin, dizi, gedeo, gumuz, hadiyya, harari, kaffa, kebena, kembata, konso, kunama, meen, oromo, saho, sidama, silti, tigre, wolaita, yemsa  
**Arabic** abjad, maghrebi.abjad  
**Belarusan, Bulgarian, Macedonian, Serbian** lower, upper  
**Bengali** alphabetic  
**Coptic** epact, lower.letters  
**Hebrew** letters (neither geresh nor gershayim yet)  
**Hindi** alphabetic  
**Armenian** lower.letter, upper.letter  
**Japanese** hiragana, hiragana.iroha, katakana, katakana.iroha, circled.katakana, informal, formal, cjk-earthly-branch, cjk-heavenly-stem, fullwidth.lower.alpha, fullwidth.upper.alpha  
**Georgian** letters  
**Greek** lower.modern, upper.modern, lower.ancient, upper.ancient (all with keraia)  
**Khmer** consonant  
**Korean** consonant, syllabe, hanja.informal, hanja.formal, hangul.formal, cjk-earthly-branch, cjk-heavenly-stem, fullwidth.lower.alpha, fullwidth.upper.alpha  
**Marathi** alphabetic  
**Persian** abjad, alphabetic  
**Russian** lower, lower.full, upper, upper.full  
**Syriac** letters  
**Tamil** ancient  
**Thai** alphabetic  
**Ukrainian** lower, lower.full, upper, upper.full

**Chinese** cjk-earthly-branch, cjk-heavenly-stem, fullwidth.lower.alpha, fullwidth.upper.alpha

**New 3.45** In addition, native digits (in languages defining them) may be printed with the numeral style digits.

## 1.18 Dates

**New 3.45** When the data is taken from an ini file, you may print the date corresponding to the Gregorian calendar and other lunisolar systems with the following command.

**\localedate** [*<calendar=.., variant=..>*]{*<year>*}{*<month>*}{*<day>*}

By default the calendar is the Gregorian, but an ini file may define strings for other calendars (currently ar, ar-\*, he, fa, hi.) In the latter case, the three arguments are the year, the month, and the day in those in the corresponding calendar. They are *not* the Gregorian data to be converted (which means, say, 13 is a valid month number with calendar=hebrew).

Even with a certain calendar there may be variants. In Kurmanji the default variant prints something like 30. *Çîleya Pêşîn 2019*, but with variant=iza fa it prints 31'ê *Çîleya Pêşînê 2019*.

## 1.19 Accessing language info

**\language** The control sequence `\language` contains the name of the current language.

**WARNING** Due to some internal inconsistencies in catcodes, it should *not* be used to test its value. Use `iflang`, by Heiko Oberdiek.

**\iflanguage** {*<language>*}{*<true>*}{*<false>*}

If more than one language is used, it might be necessary to know which language is active at a specific time. This can be checked by a call to `\iflanguage`, but note here “language” is used in the  $\TeX$ sense, as a set of hyphenation patterns, and *not* as its babel name. This macro takes three arguments. The first argument is the name of a language; the second and third arguments are the actions to take if the result of the test is true or false respectively.

**\localeinfo** {*<field>*}

**New 3.38** If an ini file has been loaded for the current language, you may access the information stored in it. This macro is fully expandable, and the available fields are:

`name.english` as provided by the Unicode CLDR.

`tag.ini` is the tag of the ini file (the way this file is identified in its name).

`tag.bcp47` is the full BCP 47 tag (see the warning below).

`language.tag.bcp47` is the BCP 47 language tag.

`tag.opentype` is the tag used by OpenType (usually, but not always, the same as BCP 47).

`script.name`, as provided by the Unicode CLDR.

`script.tag.bcp47` is the BCP 47 tag of the script used by this locale.

`script.tag.opentype` is the tag used by OpenType (usually, but not always, the same as BCP 47).

**WARNING** **New 3.46** As of version 3.46 `tag.bcp47` returns the full BCP 47 tag. Formerly it returned just the language subtag, which was clearly counterintuitive.

`\getlocaleproperty` \*`{<macro>}{<locale>}{<property>}`

**New 3.42** The value of any locale property as set by the ini files (or added/modified with `\babelprovide`) can be retrieved and stored in a macro with this command. For example, after:

```
\getlocaleproperty\hechap{hebrew}{captions/chapter}
```

the macro `\hechap` will contain the string פרק.

If the key does not exist, the macro is set to `\relax` and an error is raised. **New 3.47** With the starred version no error is raised, so that you can take your own actions with undefined properties.

Babel remembers which ini files have been loaded. There is a loop named `\LocaleForEach` to traverse the list, where #1 is the name of the current item, so that `\LocaleForEach{\message{ **#1** }}` just shows the loaded ini's.

**NOTE** ini files are loaded with `\babelprovide` and also when languages are selected if there is a `\babelfont`. To ensure the ini files are loaded (and therefore the corresponding data) even if these two conditions are not met, write `\BabelEnsureInfo` in the preamble.

`\localeid`

Each language in the babel sense has its own unique numeric identifier, which can be retrieved with `\localeid`.

**NOTE** The `\localeid` is not the same as the `\language` identifier, which refers to a set of hyphenation patterns (which, in turn, is just a component of the line breaking algorithm described in the next section). The data about preloaded patterns are store in an internal macro named `\bbl@languages` (see the code for further details), but note several locales may share a single `\language`, so they are separated concepts. In `luatex`, the `\localeid` is saved in each node (where it makes sense) as an attribute, too.

## 1.20 Hyphenation and line breaking

Babel deals with three kinds of line breaking rules: Western, typically the LGC group, South East Asian, like Thai, and CJK, but support depends on the engine: `pdftex` only deals with the former, `xetex` also with the second one (although in a limited way), while `luatex` provides basic rules for the latter, too.

`\babelhyphen` \*`{<type>}`

`\babelhyphen` \*`{<text>}`

**New 3.9a** It is customary to classify hyphens in two types: (1) *explicit* or *hard hyphens*, which in `TEX` are entered as `-`, and (2) *optional* or *soft hyphens*, which are entered as `\-`. Strictly, a *soft hyphen* is not a hyphen, but just a breaking opportunity or, in `TEX` terms, a “discretionary”; a *hard hyphen* is a hyphen with a breaking opportunity after it. A further type is a *non-breaking hyphen*, a hyphen without a breaking opportunity. In `TEX`, `-` and `\-` forbid further breaking opportunities in the word. This is the desired behavior very often, but not always, and therefore many languages provide shorthands for these cases. Unfortunately, this has not been done consistently: for example, `-` in Dutch, Portuguese, Catalan or Danish is a hard hyphen, while in German, Spanish, Norwegian, Slovak or Russian is a soft hyphen. Furthermore, some of them even redefine `\-`, so that you cannot insert a soft hyphen without breaking opportunities in the rest of the word. Therefore, some macros are provided with a set of basic “hyphens” which can be used by themselves, to define a user shorthand, or even in language files.

- `\babelhyphen{soft}` and `\babelhyphen{hard}` are self explanatory.
- `\babelhyphen{repeat}` inserts a hard hyphen which is repeated at the beginning of the next line, as done in languages like Polish, Portuguese and Spanish.
- `\babelhyphen{nobreak}` inserts a hard hyphen without a break after it (even if a space follows).
- `\babelhyphen{empty}` inserts a break opportunity without a hyphen at all.
- `\babelhyphen{<text>}` is a hard “hyphen” using `<text>` instead. A typical case is `\babelhyphen{/}`.

With all of them, hyphenation in the rest of the word is enabled. If you don’t want to enable it, there is a starred counterpart: `\babelhyphen*{soft}` (which in most cases is equivalent to the original `\-`), `\babelhyphen*{hard}`, etc.

Note `hard` is also good for isolated prefixes (eg, *anti-*) and `nobreak` for isolated suffixes (eg, *-ism*), but in both cases `\babelhyphen*{nobreak}` is usually better.

There are also some differences with  $\TeX$ : (1) the character used is that set for the current font, while in  $\TeX$  it is hardwired to `-` (a typical value); (2) the hyphen to be used in fonts with a negative `\hyphenchar` is `-`, like in  $\TeX$ , but it can be changed to another value by redefining `\babelnullhyphen`; (3) a break after the hyphen is forbidden if preceded by a glue  $>0$  pt (at the beginning of a word, provided it is not immediately preceded by, say, a parenthesis).

**`\babelhyphenation`** [`<language>` , `<language>` , ... ] { `<exceptions>` }

**New 3.9a** Sets hyphenation exceptions for the languages given or, without the optional argument, for *all* languages (eg, proper nouns or common loan words, and of course monolingual documents). Language exceptions take precedence over global ones. It can be used only in the preamble, and exceptions are set when the language is first selected, thus taking into account changes of `\lccodes`’s done in `\extras<lang>` as well as the language-specific encoding (not set in the preamble by default). Multiple `\babelhyphenation`’s are allowed. For example:

```
\babelhyphenation{Wal-hal-la Dar-bhan-ga}
```

Listed words are saved expanded and therefore it relies on the LICR. Of course, it also works without the LICR if the input and the font encodings are the same, like in Unicode based engines.

**NOTE** Using `\babelhyphenation` with Southeast Asian scripts is mostly pointless. But with `\babelpatterns` (below) you may fine-tune line breaking (only `luatex`). Even if there are no patterns for the language, you can add at least some typical cases.

**NOTE** To set hyphenation exceptions in the preamble before any language is explicitly set with a selector, use `\babelhyphenation` instead of `\hyphenation`. In the preamble the hyphenation rules are not always fully set up and an error can be raised.

**`\begin{hyphenrules}`** { `<language>` } ... **`\end{hyphenrules}`**

The environment `hyphenrules` can be used to select *only* the hyphenation rules to be used (it can be used as command, too). This can for instance be used to select ‘nohyphenation’, provided that in `language.dat` the ‘language’ `nohyphenation` is defined by loading `zerohyph.tex`. It deactivates language shorthands, too (but not user shorthands). Except for these simple uses, `hyphenrules` is deprecated and other `language*` (the starred version) is preferred, because the former does not take into account possible changes in encodings of characters like, say, ‘ ’ done by some languages (eg, `italian`, `french`, `ukraineb`).

`\babelpatterns` [*<language>* , *<language>* , ... ] { *<patterns>* }

**New 3.9m** In *luatex* only,<sup>14</sup> adds or replaces patterns for the languages given or, without the optional argument, for *all* languages. If a pattern for a certain combination already exists, it gets replaced by the new one.

It can be used only in the preamble, and patterns are added when the language is first selected, thus taking into account changes of `\lccodes`'s done in `\extras<lang>` as well as the language-specific encoding (not set in the preamble by default). Multiple `\babelpatterns`'s are allowed.

Listed patterns are saved expanded and therefore it relies on the LICR. Of course, it also works without the LICR if the input and the font encodings are the same, like in Unicode based engines.

**New 3.31** (Only *luatex*.) With `\babelprovide` and imported CJK languages, a simple generic line breaking algorithm (push-out-first) is applied, based on a selection of the Unicode rules ( **New 3.32** it is disabled in verbatim mode, or more precisely when the `hyphenrules` are set to `nohyphenation`). It can be activated alternatively by setting explicitly the `intraspace`.

**New 3.27** Interword spacing for Thai, Lao and Khemer is activated automatically if a language with one of those scripts are loaded with `\babelprovide`. See the sample on the babel repository. With both Unicode engines, spacing is based on the “current” em unit (the size of the previous char in *luatex*, and the font size set by the last `\selectfont` in *xetex*).

## 1.21 Transforms

Transforms (only *luatex*) provide a way to process the text on the typesetting level in several language-dependent ways, like non-standard hyphenation, special line breaking rules, script to script conversion, spacing conventions and so on.<sup>15</sup>

It currently embraces `\babelprehyphenation` and `\babelposthyphenation`.

**New 3.57** Several ini files predefine some transforms. They are activated with the key `transforms` in `\babelprovide`, either if the locale is being defined with this macro or the languages has been previously loaded as a class or package option, as the following example illustrates:

```
\usepackage[magyar]{babel}
\babelprovide[transforms = digraphs.hyphen]{magyar}
```

**New 3.67** Transforms predefined in the ini locale files can be made attribute-dependent, too. When an attribute between parenthesis is inserted subsequent transforms will be assigned to it (up to the list end or another attribute). For example, and provided an attribute called `\withsigmafinal` has been declared:

```
transforms = transliteration.omega (\withsigmafinal) sigma.final
```

This applies `transliteration.omega` always, but `sigma.final` only when `\withsigmafinal` is set.

Here are the transforms currently predefined. (More to follow in future releases.)

Arabic	<code>transliteration.dad</code>	Applies the transliteration system devised by Yannis Haralambous for dad (simple and $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ -friendly). Not yet complete, but sufficient for most texts.
--------	----------------------------------	---

<sup>14</sup>With *luatex* exceptions and patterns can be modified almost freely. However, this is very likely a task for a separate package and *babel* only provides the most basic tools.

<sup>15</sup>They are similar in concept, but not the same, as those in Unicode. The main inspiration for this feature is the Omega transformation processes.

Croatian	<code>digraphs.ligatures</code>	Ligatures <i>DŽ, Dž, dž, LJ, Lj, lj, NJ, Nj, nj</i> . It assumes they exist. This is not the recommended way to make these transformations (the best way is with OTF features), but it can get you out of a hurry.
Czech, Polish, Portuguese, Slovak, Spanish	<code>hyphen.repeat</code>	Explicit hyphens behave like <code>\babelhyphen{repeat}</code> .
Czech, Polish, Slovak	<code>oneletter.nobreak</code>	Converts a space after a non-syllabic preposition or conjunction into a non-breaking space.
Greek	<code>diaeresis.hyphen</code>	Removes the diaeresis above iota and upsilon if hyphenated just before. It works with the three variants.
Greek	<code>transliteration.omega</code>	Although he provided combinations are not exactly the same, this transform follows the syntax of Omega: = for the circumflex, v for digamma, and so on. For better compatibility with Levy's system, ~ (as 'string') is an alternative to =. ' is tonos in Monotonic Greek, but oxia in Polytonic and Ancient Greek.
Greek	<code>sigma.final</code>	The transliteration system above does not convert the sigma at the end of a word (on purpose). This transforms does it. To prevent the conversion (an abbreviation, for example), write "s.
Hindi, Sanskrit	<code>transliteration.hk</code>	The Harvard-Kyoto system to romanize Devanagari.
Hindi, Sanskrit	<code>punctuation.space</code>	Inserts a space before the following four characters: <code>!?:;</code> .
Hungarian	<code>digraphs.hyphen</code>	Hyphenates the long digraphs <i>ccs, ddz, ggy, lly, nny, ssz, tty</i> and <i>zsz</i> as <i>cs-cs, dz-dz</i> , etc.
Indic scripts	<code>danda.nobreak</code>	Prevents a line break before a danda or double danda if there is a space. For Assamese, Bengali, Gujarati, Hindi, Kannada, Malayalam, Marathi, Oriya, Tamil, Telugu.
Latin	<code>digraphs.ligatures</code>	Replaces the groups <i>ae, AE, oe, OE</i> with <i>æ, Æ, œ, Œ</i> .
Latin	<code>letters.noj</code>	Replaces <i>j, J</i> with <i>i, I</i> .
Latin	<code>letters.uv</code>	Replaces <i>v, U</i> with <i>u, V</i> .
Serbian	<code>transliteration.gajica</code>	(Note serbian with ini files refers to the Cyrillic script, which is here the target.) The standard system devised by Ljudevit Gaj.
Arabic, Persian	<code>kashida.plain</code>	Experimental. A very simple and basic transform for 'plain' Arabic fonts, which attempts to distribute the tatwil as evenly as possible (starting at the end of the line). See the news for version 3.59.



**\babelposthyphenation** [*<options>*]{*<hyphenrules-name>*}{*<lua-pattern>*}{*<replacement>*}

**New 3.37-3.39** With *luatex* it is possible to define non-standard hyphenation rules, like  $f-f \rightarrow ff-f$ , repeated hyphens, ranked ruled (or more precisely, ‘penalized’ hyphenation points), and so on. A few rules are currently provided (see above), but they can be defined as shown in the following example, where {1} is the first captured char (between ( ) in the pattern):

```
\babelposthyphenation{german}{([fmrtp]) | {1}}
{
  { no = {1}, pre = {1}{1}- }, % Replace first char with disc
  remove,                    % Remove automatic disc (2nd node)
  {}                          % Keep last char, untouched
}
```

In the replacements, a captured char may be mapped to another, too. For example, if the first capture reads ([îû]), the replacement could be {1|îû|íú}, which maps *î* to *í*, and *û* to *ú*, so that the diaeresis is removed.

This feature is activated with the first `\babelposthyphenation` or `\babelprehyphenation`.

**New 3.67** With the optional argument you can associate a user defined transform to an attribute, so that it’s active only when it’s set (currently its attribute value is ignored). With this mechanism transforms can be set or unset even in the middle of paragraphs, and applied to single words. To define, set and unset the attribute, the LaTeX kernel provides the macros `\newattribute`, `\setattribute` and `\unsetattribute`. The following example shows how to use it, provided an attribute named `\latinnoj` has been declared:

```
\babelprehyphenation[attribute=\latinnoj]{latin}{ J }{ string = I }
```

See the [babel site](#) for a more detailed description and some examples. It also describes a few additional replacement types (`string`, `penalty`).

Although the main purpose of this command is non-standard hyphenation, it may actually be used for other transformations (after hyphenation is applied, so you must take discretionaries into account).

You are limited to substitutions as done by lua, although a future implementation may alternatively accept lpeg.

**\babelprehyphenation** [*<options>*]{*<locale-name>*}{*<lua-pattern>*}{*<replacement>*}

**New 3.44-3.52** It is similar to the latter, but (as its name implies) applied before hyphenation, which is particularly useful in transliterations. There are other differences: (1) the first argument is the locale instead of the name of the hyphenation patterns; (2) in the search patterns = has no special meaning, while | stands for an ordinary space; (3) in the replacement, discretionaries are not accepted.

See the description above for the optional argument.

This feature is activated with the first `\babelposthyphenation` or `\babelprehyphenation`.

**EXAMPLE** You can replace a character (or series of them) by another character (or series of them). Thus, to enter *ž* as *zh* and *š* as *sh* in a newly created locale for transliterated Russian:

```
\babelprovide[hyphenrules=+]{russian-latin} % Create locale
\babelprehyphenation{russian-latin}{([sz])h} % Create rule
{
  string = {1|sz|šž},
  remove
}
```

**EXAMPLE** The following rule prevent the word “a” from being at the end of a line:

```
\babelprehyphenation{english}{|a|}
  {}, {},                                % Keep first space and a
  { insert, penalty = 10000 },           % Insert penalty
  {}                                     % Keep last space
}
```

**NOTE** With luatex there is another approach to make text transformations, with the function `fonts.handlers.otf.addfeature`, which adds new features to an OTF font (substitution and positioning). These features can be made language-dependent, and babel by default recognizes this setting if the font has been declared with `\babelfont`. The *transforms* mechanism supplements rather than replaces OTF features.

With xetex, where *transforms* are not available, there is still another approach, with font mappings, mainly meant to perform encoding conversions and transliterations. Mappings, however, are linked to fonts, not to languages.

## 1.22 Selection based on BCP 47 tags

**New 3.43** The recommended way to select languages is that described at the beginning of this document. However, BCP 47 tags are becoming customary, particularly in documents (or parts of documents) generated by external sources, and therefore babel will provide a set of tools to select the locales in different situations, adapted to the particular needs of each case. Currently, babel provides autoloading of locales as described in this section. In these contexts autoloading is particularly important because we may not know on beforehand which languages will be requested.

It must be activated explicitly, because it is primarily meant for special tasks. Mapping from BCP 47 codes to locale names are not hardcoded in babel. Instead the data is taken from the ini files, which means currently about 250 tags are already recognized. Babel performs a simple lookup in the following way: `fr-Latn-FR` → `fr-Latn` → `fr-FR` → `fr`. Languages with the same resolved name are considered the same. Case is normalized before, so that `fr-latn-fr` → `fr-Latn-FR`. If a tag and a name overlap, the tag takes precedence.

Here is a minimal example:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[danish]{babel}

\babeladjust{
  autoload.bcp47 = on,
  autoload.bcp47.options = import
}

\begin{document}

Chapter in Danish: \chaptername.

\selectlanguage{de-AT}

\localedate{2020}{1}{30}

\end{document}
```

Currently the locales loaded are based on the `ini` files and decoupled from the main `ldf` files. This is by design, to ensure code generated externally produces the same result regardless of the languages requested in the document, but an option to use the `ldf` instead will be added in a future release, because both options make sense depending on the particular needs of each document (there will be some restrictions, however). The behaviour is adjusted with `\babeladjust` with the following parameters:

`autoload.bcp47` with values `on` and `off`.

`autoload.bcp47.options`, which are passed to `\babelprovide`; empty by default, but you may add `import` (features defined in the corresponding `babel-...tex` file might not be available).

`autoload.bcp47.prefix`. Although the public name used in selectors is the tag, the internal name will be different and generated by prepending a prefix, which by default is `bcp47-`. You may change it with this key.

**New 3.46** If an `ldf` file has been loaded, you can enable the corresponding language tags as selector names with:

```
\babeladjust{ bcp47.toname = on }
```

(You can deactivate it with `off`.) So, if `dutch` is one of the package (or class) options, you can write `\selectlanguage{nl}`. Note the language name does not change (in this example is still `dutch`), but you can get it with `\localeinfo` or `\getlanguageproperty`. It must be turned on explicitly for similar reasons to those explained above.

## 1.23 Selecting scripts

Currently `babel` provides no standard interface to select scripts, because they are best selected with either `\fontencoding` (low-level) or a language name (high-level). Even the Latin script may require different encodings (ie, sets of glyphs) depending on the language, and therefore such a switch would be in a sense incomplete.<sup>16</sup>

Some languages sharing the same script define macros to switch it (eg, `\textcyrillic`), but be aware they may also set the language to a certain default. Even the `babel` core defined `\textlatin`, but it was somewhat buggy because in some cases it messed up encodings and fonts (for example, if the main Latin encoding was `LY1`), and therefore it has been deprecated.<sup>17</sup>

`\ensureascii` `{⟨text⟩}`

**New 3.9i** This macro makes sure `⟨text⟩` is typeset with a LICR-savvy encoding in the ASCII range. It is used to redefine `\TeX` and `\LaTeX` so that they are correctly typeset even with `LGR` or `X2` (the complete list is stored in `\BabelNonASCII`, which by default is `LGR`, `X2`, `OT2`, `OT3`, `OT6`, `LHE`, `LWN`, `LMA`, `LMC`, `LMS`, `LMU`, but you can modify it). So, in some sense it fixes the bug described in the previous paragraph.

If non-ASCII encodings are not loaded (or no encoding at all), it is no-op (also `\TeX` and `\LaTeX` are not redefined); otherwise, `\ensureascii` switches to the encoding at the beginning of the document if ASCII-savvy, or else the last ASCII-savvy encoding loaded. For example, if you load `LY1`, `LGR`, then it is set to `LY1`, but if you load `LY1`, `T2A` it is set to `T2A`. The symbol encodings `TS1`, `T3`, and `TS3` are not taken into account, since they are not used

<sup>16</sup>The so-called Unicode fonts do not improve the situation either. So, a font suited for Vietnamese is not necessarily suited for, say, the romanization of Indic languages, and the fact it contains glyphs for Modern Greek does not mean it includes them for Classic Greek.

<sup>17</sup>But still defined for backwards compatibility.

for “ordinary” text (they are stored in `\BabelNonText`, used in some special cases when no Latin encoding is explicitly set).

The foregoing rules (which are applied “at begin document”) cover most of the cases. No assumption is made on characters above 127, which may not follow the LICR conventions – the goal is just to ensure most of the ASCII letters and symbols are the right ones.

## 1.24 Selecting directions

No macros to select the writing direction are provided, either – writing direction is intrinsic to each script and therefore it is best set by the language (which can be a dummy one). Furthermore, there are in fact two right-to-left modes, depending on the language, which differ in the way ‘weak’ numeric characters are ordered (eg, Arabic %123 vs Hebrew 123%).

**WARNING** The current code for **text** in `luatex` should be considered essentially stable, but, of course, it is not bug-free and there can be improvements in the future, because setting bidi text has many subtleties (see for example <https://www.w3.org/TR/html-bidi/>). A basic stable version for other engines must wait. This applies to text; there is a basic support for **graphical** elements, including the picture environment (with `pict2e`) and `pfg/tikz`. Also, indexes and the like are under study, as well as math (there is progress in the latter, too, but for example cases may fail).

An effort is being made to avoid incompatibilities in the future (this one of the reason currently bidi must be explicitly requested as a package option, with a certain bidi model, and also the layout options described below).

**WARNING** If characters to be mirrored are shown without changes with `luatex`, try with the following line:

```
\babeladjust{bidi.mirroring=off}
```

There are some package options controlling bidi writing.

**bidi=** default | basic | basic-r | bidi-l | bidi-r

**New 3.14** Selects the bidi algorithm to be used. With default the bidi mechanism is just activated (by default it is not), but every change must be marked up. In `xetex` and `pdftex` this is the only option.

In `luatex`, `basic-r` provides a simple and fast method for R text, which handles numbers and unmarked L text within an R context many in typical cases. **New 3.19** Finally, `basic` supports both L and R text, and it is the preferred method (support for `basic-r` is currently limited). (They are named `basic` mainly because they only consider the intrinsic direction of scripts and weak directionality.)

**New 3.29** In `xetex`, `bidi-r` and `bidi-l` resort to the package `bidi` (by Vafa Khalighi). Integration is still somewhat tentative, but it mostly works. For RL documents use the former, and for LR ones use the latter.

There are samples on GitHub, under `/required/babel/samples`. See particularly `lua-bidibasic.tex` and `lua-secenum.tex`.

**EXAMPLE** The following text comes from the Arabic Wikipedia (article about Arabia). Copy-pasting some text from the Wikipedia is a good way to test this feature. Remember `basic` is available in `luatex` only.

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[bidi=basic]{babel}
```

```

\babelprovide[import, main]{arabic}

\babelfont{rm}{FreeSerif}

\begin{document}

    وقد عرفت شبه جزيرة العرب طيلة العصر الهيليني (الاريفي) بـ
    Arabia أو Aravia (بالاريفية Αραβία), استخدم الرومان ثلاث
    بادئات بـ“Arabia” على ثلاث مناطق من شبه الجزيرة العربية، إلا أنها
    حقيقةً كانت أكبر مما تعرف عليه اليوم.

\end{document}

```

**EXAMPLE** With `bidi=basic` both L and R text can be mixed without explicit markup (the latter will be only necessary in some special cases where the Unicode algorithm fails). It is used much like `bidi=basic-r`, but with R text inside L text you may want to map the font so that the correct features are in force. This is accomplished with an option in `\babelprovide`, as illustrated:

```

\documentclass{book}

\usepackage[english, bidi=basic]{babel}

\babelprovide[onchar=ids fonts]{arabic}

\babelfont{rm}{Crimson}
\babelfont[*arabic]{rm}{FreeSerif}

\begin{document}

    Most Arabic speakers consider the two varieties to be two registers
    of one language, although the two registers can be referred to in
    Arabic as فصحى العصر \textit{fuṣḥā l-‘aṣr} (MSA) and
    فصحى التراث \textit{fuṣḥā t-turāth} (CA).

\end{document}

```

In this example, and thanks to `onchar=ids fonts`, any Arabic letter (because the language is `arabic`) changes its font to that set for this language (here defined via `*arabic`, because `Crimson` does not provide Arabic letters).

**NOTE** Boxes are “black boxes”. Numbers inside an `\hbox` (for example in a `\ref`) do not know anything about the surrounding chars. So, `\ref{A}-\ref{B}` are not rendered in the visual order A-B, but in the wrong one B-A (because the hyphen does not “see” the digits inside the `\hbox`es). If you need `\ref` ranges, the best option is to define a dedicated macro like this (to avoid explicit direction changes in the body; here `\textthe` must be defined to select the main language):

```

\newcommand\refrange[2]{\babelsublr{\textthe{\ref{#1}}-\textthe{\ref{#2}}}}

```

In the future a more complete method, reading recursively boxed text, may be added.

**layout=** sectioning | counters | lists | contents | footnotes | captions | columns | graphics | extras

**New 3.16** *To be expanded.* Selects which layout elements are adapted in `bidi` documents, including some text elements (except with options loading the `bidi` package, which

provides its own mechanism to control these elements). You may use several options with a dot-separated list (eg, `layout=counters.contents.sectioning`). This list will be expanded in future releases. Note not all options are required by all engines.

**sectioning** makes sure the sectioning macros are typeset in the main language, but with the title text in the current language (see below `\BabelPatchSection` for further details).

**counters** required in all engines (except `luatex` with `bidi=basic`) to reorder section numbers and the like (eg, `\subsection`..`\section`); required in `xetex` and `pdftex` for counters in general, as well as in `luatex` with `bidi=default`; required in `luatex` for numeric footnote marks  $>9$  with `bidi=basic-r` (but *not* with `bidi=basic`); note, however, it can depend on the counter format.

With counters, `\arabic` is not only considered L text always (with `\babelsublr`, see below), but also an “isolated” block which does not interact with the surrounding chars. So, while 1.2 in R text is rendered in that order with `bidi=basic` (as a decimal number), in `\arabic{c1}.\arabic{c2}` the visual order is `c2.c1`. Of course, you may always adjust the order by changing the language, if necessary.<sup>18</sup>

**lists** required in `xetex` and `pdftex`, but only in bidirectional (with both R and L paragraphs) documents in `luatex`.

**WARNING** As of April 2019 there is a bug with `\parshape` in `luatex` (a `TEX` primitive) which makes lists to be horizontally misplaced if they are inside a `\vbox` (like `minipage`) and the current direction is different from the main one. A workaround is to restore the main language before the box and then set the local one inside.

**contents** required in `xetex` and `pdftex`; in `luatex` toc entries are R by default if the main language is R.

**columns** required in `xetex` and `pdftex` to reverse the column order (currently only the standard two-column mode); in `luatex` they are R by default if the main language is R (including `multicol`).

**footnotes** not required in monolingual documents, but it may be useful in bidirectional documents (with both R and L paragraphs) in all engines; you may use alternatively `\BabelFootnote` described below (what this option does exactly is also explained there).

**captions** is similar to sectioning, but for `\caption`; not required in monolingual documents with `luatex`, but may be required in `xetex` and `pdftex` in some styles (support for the latter two engines is still experimental) **New 3.18** .

**tabular** required in `luatex` for R `tabular`, so that the first column is the right one (it has been tested only with simple tables, so expect some readjustments in the future); ignored in `pdftex` or `xetex` (which will not support a similar option in the short term). It patches an internal command, so it might be ignored by some packages and classes (or even raise an error). **New 3.18** .

**graphics** modifies the `picture` environment so that the whole figure is L but the text is R. It *does not* work with the standard `picture`, and `pict2e` is required. It attempts to do the same for `pgf/tikz`. Somewhat experimental. **New 3.32** .

**extras** is used for miscellaneous readjustments which do not fit into the previous groups. Currently redefines in `luatex` `\underline` and `\LaTeXe` **New 3.19** .

**EXAMPLE** Typically, in an Arabic document you would need:

```
\usepackage[bidi=basic,
  layout=counters.tabular]{babel}
```

`\babelsublr` `{\lr-text}`

<sup>18</sup>Next on the roadmap are counters and numeral systems in general. Expect some minor readjustments.

Digits in pdfTeX must be marked up explicitly (unlike LaTeX with `bidi=basic` or `bidi=basic-r` and, usually, XeTeX). This command is provided to set  $\langle lr\text{-}text \rangle$  in L mode if necessary. It's intended for what Unicode calls weak characters, because words are best set with the corresponding language. For this reason, there is no R counterpart. Any `\babelsublr` in *explicit* L mode is ignored. However, with `bidi=basic` and *implicit* L, it first returns to R and then switches to explicit L. To clarify this point, consider, in an R context:

```
RTL A ltr text \thechapter{} and still ltr RTL B
```

There are *three* R blocks and *two* L blocks, and the order is *RTL B and still ltr 1 ltr text RTL A*. This is by design to provide the proper behavior in the most usual cases — but if you need to use `\ref` in an L text inside R, the L text must be marked up explicitly; for example:

```
RTL A \foreignlanguage{english}{ltr text \thechapter{} and still ltr} RTL B
```

**`\BabelPatchSection`**  $\langle section\text{-}name \rangle$

Mainly for bidi text, but it can be useful in other cases. `\BabelPatchSection` and the corresponding option `layout=sectioning` takes a more logical approach (at least in many cases) because it applies the global language to the section format (including the `\chaptername` in `\chapter`), while the section text is still the current language. The latter is passed to tocs and marks, too, and with sectioning in layout they both reset the “global” language to the main one, while the text uses the “local” language. With `layout=sectioning` all the standard sectioning commands are redefined (it also “isolates” the page number in heads, for a proper bidi behavior), but with this command you can set them individually if necessary (but note then tocs and marks are not touched).

**`\BabelFootnote`**  $\langle cmd \rangle \langle local\text{-}language \rangle \langle before \rangle \langle after \rangle$

**New 3.17** Something like:

```
\BabelFootnote{\parsfootnote}{\language}\language{({})}
```

defines `\parsfootnote` so that `\parsfootnote{note}` is equivalent to:

```
\footnote{(\foreignlanguage{\language}\language){note}}
```

but the footnote itself is typeset in the main language (to unify its direction). In addition, `\parsfootnotetext` is defined. The option `footnotes` just does the following:

```
\BabelFootnote{\footnote}{\language}\language{}{}%
\BabelFootnote{\localfootnote}{\language}\language{}{}%
\BabelFootnote{\mainfootnote}{\language}\language{}{}%
```

(which also redefine `\footnotetext` and define `\localfootnotetext` and `\mainfootnotetext`). If the language argument is empty, then no language is selected inside the argument of the footnote. Note this command is available always in bidi documents, even without `layout=footnotes`.

**EXAMPLE** If you want to preserve directionality in footnotes and there are many footnotes entirely in English, you can define:

```
\BabelFootnote{\enfootnote}{english}{\{.}
```

It adds a period outside the English part, so that it is placed at the left in the last line. This means the dot the end of the footnote text should be omitted.

## 1.25 Language attributes

### `\languageattribute`

This is a user-level command, to be used in the preamble of a document (after `\usepackage[...]{babel}`), that declares which attributes are to be used for a given language. It takes two arguments: the first is the name of the language; the second, a (list of) attribute(s) to be used. Attributes must be set in the preamble and only once – they cannot be turned on and off. The command checks whether the language is known in this document and whether the attribute(s) are known for this language.

Very often, using a *modifier* in a package option is better.

Several language definition files use their own methods to set options. For example, french uses `\frenchsetup`, magyar (1.5) uses `\magyarOptions`; modifiers provided by spanish have no attribute counterparts. Macros setting options are also used (eg, `\ProsodicMarksOn` in latin).

## 1.26 Hooks

**New 3.9a** A hook is a piece of code to be executed at certain events. Some hooks are predefined when `luatex` and `xetex` are used.

`\AddBabelHook` [`<lang>`]{`<name>`}{`<event>`}{`<code>`}

The same name can be applied to several events. Hooks with a certain `{<name>}` may be enabled and disabled for all defined events with `\EnableBabelHook{<name>}`, `\DisableBabelHook{<name>}`. Names containing the string `babel` are reserved (they are used, for example, by `\useshortands*` to add a hook for the event `afterextras`).

**New 3.33** They may be also applied to a specific language with the optional argument; language-specific settings are executed after global ones.

Current events are the following; in some of them you can use one to three `TEX` parameters (`#1`, `#2`, `#3`), with the meaning given:

**addialect** (language name, dialect name) Used by `luababel.def` to load the patterns if not preloaded.

**patterns** (language name, language with encoding) Executed just after the `\language` has been set. The second argument has the patterns name actually selected (in the form of either `lang:ENC` or `lang`).

**hyphenation** (language name, language with encoding) Executed locally just before exceptions given in `\babelhyphenation` are actually set.

**defaultcommands** Used (locally) in `\StartBabelCommands`.

**encodedcommands** (input, font encodings) Used (locally) in `\StartBabelCommands`. Both `xetex` and `luatex` make sure the encoded text is read correctly.

**stopcommands** Used to reset the above, if necessary.

**write** This event comes just after the switching commands are written to the aux file.

**beforeextras** Just before executing `\extras<language>`. This event and the next one should not contain language-dependent code (for that, add it to `\extras<language>`).

**afterextras** Just after executing `\extras<language>`. For example, the following deactivates shorthands in all languages:



```
\AddBabelHook{noshort}{afterextras}{\languageshorthands{none}}
```

**stringprocess** Instead of a parameter, you can manipulate the macro `\BabelString` containing the string to be defined with `\SetString`. For example, to use an expanded version of the string in the definition, write:

```
\AddBabelHook{myhook}{stringprocess}{%
\protected@edef\BabelString{\BabelString}}
```

**initiateactive** (char as active, char as other, original char) **New 3.9i** Executed just after a shorthand has been ‘initiated’. The three parameters are the same character with different catcodes: active, other (`\string’ed`) and the original one.

**afterreset** **New 3.9i** Executed when selecting a language just after `\originalTeX` is run and reset to its base value, before executing `\captions⟨language⟩` and `\date⟨language⟩`.

Four events are used in `hyphen.cfg`, which are handled in a quite different way for efficiency reasons – unlike the precedent ones, they only have a single hook and replace a default definition.

**everylanguage** (language) Executed before every language patterns are loaded.

**loadkernel** (file) By default just defines a few basic commands. It can be used to define different versions of them or to load a file.

**loadpatterns** (patterns file) Loads the patterns file. Used by `luababel.def`.

**loadexceptions** (exceptions file) Loads the exceptions file. Used by `luababel.def`.

**\BabelContentsFiles** **New 3.9a** This macro contains a list of “toc” types requiring a command to switch the language. Its default value is `toc,lof,lot`, but you may redefine it with `\renewcommand` (it’s up to you to make sure no toc type is duplicated).

## 1.27 Languages supported by babel with ldf files

In the following table most of the languages supported by babel with and `.ldf` file are listed, together with the names of the option which you can load babel with for each language. Note this list is open and the current options may be different. It does not include ini files.

**Afrikaans** afrikaans

**Azerbaijani** azerbaijani

**Basque** basque

**Breton** breton

**Bulgarian** bulgarian

**Catalan** catalan

**Croatian** croatian

**Czech** czech

**Danish** danish

**Dutch** dutch

**English** english, USenglish, american, UKenglish, british, canadian, australian, newzealand

**Esperanto** esperanto

**Estonian** estonian

**Finnish** finnish

**French** french, francaais, canadien, acadian

**Galician** galician

**German** austrian, german, germanb, ngerman, naustrian  
**Greek** greek, polutonikogreek  
**Hebrew** hebrew  
**Icelandic** icelandic  
**Indonesian** indonesian (bahasa, indon, bahasai)  
**Interlingua** interlingua  
**Irish Gaelic** irish  
**Italian** italian  
**Latin** latin  
**Lower Sorbian** lowersorbian  
**Malay** malay, melayu (bahasam)  
**North Sami** samin  
**Norwegian** norsk, nynorsk  
**Polish** polish  
**Portuguese** portuguese, brazilian (portuges, brazil)<sup>19</sup>  
**Romanian** romanian  
**Russian** russian  
**Scottish Gaelic** scottish  
**Spanish** spanish  
**Slovakian** slovak  
**Slovenian** slovene  
**Swedish** swedish  
**Serbian** serbian  
**Turkish** turkish  
**Ukrainian** ukrainian  
**Upper Sorbian** uppersorbian  
**Welsh** welsh

There are more languages not listed above, including hindi, thai, thaicjk, latvian, turkmen, magyar, mongolian, romansh, lithuanian, spanglish, vietnamese, japanese, pinyin, arabic, farsi, ibygreek, bgreek, serbianc, frenchle, ethiop and friulan.

Most of them work out of the box, but some may require extra fonts, encoding files, a preprocessor or even a complete framework (like CJK or luatexja). For example, if you have got the velthuis/devnag package, you can create a file with extension .dn:

```

\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[hindi]{babel}
\begin{document}
{\dn devaanaa.m priya.h}
\end{document}

```

Then you preprocess it with devnag  $\langle file \rangle$ , which creates  $\langle file \rangle$ .tex; you can then typeset the latter with  $\LaTeX$ .

## 1.28 Unicode character properties in luatex

**New 3.32** Part of the babel job is to apply Unicode rules to some script-specific features based on some properties. Currently, they are 3, namely, direction (ie, bidi class), mirroring glyphs, and line breaking for CJK scripts. These properties are stored in lua tables, which you can modify with the following macro (for example, to set them for glyphs in the PUA).

$\backslash\text{babelcharproperty}$   $\{ \langle char-code \rangle \} [ \langle to-char-code \rangle ] \{ \langle property \rangle \} \{ \langle value \rangle \}$

<sup>19</sup>The two last name comes from the times when they had to be shortened to 8 characters

**New 3.32** Here,  $\langle char-code \rangle$  is a number (with TeX syntax). With the optional argument, you can set a range of values. There are three properties (with a short name, taken from Unicode): direction (bc), mirror (bmg), linebreak (lb). The settings are global, and this command is allowed only in vertical mode (the preamble or between paragraphs). For example:

```
\babelcharproperty{\_}{mirror}{`?}
\babelcharproperty{\-}{direction}{l} % or al, r, en, an, on, et, cs
\babelcharproperty{\`){linebreak}{cl} % or id, op, cl, ns, ex, in, hy
```

**New 3.39** Another property is locale, which adds characters to the list used by onchar in \babelprovide, or, if the last argument is empty, removes them. The last argument is the locale name:

```
\babelcharproperty{\,}{locale}{english}
```

## 1.29 Tweaking some features

**\babeladjust**  $\langle key-value-list \rangle$

**New 3.36** Sometimes you might need to disable some babel features. Currently this macro understands the following keys (and only for luatex), with values on or off: bidi.text, bidi.mirroring, bidi.mapdigits, layout.lists, layout.tabular, linebreak.sea, linebreak.cjk, justify.arabic. For example, you can set \babeladjust{bidi.text=off} if you are using an alternative algorithm or with large sections not requiring it. Use with care, because these options do not deactivate other related options (like paragraph direction with bidi.text).

## 1.30 Tips, workarounds, known issues and notes

- If you use the document class book *and* you use \ref inside the argument of \chapter (or just use \ref inside \MakeUppercase), L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X will keep complaining about an undefined label. To prevent such problems, you can revert to using uppercase labels, you can use \lowercase{\ref{foo}} inside the argument of \chapter, or, if you will not use shorthands in labels, set the safe option to none or bib.
- Both ltxdoc and babel use \AtBeginDocument to change some catcodes, and babel reloads hline to make sure : has the right one, so if you want to change the catcode of | it has to be done using the same method at the proper place, with

```
\AtBeginDocument{\DeleteShortVerb{\|}}
```

*before* loading babel. This way, when the document begins the sequence is (1) make | active (ltxdoc); (2) make it unactive (your settings); (3) make babel shorthands active (babel); (4) reload hline (babel, now with the correct catcodes for | and :).

- Documents with several input encodings are not frequent, but sometimes are useful. You can set different encodings for different languages as the following example shows:

```
\addto\extrasfrench{\inputencoding{latin1}}
\addto\extrarussian{\inputencoding{koi8-r}}
```

- For the hyphenation to work correctly, lccodes cannot change, because T<sub>E</sub>X only takes into account the values when the paragraph is hyphenated, i.e., when it has been finished.<sup>20</sup> So, if you write a chunk of French text with `\foreignlanguage`, the apostrophes might not be taken into account. This is a limitation of T<sub>E</sub>X, not of babel. Alternatively, you may use `\usesorthands` to activate ' and `\definesorthand`, or redefine `\textquoteright` (the latter is called by the non-ASCII right quote).
- `\bibitem` is out of sync with `\selectlanguage` in the .aux file. The reason is `\bibitem` uses `\immediate` (and others, in fact), while `\selectlanguage` doesn't. There is a similar issue with floats, too. There is no known workaround.
- Babel does not take into account `\normalsfcodes` and (non-)French spacing is not always properly (un)set by languages. However, problems are unlikely to happen and therefore this part remains untouched in version 3.9 (but it is in the 'to do' list).
- Using a character mathematically active (ie, with math code "8000) as a shorthand can make T<sub>E</sub>X enter in an infinite loop in some rare cases. (Another issue in the 'to do' list, although there is a partial solution.)

The following packages can be useful, too (the list is still far from complete):

**csquotes** Logical markup for quotes.

**iflang** Tests correctly the current language.

**hyphsubst** Selects a different set of patterns for a language.

**translator** An open platform for packages that need to be localized.

**siunitx** Typesetting of numbers and physical quantities.

**biblatex** Programmable bibliographies and citations.

**bicaption** Bilingual captions.

**babelbib** Multilingual bibliographies.

**microtype** Adjusts the typesetting according to some languages (kerning and spacing).

Ligatures can be disabled.

**substitutefont** Combines fonts in several encodings.

**mkpattern** Generates hyphenation patterns.

**tracklang** Tracks which languages have been requested.

**ucharclasses** (xetex) Switches fonts when you switch from one Unicode block to another.

**zhspacing** Spacing for CJK documents in xetex.

## 1.31 Current and future work

The current work is focused on the so-called complex scripts in luatex. In 8-bit engines, babel provided a basic support for bidi text as part of the style for Hebrew, but it is somewhat unsatisfactory and internally replaces some hardwired commands by other hardwired commands (generic changes would be much better).

Useful additions would be, for example, time, currency, addresses and personal names.<sup>21</sup>

But that is the easy part, because they don't require modifying the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X internals.

Calendars (Arabic, Persian, Indic, etc.) are under study.

Also interesting are differences in the sentence structure or related to it. For example, in Basque the number precedes the name (including chapters), in Hungarian "from (1)" is "(1)-ből", but "from (3)" is "(3)-ből", in Spanish an item labelled "3.<sup>o</sup>" may be referred to as either "ítem 3.<sup>o</sup>" or "3.<sup>er</sup> ítem", and so on.

<sup>20</sup>This explains why L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X assumes the lowercase mapping of T1 and does not provide a tool for multiple mappings. Unfortunately, `\savingshyphcodes` is not a solution either, because lccodes for hyphenation are frozen in the format and cannot be changed.

<sup>21</sup>See for example POSIX, ISO 14652 and the Unicode Common Locale Data Repository (CLDR). Those systems, however, have limited application to T<sub>E</sub>X because their aim is just to display information and not fine typesetting.

An option to manage bidirectional document layout in luatex (lists, footnotes, etc.) is almost finished, but xetex required more work. Unfortunately, proper support for xetex requires patching somehow lots of macros and packages (and some issues related to `\specials` remain, like color and hyperlinks), so babel resorts to the bidi package (by Vafa Khalighi). See the babel repository for a small example (xe-bidi).

### 1.32 Tentative and experimental code

See the code section for `\foreignlanguage*` (a new starred version of `\foreignlanguage`). For old an deprecated functions, see the wiki.

#### Options for locales loaded on the fly

**New 3.51** `\babeladjust{ autoload.options = ... }` sets the options when a language is loaded on the fly (by default, no options). A typical value would be `import`, which defines captions, date, numerals, etc., but ignores the code in the tex file (for example, extended numerals in Greek).

#### Labels

**New 3.48** There is some work in progress for babel to deal with labels, both with the relation to captions (chapters, part), and how counters are used to define them. It is still somewhat tentative because it is far from trivial – see the wiki for further details.

## 2 Loading languages with `language.dat`

$\text{\TeX}$  and most engines based on it (pdf $\text{\TeX}$ , xetex,  $\epsilon\text{\TeX}$ , the main exception being luatex) require hyphenation patterns to be preloaded when a format is created (eg,  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , Xe $\text{\LaTeX}$ , pdf $\text{\LaTeX}$ ). babel provides a tool which has become standard in many distributions and based on a “configuration file” named `language.dat`. The exact way this file is used depends on the distribution, so please, read the documentation for the latter (note also some distributions generate the file with some tool).

**New 3.9q** With luatex, however, patterns are loaded on the fly when requested by the language (except the “0th” language, typically english, which is preloaded always).<sup>22</sup> Until 3.9n, this task was delegated to the package `luatex-hyphen`, by Khaled Hosny, Élie Roux, and Manuel Pégourié-Gonnard, and required an extra file named `language.dat.lua`, but now a new mechanism has been devised based solely on `language.dat`. **You must rebuild the formats** if upgrading from a previous version. You may want to have a local `language.dat` for a particular project (for example, a book on Chemistry).<sup>23</sup>

### 2.1 Format

In that file the person who maintains a  $\text{\TeX}$  environment has to record for which languages he has hyphenation patterns *and* in which files these are stored<sup>24</sup>. When hyphenation exceptions are stored in a separate file this can be indicated by naming that file *after* the file with the hyphenation patterns.

The file can contain empty lines and comments, as well as lines which start with an equals (=) sign. Such a line will instruct  $\text{\LaTeX}$  that the hyphenation patterns just processed have to be known under an alternative name. Here is an example:

<sup>22</sup>This feature was added to 3.9o, but it was buggy. Both 3.9o and 3.9p are deprecated.

<sup>23</sup>The loader for lua(e)tex is slightly different as it's not based on babel but on `etex.src`. Until 3.9p it just didn't work, but thanks to the new code it works by reloading the data in the babel way, i.e., with `language.dat`.

<sup>24</sup>This is because different operating systems sometimes use very different file-naming conventions.

```
% File      : language.dat
% Purpose   : tell iniTeX what files with patterns to load.
english    english.hyphenations
=british

dutch      hyphen.dutch exceptions.dutch % Nederlands
german     hyphen.ger
```

You may also set the font encoding the patterns are intended for by following the language name by a colon and the encoding code.<sup>25</sup> For example:

```
german:T1 hyphenT1.ger
german hyphen.ger
```

With the previous settings, if the encoding when the language is selected is T1 then the patterns in `hyphenT1.ger` are used, but otherwise use those in `hyphen.ger` (note the encoding can be set in `\extras<lang>`).

A typical error when using `babel` is the following:

```
No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for
the language '<lang>' into the format.
Please, configure your TeX system to add them and
rebuild the format. Now I will use the patterns
preloaded for english instead}}
```

It simply means you must reconfigure `language.dat`, either by hand or with the tools provided by your distribution.

### 3 The interface between the core of `babel` and the language definition files

The *language definition files* (`ldf`) must conform to a number of conventions, because these files have to fill in the gaps left by the common code in `babel.def`, i. e., the definitions of the macros that produce texts. Also the language-switching possibility which has been built into the `babel` system has its implications.

The following assumptions are made:

- Some of the language-specific definitions might be used by plain  $\text{\TeX}$  users, so the files have to be coded so that they can be read by both  $\text{\LaTeX}$  and plain  $\text{\TeX}$ . The current format can be checked by looking at the value of the macro `\fmtname`.
- The common part of the `babel` system redefines a number of macros and environments (defined previously in the document style) to put in the names of macros that replace the previously hard-wired texts. These macros have to be defined in the language definition files.
- The language definition files must define five macros, used to activate and deactivate the language-specific definitions. These macros are `\<lang>hyphenmins`, `\captions<lang>`, `\date<lang>`, `\extras<lang>` and `\noextras<lang>` (the last two may be left empty); where `<lang>` is either the name of the language definition file or the name of the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  option that is to be used. These macros and their functions are

<sup>25</sup>This is not a new feature, but in former versions it didn't work correctly.

discussed below. You must define all or none for a language (or a dialect); defining, say, `\date⟨lang⟩` but not `\captions⟨lang⟩` does not raise an error but can lead to unexpected results.

- When a language definition file is loaded, it can define `\l@⟨lang⟩` to be a dialect of `\language0` when `\l@⟨lang⟩` is undefined.
- Language names must be all lowercase. If an unknown language is selected, babel will attempt setting it after lowercasing its name.
- The semantics of modifiers is not defined (on purpose). In most cases, they will just be simple separated options (eg, spanish), but a language might require, say, a set of options organized as a tree with suboptions (in such a case, the recommended separator is `/`).

Some recommendations:

- The preferred shorthand is `"`, which is not used in  $\LaTeX$  (quotes are entered as ``` and `'`). Other good choices are characters which are not used in a certain context (eg, `=` in an ancient language). Note however `=`, `<`, `>`, `:` and the like can be dangerous, because they may be used as part of the syntax of some elements (numeric expressions, key/value pairs, etc.).
- Captions should not contain shorthands or encoding-dependent commands (the latter is not always possible, but should be clearly documented). They should be defined using the LICR. You may also use the new tools for encoded strings, described below.
- Avoid adding things to `\noextras⟨lang⟩` except for `umlauthigh` and friends, `\bbl@deactivate`, `\bbl@(non)frenchspacing`, and language-specific macros. Use always, if possible, `\bbl@save` and `\bbl@savevariable` (except if you still want to have access to the previous value). Do not reset a macro or a setting to a hardcoded value. Never. Instead save its value in `\extras⟨lang⟩`.
- Do not switch scripts. If you want to make sure a set of glyphs is used, switch either the font encoding (low-level) or the language (high-level, which in turn may switch the font encoding). Usage of things like `\latintext` is deprecated.<sup>26</sup>
- Please, for “private” internal macros do not use the `\bbl@` prefix. It is used by babel and it can lead to incompatibilities.

There are no special requirements for documenting your language files. Now they are not included in the base babel manual, so provide a standalone document suited for your needs, as well as other files you think can be useful. A PDF and a “readme” are strongly recommended.

### 3.1 Guidelines for contributed languages

Currently, the easiest way to contribute a new language is by taking one of the 500 or so ini templates available on GitHub as a basis. Just make a pull request or download it and then, after filling the fields, send it to me. Feel free to ask for help or to make feature requests.

As to ldf files, now language files are “outsourced” and are located in a separate directory (`/macros/latex/contrib/babel-contrib`), so that they are contributed directly to CTAN (please, do not send to me language styles just to upload them to CTAN).

Of course, placing your style files in this directory is not mandatory, but if you want to do it, here are a few guidelines.

<sup>26</sup>But not removed, for backward compatibility.



- Do not hesitate stating on the file heads you are the author and the maintainer, if you actually are. There is no need to state the babel maintainer(s) as authors if they have not contributed significantly to your language files.
- Fonts are not strictly part of a language, so they are best placed in the corresponding TeX tree. This includes not only tfm, vf, ps1, ot f, mf files and the like, but also fd ones.
- Font and input encodings are usually best placed in the corresponding tree, too, but sometimes they belong more naturally to the babel style. Note you may also need to define a LICR.
- Babel ldf files may just interface a framework, as it happens often with Oriental languages/scripts. This framework is best placed in its own directory.

The following page provides a starting point for ldf files:

<http://www.texnia.com/incubator.html>. See also

<https://latex3.github.io/babel/guides/list-of-locale-templates.html>.

If you need further assistance and technical advice in the development of language styles, I am willing to help you. And of course, you can make any suggestion you like.

## 3.2 Basic macros

In the core of the babel system, several macros are defined for use in language definition files. Their purpose is to make a new language known. The first two are related to hyphenation patterns.

**\addlanguage** The macro \addlanguage is a non-outer version of the macro \newlanguage, defined in plain.tex version 3.x. Here “language” is used in the TeX sense of set of hyphenation patterns.

**\adddialect** The macro \adddialect can be used when two languages can (or must) use the same hyphenation patterns. This can also be useful for languages for which no patterns are preloaded in the format. In such cases the default behavior of the babel system is to define this language as a ‘dialect’ of the language for which the patterns were loaded as \language0. Here “language” is used in the TeX sense of set of hyphenation patterns.

**\<lang>hyphenmins** The macro \<lang>hyphenmins is used to store the values of the \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin. Redefine this macro to set your own values, with two numbers corresponding to these two parameters. For example:

```
\renewcommand\spanishhyphenmins{34}
```

(Assigning \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin directly in \extras<lang> has no effect.)

**\providehyphenmins** The macro \providehyphenmins should be used in the language definition files to set \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin. This macro will check whether these parameters were provided by the hyphenation file before it takes any action. If these values have been already set, this command is ignored (currently, default pattern files do *not* set them).

**\captions<lang>** The macro \captions<lang> defines the macros that hold the texts to replace the original hard-wired texts.

**\date<lang>** The macro \date<lang> defines \today.

**\extras<lang>** The macro \extras<lang> contains all the extra definitions needed for a specific language. This macro, like the following, is a hook – you can add things to it, but it must not be used directly.

**\noextras<lang>** Because we want to let the user switch between languages, but we do not know what state TeX might be in after the execution of \extras<lang>, a macro that brings TeX into a predefined state is needed. It will be no surprise that the name of this macro is \noextras<lang>.



<code>\bbl@declare@ttribute</code>	This is a command to be used in the language definition files for declaring a language attribute. It takes three arguments: the name of the language, the attribute to be defined, and the code to be executed when the attribute is to be used.
<code>\main@language</code>	To postpone the activation of the definitions needed for a language until the beginning of a document, all language definition files should use <code>\main@language</code> instead of <code>\selectlanguage</code> . This will just store the name of the language, and the proper language will be activated at the start of the document.
<code>\ProvidesLanguage</code>	The macro <code>\ProvidesLanguage</code> should be used to identify the language definition files. Its syntax is similar to the syntax of the $\TeX$ command <code>\ProvidesPackage</code> .
<code>\LdfInit</code>	The macro <code>\LdfInit</code> performs a couple of standard checks that must be made at the beginning of a language definition file, such as checking the category code of the <code>@</code> -sign, preventing the <code>.ldf</code> file from being processed twice, etc.
<code>\ldf@quit</code>	The macro <code>\ldf@quit</code> does work needed if a <code>.ldf</code> file was processed earlier. This includes resetting the category code of the <code>@</code> -sign, preparing the language to be activated at <code>\begin{document}</code> time, and ending the input stream.
<code>\ldf@finish</code>	The macro <code>\ldf@finish</code> does work needed at the end of each <code>.ldf</code> file. This includes resetting the category code of the <code>@</code> -sign, loading a local configuration file, and preparing the language to be activated at <code>\begin{document}</code> time.
<code>\loadlocalcfg</code>	After processing a language definition file, $\TeX$ can be instructed to load a local configuration file. This file can, for instance, be used to add strings to <code>\captions{&lt;lang&gt;}</code> to support local document classes. The user will be informed that this configuration file has been loaded. This macro is called by <code>\ldf@finish</code> .
<code>\substitutefontfamily</code>	(Deprecated.) This command takes three arguments, a font encoding and two font family names. It creates a font description file for the first font in the given encoding. This <code>.fd</code> file will instruct $\TeX$ to use a font from the second family when a font from the first family in the given encoding seems to be needed.

### 3.3 Skeleton

Here is the basic structure of an `ldf` file, with a language, a dialect and an attribute. Strings are best defined using the method explained in sec. 3.8 (babel 3.9 and later).

```

\ProvidesLanguage{<language>}
    [2016/04/23 v0.0 <Language> support from the babel system]
\LdfInit{<language>}{captions<language>}

\ifx\undefined\l@<language>
  \@nopatterns{<Language>}
  \adddialect\l@<language>0
\fi

\adddialect\l@<dialect>\l@<language>

\bbl@declare@ttribute{<language>}{<attrib>}{%
  \expandafter\addto\expandafter\extras<language>
  \expandafter{\extras<attrib><language>}%
  \let\captions<language>\captions<attrib><language>}

\providehyphenmins{<language>}{\tw@\thr@@}

\StartBabelCommands*{<language>}{captions}
\SetString\chaptername{<chapter name>}
% More strings

\StartBabelCommands*{<language>}{date}

```

```

\SetString\monthiname{<name of first month>}
% More strings

\StartBabelCommands*{<dialect>}{captions}
\SetString\chaptername{<chapter name>}
% More strings

\StartBabelCommands*{<dialect>}{date}
\SetString\monthiname{<name of first month>}
% More strings

\EndBabelCommands

\addto\extras<language>{}
\addto\noextras<language>{}
\let\extras<dialect>\extras<language>
\let\noextras<dialect>\noextras<language>

\ldf@finish{<language>}

```

**NOTE** If for some reason you want to load a package in your style, you should be aware it cannot be done directly in the `ldf` file, but it can be delayed with `\AtEndOfPackage`. Macros from external packages can be used *inside* definitions in the `ldf` itself (for example, `\extras<language>`), but if executed directly, the code must be placed inside `\AtEndOfPackage`. A trivial example illustrating these points is:

```

\AtEndOfPackage{%
  \RequirePackage{dingbat}%      Delay package
  \savebox{\myeye}{\eye}}%      And direct usage
\newsavebox{\myeye}
\newcommand\myanchor{\anchor}%  But OK inside command

```

### 3.4 Support for active characters

In quite a number of language definition files, active characters are introduced. To facilitate this, some support macros are provided.

`\initiate@active@char` The internal macro `\initiate@active@char` is used in language definition files to instruct  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to give a character the category code ‘active’. When a character has been made active it will remain that way until the end of the document. Its definition may vary.

`\bbl@activate` The command `\bbl@activate` is used to change the way an active character expands.

`\bbl@deactivate` `\bbl@activate` ‘switches on’ the active behavior of the character. `\bbl@deactivate` lets the active character expand to its former (mostly) non-active self.

`\declare@shorthand` The macro `\declare@shorthand` is used to define the various shorthands. It takes three arguments: the name for the collection of shorthands this definition belongs to; the character (sequence) that makes up the shorthand, i.e. `~` or `"a`; and the code to be executed when the shorthand is encountered. (It does *not* raise an error if the shorthand character has not been “initiated”.)

`\bbl@add@special` The  $\text{\TeX}$ book states: “Plain  $\text{\TeX}$  includes a macro called `\dospecials` that is essentially a set macro, representing the set of all characters that have a special category code.” [4, p. 380]

`\bbl@remove@special` It is used to set text ‘verbatim’. To make this work if more characters get a special category code, you have to add this character to the macro `\dospecial`.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  adds another macro called `\@sanitize` representing the same character set, but without the curly braces. The macros `\bbl@add@special<char>` and `\bbl@remove@special<char>` add and remove the character `<char>` to these two sets.

### 3.5 Support for saving macro definitions

Language definition files may want to redefine macros that already exist. Therefore a mechanism for saving (and restoring) the original definition of those macros is provided. We provide two macros for this<sup>27</sup>.

`\babel@save` To save the current meaning of any control sequence, the macro `\babel@save` is provided. It takes one argument,  $\langle csname \rangle$ , the control sequence for which the meaning has to be saved.

`\babel@savevariable` A second macro is provided to save the current value of a variable. In this context, anything that is allowed after the `\` the primitive is considered to be a variable. The macro takes one argument, the  $\langle variable \rangle$ .  
The effect of the preceding macros is to append a piece of code to the current definition of `\originalTeX`. When `\originalTeX` is expanded, this code restores the previous definition of the control sequence or the previous value of the variable.

### 3.6 Support for extending macros

`\addto` The macro `\addto{ $\langle control sequence \rangle$ { $\langle \TeX code \rangle$ }}` can be used to extend the definition of a macro. The macro need not be defined (ie, it can be undefined or `\relax`). This macro can, for instance, be used in adding instructions to a macro like `\extrasenglish`. Be careful when using this macro, because depending on the case the assignment can be either global (usually) or local (sometimes). That does not seem very consistent, but this behavior is preserved for backward compatibility. If you are using `etoolbox`, by Philipp Lehman, consider using the tools provided by this package instead of `\addto`.

### 3.7 Macros common to a number of languages

`\bbl@allowhyphens` In several languages compound words are used. This means that when  $\TeX$  has to hyphenate such a compound word, it only does so at the ‘-’ that is used in such words. To allow hyphenation in the rest of such a compound word, the macro `\bbl@allowhyphens` can be used.

`\allowhyphens` Same as `\bbl@allowhyphens`, but does nothing if the encoding is T1. It is intended mainly for characters provided as real glyphs by this encoding but constructed with `\accent` in OT1.

Note the previous command (`\bbl@allowhyphens`) has different applications (hyphens and discretionaries) than this one (composite chars). Note also prior to version 3.7, `\allowhyphens` had the behavior of `\bbl@allowhyphens`.

`\set@low@box` For some languages, quotes need to be lowered to the baseline. For this purpose the macro `\set@low@box` is available. It takes one argument and puts that argument in an `\hbox`, at the baseline. The result is available in `\box0` for further processing.

`\save@sfont` Sometimes it is necessary to preserve the `\spacefactor`. For this purpose the macro `\save@sfont` is available. It takes one argument, saves the current `spacefactor`, executes the argument, and restores the `spacefactor`.

`\bbl@frenchspacing`  
`\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` The commands `\bbl@frenchspacing` and `\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` can be used to properly switch French spacing on and off.

### 3.8 Encoding-dependent strings

**New 3.9a** Babel 3.9 provides a way of defining strings in several encodings, intended mainly for `luatex` and `xetex`. This is the only new feature requiring changes in language files if you want to make use of it.

Furthermore, it must be activated explicitly, with the package option `strings`. If there is no `strings`, these blocks are ignored, except `\SetCases` (and except if forced as described

<sup>27</sup>This mechanism was introduced by Bernd Raichle.

below). In other words, the old way of defining/switching strings still works and it's used by default.

It consists of a series of blocks started with `\StartBabelCommands`. The last block is closed with `\EndBabelCommands`. Each block is a single group (ie, local declarations apply until the next `\StartBabelCommands` or `\EndBabelCommands`). An ldf may contain several series of this kind.

Thanks to this new feature, string values and string language switching are not mixed any more. No need of `\addto`. If the language is french, just redefine `\frenchchaptername`.

`\StartBabelCommands`  $\langle\textit{language-list}\rangle\{\langle\textit{category}\rangle\}[\langle\textit{selector}\rangle]$

The  $\langle\textit{language-list}\rangle$  specifies which languages the block is intended for. A block is taken into account only if the `\CurrentOption` is listed here. Alternatively, you can define `\BabelLanguages` to a comma-separated list of languages to be defined (if undefined, `\StartBabelCommands` sets it to `\CurrentOption`). You may write `\CurrentOption` as the language, but this is discouraged – a explicit name (or names) is much better and clearer. A “selector” is a name to be used as value in package option strings, optionally followed by extra info about the encodings to be used. The name `unicode` must be used for `xetex` and `luatex` (the key `strings` has also other two special values: `generic` and `encoded`). If a string is set several times (because several blocks are read), the first one takes precedence (ie, it works much like `\providecommand`).

Encoding info is `charset=` followed by a charset, which if given sets how the strings should be translated to the internal representation used by the engine, typically `utf8`, which is the only value supported currently (default is no translations). Note `charset` is applied by `luatex` and `xetex` when reading the file, not when the macro or string is used in the document.

A list of font encodings which the strings are expected to work with can be given after `fontenc=` (separated with spaces, if two or more) – recommended, but not mandatory, although blocks without this key are not taken into account if you have requested `strings=encoded`.

Blocks without a selector are read always if the key `strings` has been used. They provide fallback values, and therefore must be the last blocks; they should be provided always if possible and all strings should be defined somehow inside it; they can be the only blocks (mainly LGC scripts using the LICR). Blocks without a selector can be activated explicitly with `strings=generic` (no block is taken into account except those). With `strings=encoded`, strings in those blocks are set as default (internally, `?`). With `strings=encoded` strings are protected, but they are correctly expanded in `\MakeUppercase` and the like. If there is no key `strings`, string definitions are ignored, but `\SetCases` are still honored (in an encoded way).

The  $\langle\textit{category}\rangle$  is either `captions`, `date` or `extras`. You must stick to these three categories, even if no error is raised when using other name.<sup>28</sup> It may be empty, too, but in such a case using `\SetString` is an error (but not `\SetCase`).

```
\StartBabelCommands{language}{captions}
  [unicode, fontenc=TU EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetString{\chaptername}{utf8-string}

\StartBabelCommands{language}{captions}
\SetString{\chaptername}{ascii-maybe-LICR-string}

\EndBabelCommands
```

A real example is:

---

<sup>28</sup>In future releases further categories may be added.

```

\StartBabelCommands{austrian}{date}
[unicode, fontenc=TU EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetString\monthiname{Jänner}

\StartBabelCommands{german,austrian}{date}
[unicode, fontenc=TU EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetString\monthiiname{März}

\StartBabelCommands{austrian}{date}
\SetString\monthiname{J\"{a}nner}

\StartBabelCommands{german}{date}
\SetString\monthiname{Januar}


\StartBabelCommands{german,austrian}{date}
\SetString\monthiiname{Februar}
\SetString\monthiiname{M\"{a}rz}
\SetString\monthivname{April}
\SetString\monthvname{Mai}
\SetString\monthvname{Juni}
\SetString\monthviiname{Juli}
\SetString\monthviiname{August}
\SetString\monthixname{September}
\SetString\monthxname{Oktober}
\SetString\monthxiname{November}
\SetString\monthxiiname{Dezenber}
\SetString\today{\number\day.~%
\csname month\romannumeral\month name\endcsname\space
\number\year}

\StartBabelCommands{german,austrian}{captions}
\SetString\prefacename{Vorwort}
[etc.]

\EndBabelCommands

```

When used in ldf files, previous values of  $\langle category \rangle \langle language \rangle$  are overridden, which means the old way to define strings still works and used by default (to be precise, is first set to undefined and then strings are added). However, when used in the preamble or in a package, new settings are added to the previous ones, if the language exists (in the babel sense, ie, if  $\backslash date \langle language \rangle$  exists).

**$\backslash StartBabelCommands$**    $\{ \langle language-list \rangle \} \{ \langle category \rangle \} [ \langle selector \rangle ]$

The starred version just forces strings to take a value – if not set as package option, then the default for the engine is used. This is not done by default to prevent backward incompatibilities, but if you are creating a new language this version is better. It's up to the maintainers of the current languages to decide if using it is appropriate.<sup>29</sup>

**$\backslash EndBabelCommands$**  Marks the end of the series of blocks.

**$\backslash AfterBabelCommands$**   $\{ \langle code \rangle \}$

The code is delayed and executed at the global scope just after  $\backslash EndBabelCommands$ .

<sup>29</sup>This replaces in 3.9g a short-lived  $\backslash UseStrings$  which has been removed because it did not work.

**\SetString** {*<macro-name>*}{*<string>*}

Adds *<macro-name>* to the current category, and defines globally *<lang-macro-name>* to *<code>* (after applying the transformation corresponding to the current charset or defined with the hook `stringprocess`).

Use this command to define strings, without including any “logic” if possible, which should be a separated macro. See the example above for the date.

**\SetStringLoop** {*<macro-name>*}{*<string-list>*}

A convenient way to define several ordered names at once. For example, to define `\abmoniname`, `\abmoniiname`, etc. (and similarly with `abday`):

```
\SetStringLoop{abmon#1name}{en,fb,mr,ab,my,jn,jl,ag,sp,oc,nv,dc}
\SetStringLoop{abday#1name}{lu,ma,mi,ju,vi,sa,do}
```

#1 is replaced by the roman numeral.

**\SetCase** [*<map-list>*]{*<toupper-code>*}{*<tolower-code>*}

Sets globally code to be executed at `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase`. The code would typically be things like `\let\BB\bb` and `\uccode` or `\lccode` (although for the reasons explained above, changes in lc/uc codes may not work). A *<map-list>* is a series of macros using the internal format of `\@uclclist` (eg, `\bb\BB\cc\CC`). The mandatory arguments take precedence over the optional one. This command, unlike `\SetString`, is executed always (even without strings), and it is intended for minor readjustments only. For example, as T1 is the default case mapping in  $\TeX$ , we can set for Turkish:

```
\StartBabelCommands{turkish}{}[ot1enc, fontenc=OT1]
\SetCase
{\uccode"10=`I\relax}
{\lccode`I="10\relax}

\StartBabelCommands{turkish}{}[unicode, fontenc=TU EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetCase
{\uccode`i=`I\relax
 \uccode`I=`i\relax}
{\lccode`İ=`i\relax
 \lccode`I=`İ\relax}

\StartBabelCommands{turkish}{}
\SetCase
{\uccode`i="9D\relax
 \uccode"19=`I\relax}
{\lccode"9D=`i\relax
 \lccode`I="19\relax}

\EndBabelCommands
```

(Note the mapping for OT1 is not complete.)

**\SetHyphenMap** {*<to-lower-macros>*}

**New 3.9g** Case mapping serves in  $\TeX$  for two unrelated purposes: case transforms (upper/lower) and hyphenation. `\SetCase` handles the former, while hyphenation is handled by `\SetHyphenMap` and controlled with the package option `hyphenmap`. So, even if internally they are based on the same  $\TeX$  primitive (`\lccode`), babel sets them separately.

There are three helper macros to be used inside `\SetHyphenMap`:

- `\BabelLower{<uccode>}{<lcode>}` is similar to `\lcode` but it's ignored if the char has been set and saves the original `lcode` to restore it when switching the language (except with `hyphenmap=first`).
- `\BabelLowerMM{<uccode-from>}{<uccode-to>}{<step>}{<lcode-from>}` loops through the given uppercase codes, using the step, and assigns them the `lcode`, which is also increased (MM stands for *many-to-many*).
- `\BabelLowerMO{<uccode-from>}{<uccode-to>}{<step>}{<lcode>}` loops through the given uppercase codes, using the step, and assigns them the `lcode`, which is fixed (MO stands for *many-to-one*).

An example is (which is redundant, because these assignments are done by both `luatex` and `xetex`):

```
\SetHyphenMap{\BabelLowerMM{"100}{ "11F}{2}{ "101}}
```

This macro is not intended to fix wrong mappings done by Unicode (which are the default in both `xetex` and `luatex`) – if an assignment is wrong, fix it directly.

### 3.9 Executing code based on the selector

`\IfBabelSelectorTF` {<selectors>}{<true>}{<false>}

**New 3.67** Sometimes a different setup is desired depending on the selector used. Values allowed in `<selectors>` are `select`, `other`, `foreign`, `other*` (and also `foreign*` for the tentative starred version), and it can consist of a comma-separated list. For example:

```
\IfBabelSelectorTF{other, other*}{A}{B}
```

is true with these two environment selectors.

Its natural place of use is in hooks or in `\extras<language>`.

## 4 Changes

### 4.1 Changes in babel version 3.9

Most of the changes in version 3.9 were related to bugs, either to fix them (there were lots), or to provide some alternatives. Even new features like `\babelhyphen` are intended to solve a certain problem (in this case, the lacking of a uniform syntax and behavior for shorthands across languages). These changes, as well as the subsequent ones ( $\geq 3.10$ ), are described in this manual in the corresponding place. A selective list of the changes in 3.9 follows:

- `\select@language` did not set `\language`. This meant the language in force when auxiliary files were loaded was the one used in, for example, shorthands – if the language was `german`, a `\select@language{spanish}` had no effect.
- `\foreignlanguage` and `otherlanguage*` messed up `\extras<language>`. Scripts, encodings and many other things were not switched correctly.
- The `:ENC` mechanism for hyphenation patterns used the encoding of the *previous* language, not that of the language being selected.

- ' (with `activeacute`) had the original value when writing to an auxiliary file, and things like an infinite loop can happen. It worked incorrectly with `^` (if activated) and also if deactivated.
- Active chars were not reset at the end of language options, and that led to incompatibilities between languages.
- `\textormath` raised an error with a conditional.
- `\aliasshorthand` didn't work (or only in a few and very specific cases).
- `\l@english` was defined incorrectly (using `\let` instead of `\chardef`).
- `ldf` files not bundled with `babel` were not recognized when called as global options.

## Part II

# Source code

`babel` is being developed incrementally, which means parts of the code are under development and therefore incomplete. Only documented features are considered complete. In other words, use `babel` only as documented (except, of course, if you want to explore and test them – you can post suggestions about multilingual issues to [kadingira@tug.org](mailto:kadingira@tug.org) on <http://tug.org/mailman/listinfo/kadingira>).

## 5 Identification and loading of required files

*Code documentation is still under revision.*

**The following description is no longer valid, because `switch` and `plain` have been merged into `babel.def`.**

The `babel` package after unpacking consists of the following files:

**`switch.def`** defines macros to set and switch languages.

**`babel.def`** defines the rest of macros. It has two parts: a generic one and a second one only for LaTeX.

**`babel.sty`** is the LaTeX package, which sets options and loads language styles.

**`plain.def`** defines some LaTeX macros required by `babel.def` and provides a few tools for Plain.

**`hyphen.cfg`** is the file to be used when generating the formats to load hyphenation patterns.

The `babel` installer extends `docstrip` with a few “pseudo-guards” to set “variables” used at installation time. They are used with `<@name@>` at the appropriated places in the source code and shown below with `<<name>>`. That brings a little bit of literate programming.

## 6 locale directory

A required component of `babel` is a set of `ini` files with basic definitions for about 200 languages. They are distributed as a separate zip file, not packed as `dtx`. With them, `babel` will fully support Unicode engines.

Most of them are essentially finished (except bugs and mistakes, of course). Some of them are still incomplete (but they will be usable), and there are some omissions (eg, Latin and polytonic Greek, and there are no geographic areas in Spanish). Hindi, French, Occitan and Breton will show a warning related to dates. Not all include LICR variants.

This is a preliminary documentation.

`ini` files contain the actual data; `tex` files are currently just proxies to the corresponding `ini` files.

Most keys are self-explanatory.

**`charset`** the encoding used in the `ini` file.

**`version`** of the `ini` file



**level** “version” of the ini specification . which keys are available (they may grow in a compatible way) and how they should be read.

**encodings** a descriptive list of font encodings.

**[captions]** section of captions in the file charset

**[captions.licr]** same, but in pure ASCII using the LICR

**date.long** fields are as in the CLDR, but the syntax is different. Anything inside brackets is a date field (eg, MMMM for the month name) and anything outside is text. In addition, [ ] is a non breakable space and [ . ] is an abbreviation dot.

Keys may be further qualified in a particular language with a suffix starting with a uppercase letter. It can be just a letter (eg, babel.name.A, babel.name.B) or a name (eg, date.long.Nominative, date.long.Formal, but no language is currently using the latter). *Multi-letter* qualifiers are forward compatible in the sense they won’t conflict with new “global” keys (which start always with a lowercase case). There is an exception, however: the section counters has been devised to have arbitrary keys, so you can add lowercased keys if you want.

## 7 Tools

```
1 <<version=3.69.2622>>
2 <<date=2022/01/19>>
```

**Do not use the following macros in ldf files. They may change in the future.** This applies mainly to those recently added for replacing, trimming and looping. The older ones, like \bbl@afterfi, will not change.

We define some basic macros which just make the code cleaner. \bbl@add is now used internally instead of \addto because of the unpredictable behavior of the latter. Used in babel.def and in babel.sty, which means in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is executed twice, but we need them when defining options and babel.def cannot be load until options have been defined. This does not hurt, but should be fixed somehow.

```
3 <<*Basic macros>> ≡
4 \bbl@trace{Basic macros}
5 \def\bbl@stripslash{\expandafter\@gobble\string}
6 \def\bbl@add#1#2{%
7   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
8     {\def#1{#2}}%
9     {\expandafter\def\expandafter#1\expandafter{#1#2}}
10 \def\bbl@xin@{\@expandtwoargs\in@}
11 \def\bbl@csarg#1#2{\expandafter#1\csname bbl@#2\endcsname}%
12 \def\bbl@cs#1{\csname bbl@#1\endcsname}
13 \def\bbl@c1#1{\csname bbl@#1\language\endcsname}
14 \def\bbl@loop#1#2#3{\bbl@loop#1{#3}#2,\@nnil,}
15 \def\bbl@loopx#1#2{\expandafter\bbl@loop\expandafter#1\expandafter{#2}}
16 \def\bbl@loop#1#2#3,{%
17   \ifx\@nnil#3\relax\else
18     \def#1{#3}#2\bbl@afterfi\bbl@loop#1{#2}%
19   \fi}
20 \def\bbl@for#1#2#3{\bbl@loopx#1{#2}{\ifx#1\@empty\else#3\fi}}
```

\bbl@add@list This internal macro adds its second argument to a comma separated list in its first argument. When the list is not defined yet (or empty), it will be initiated. It presumes expandable character strings.

```
21 \def\bbl@add@list#1#2{%
22   \edef#1{%
23     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
24       {}%
25       {\ifx#1\@empty\else#1,\fi}%
26     #2}}
```

\bbl@afterelse Because the code that is used in the handling of active characters may need to look ahead, we take \bbl@afterfi

extra care to ‘throw’ it over the `\else` and `\fi` parts of an `\if`-statement<sup>30</sup>. These macros will break if another `\if... \fi` statement appears in one of the arguments and it is not enclosed in braces.

```
27 \long\def\bbl@afterelse#1\else#2\fi{\fi#1}
28 \long\def\bbl@afterfi#1\fi{\fi#1}
```

`\bbl@exp` Now, just syntactical sugar, but it makes partial expansion of some code a lot more simple and readable. Here `\` stands for `\noexpand`, `\<.>` for `\noexpand` applied to a built macro name (which does not define the macro if undefined to `\relax`, because it is created locally), and `\[...]` for one-level expansion (where `...` is the macro name without the backslash). The result may be followed by extra arguments, if necessary.

```
29 \def\bbl@exp#1{%
30   \begingroup
31   \let\<\noexpand
32   \let\<\bbl@exp@en
33   \let\[\bbl@exp@ue
34   \edef\bbl@exp@aux{\endgroup#1}%
35   \bbl@exp@aux}
36 \def\bbl@exp@en#1>{\expandafter\noexpand\csname#1\endcsname}%
37 \def\bbl@exp@ue#1]{%
38   \unexpanded\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter{\csname#1\endcsname}}%
```

`\bbl@trim` The following piece of code is stolen (with some changes) from `keyval`, by David Carlisle. It defines two macros: `\bbl@trim` and `\bbl@trim@def`. The first one strips the leading and trailing spaces from the second argument and then applies the first argument (a macro, `\toks@` and the like). The second one, as its name suggests, defines the first argument as the stripped second argument.

```
39 \def\bbl@tempa#1{%
40   \long\def\bbl@trim##1##2{%
41     \futurelet\bbl@trim@a\bbl@trim@c##2\@nil\@nil#1\@nil\relax{##1}}%
42   \def\bbl@trim@c{%
43     \ifx\bbl@trim@a\@sptoken
44       \expandafter\bbl@trim@b
45     \else
46       \expandafter\bbl@trim@b\expandafter#1%
47     \fi}%
48   \long\def\bbl@trim@b##1 \@nil{\bbl@trim@i##1}}
49 \bbl@tempa{ }
50 \long\def\bbl@trim@i#1\@nil#2\relax#3{#3{#1}}
51 \long\def\bbl@trim@def#1{\bbl@trim{\def#1}}
```

`\bbl@ifunset` To check if a macro is defined, we create a new macro, which does the same as `\@ifundefined`. However, in an  $\epsilon$ -tex engine, it is based on `\ifcsname`, which is more efficient, and does not waste memory.

```
52 \begingroup
53   \gdef\bbl@ifunset#1{%
54     \expandafter\ifx\csname#1\endcsname\relax
55       \expandafter\@firstoftwo
56     \else
57       \expandafter\@secondoftwo
58     \fi}
59   \bbl@ifunset{ifcsname}% TODO. A better test?
60   {}%
61   {\gdef\bbl@ifunset#1{%
62     \ifcsname#1\endcsname
63       \expandafter\ifx\csname#1\endcsname\relax
64         \bbl@afterelse\expandafter\@firstoftwo
```

<sup>30</sup>This code is based on code presented in TUGboat vol. 12, no2, June 1991 in “An expansion Power Lemma” by Sonja Maus.

```

65         \else
66         \bbl@afterfi\expandafter\@secondoftwo
67         \fi
68     \else
69     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
70     \fi}}
71 \endgroup

```

**\bbl@ifblank** A tool from url, by Donald Arseneau, which tests if a string is empty or space. The companion macros tests if a macro is defined with some 'real' value, ie, not \relax and not empty,

```

72 \def\bbl@ifblank#1{%
73   \bbl@ifblank@i#1\@nil\@nil\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
74 \long\def\bbl@ifblank@i#1#2\@nil#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
75 \def\bbl@ifset#1#2#3{%
76   \bbl@ifunset{#1}{#3}{\bbl@exp{\@nil\bbl@ifblank{#1}}{#3}{#2}}}

```

For each element in the comma separated <key>=<value> list, execute <code> with #1 and #2 as the key and the value of current item (trimmed). In addition, the item is passed verbatim as #3. With the <key> alone, it passes \@empty (ie, the macro thus named, not an empty argument, which is what you get with <key>= and no value).

```

77 \def\bbl@forkv#1#2{%
78   \def\bbl@kvcmd##1##2##3{#2}%
79   \bbl@kvnext#1,\@nil,}
80 \def\bbl@kvnext#1,{%
81   \ifx\@nil#1\relax\else
82     \bbl@ifblank{#1}{\bbl@forkv@eq#1=\@empty=\@nil{#1}}%
83     \expandafter\bbl@kvnext
84   \fi}
85 \def\bbl@forkv@eq#1=#2=#3\@nil#4{%
86   \bbl@trim\def\bbl@forkv@a{#1}%
87   \bbl@trim{\expandafter\bbl@kvcmd\expandafter{\bbl@forkv@a}}{#2}{#4}}

```

A *for* loop. Each item (trimmed), is #1. It cannot be nested (it's doable, but we don't need it).

```

88 \def\bbl@vforeach#1#2{%
89   \def\bbl@forcmd##1{#2}%
90   \bbl@fornext#1,\@nil,}
91 \def\bbl@fornext#1,{%
92   \ifx\@nil#1\relax\else
93     \bbl@ifblank{#1}{\bbl@trim\bbl@forcmd{#1}}%
94     \expandafter\bbl@fornext
95   \fi}
96 \def\bbl@foreach#1{\expandafter\bbl@vforeach\expandafter{#1}}

```

**\bbl@replace** Returns implicitly \toks@ with the modified string.

```

97 \def\bbl@replace#1#2#3{% in #1 -> repl #2 by #3
98   \toks@{}}
99 \def\bbl@replace@aux##1#2##2#2{%
100   \ifx\bbl@nil##2%
101     \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@##1}%
102   \else
103     \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@##1#3}%
104     \bbl@afterfi
105     \bbl@replace@aux##2#2%
106   \fi}%
107 \expandafter\bbl@replace@aux#1#2\bbl@nil#2%
108 \edef#1{\the\toks@}}

```

An extension to the previous macro. It takes into account the parameters, and it is string based (ie, if you replace elax by ho, then \relax becomes \rho). No checking is done at all, because it is not a

general purpose macro, and it is used by babel only when it works (an example where it does *not* work is in `\bbl@TG@date`, and also fails if there are macros with spaces, because they are retokenized). It may change! (or even merged with `\bbl@replace`; I'm not sure ckecking the replacement is really necessary or just paranoia).

```

109 \ifx\detokenize\@undefined\else % Unused macros if old Plain TeX
110   \bbl@exp{\def\\bbl@parsedef##1\detokenize{macro:}}#2->#3\relax{%
111     \def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
112     \def\bbl@tempb{#2}%
113     \def\bbl@tempe{#3}}
114   \def\bbl@sreplace#1#2#3{%
115     \begingroup
116       \expandafter\bbl@parsedef\meaning#1\relax
117       \def\bbl@tempc{#2}%
118       \edef\bbl@tempc{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempc}%
119       \def\bbl@tempd{#3}%
120       \edef\bbl@tempd{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempd}%
121       \bbl@xin{\bbl@tempc}{\bbl@tempe}% If not in macro, do nothing
122       \ifin@
123         \bbl@exp{\\bbl@replace\\bbl@tempe{\bbl@tempc}{\bbl@tempd}}%
124         \def\bbl@tempc{%      Expanded an executed below as 'uplevel'
125           \\makeatletter % "internal" macros with @ are assumed
126           \\scantokens{%
127             \bbl@tempa\\@namedef{\bbl@stripslash#1}\bbl@tempb{\bbl@tempe}}%
128           \catcode64=\the\catcode64\relax}% Restore @
129       \else
130         \let\bbl@tempc\@empty % Not \relax
131       \fi
132       \bbl@exp{%      For the 'uplevel' assignments
133     \endgroup
134     \bbl@tempc}} % empty or expand to set #1 with changes
135 \fi

```

Two further tools. `\bbl@samestring` first expand its arguments and then compare their expansion (sanitized, so that the catcodes do not matter). `\bbl@engine` takes the following values: 0 is pdf<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub>, 1 is luatex, and 2 is xetex. You may use the latter it in your language style if you want.

```

136 \def\bbl@ifsamestring#1#2{%
137   \begingroup
138     \protected@edef\bbl@tempb{#1}%
139     \edef\bbl@tempb{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempb}%
140     \protected@edef\bbl@tempc{#2}%
141     \edef\bbl@tempc{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempc}%
142     \ifx\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempc
143       \aftergroup\@firstoftwo
144     \else
145       \aftergroup\@secondoftwo
146     \fi
147   \endgroup}
148 \chardef\bbl@engine=%
149 \ifx\directlua\@undefined
150   \ifx\XeTeXinputencoding\@undefined
151     \z@
152   \else
153     \tw@
154   \fi
155 \else
156   \@ne
157 \fi

```

A somewhat hackish tool (hence its name) to avoid spurious spaces in some contexts.

```

158 \def\bbl@bsphack{%
159   \ifhmode
160     \hskip\z@skip
161   \def\bbl@esphack{\loop\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\repeat\unskip}%
162   \else
163     \let\bbl@esphack\@empty
164   \fi}

```

Another hackish tool, to apply case changes inside a protected macros. It's based on the internal `\let's` made by `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase` between things like `\oe` and `\OE`.

```

165 \def\bbl@cased{%
166   \ifx\oe\OE
167     \expandafter\in@\expandafter
168     {\expandafter\OE\expandafter}\expandafter{\oe}%
169     \ifin@
170       \bbl@afterelse\expandafter\MakeUppercase
171     \else
172       \bbl@afterfi\expandafter\MakeLowercase
173     \fi
174   \else
175     \expandafter\@firstofone
176   \fi}

```

An alternative to `\IfFormatAtLeastTF` for old versions. Temporary.

```

177 \ifx\IfFormatAtLeastTF\@undefined
178   \def\bbl@ifformatlater{\@ifl@t@r\fmtversion}
179 \else
180   \let\bbl@ifformatlater\IfFormatAtLeastTF
181 \fi

```

The following adds some code to `\extras...` both before and after, while avoiding doing it twice. It's somewhat convoluted, to deal with `#`'s. Used to deal with `alph`, `Alph` and `frenchspacing` when there are already changes (with `\babel@save`).

```

182 \def\bbl@extras@wrap#1#2#3{% 1:in-test, 2:before, 3:after
183   \toks@\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter{%
184     \csname extras\language\endcsname}%
185     \bbl@exp{\in@{#1}{\the\toks@}}%
186   \ifin@\else
187     \@temptokena{#2}%
188     \edef\bbl@tempc{\the\@temptokena\the\toks@}%
189     \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@tempc#3}%
190     \expandafter\edef\csname extras\language\endcsname{\the\toks@}%
191   \fi}
192 <</Basic macros>>

```

Some files identify themselves with a  $\TeX$  macro. The following code is placed before them to define (and then undefine) if not in  $\TeX$ .

```

193 << *Make sure ProvidesFile is defined>> ≡
194 \ifx\ProvidesFile\@undefined
195   \def\ProvidesFile#1[#2 #3 #4]{%
196     \wlog{File: #1 #4 #3 <#2>}%
197     \let\ProvidesFile\@undefined}
198 \fi
199 <</Make sure ProvidesFile is defined>>

```

## 7.1 Multiple languages

`\language` Plain  $\TeX$  version 3.0 provides the primitive `\language` that is used to store the current language. When used with a pre-3.0 version this function has to be implemented by allocating a counter. The

following block is used in `switch.def` and `hyphen.cfg`; the latter may seem redundant, but remember `babel` doesn't require loading `switch.def` in the format.

```
200 <<*Define core switching macros>> ≡
201 \ifx\language\undefined
202   \csname newcount\endcsname\language
203 \fi
204 <</Define core switching macros>>
```

`\last@language` Another counter is used to keep track of the allocated languages.  $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$  and  $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$  reserves for this purpose the count 19.

`\addlanguage` This macro was introduced for  $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X} < 2$ . Preserved for compatibility.

```
205 <<*Define core switching macros>> ≡
206 \countdef\last@language=19
207 \def\addlanguage{\csname newlanguage\endcsname}
208 <</Define core switching macros>>
```

Now we make sure all required files are loaded. When the command `\AtBeginDocument` doesn't exist we assume that we are dealing with a plain-based format. In that case the file `plain.def` is needed (which also defines `\AtBeginDocument`, and therefore it is not loaded twice). We need the first part when the format is created, and `\orig@dump` is used as a flag. Otherwise, we need to use the second part, so `\orig@dump` is not defined (`plain.def` undefines it).

Check if the current version of `switch.def` has been previously loaded (mainly, `hyphen.cfg`). If not, load it now. We cannot load `babel.def` here because we first need to declare and process the package options.

## 7.2 The Package File ( $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ , `babel.sty`)

```
209 <*package>
210 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2005/12/01]
211 \ProvidesPackage{babel}[\<date>] [\<version>] The Babel package]
```

Start with some “private” debugging tool, and then define macros for errors.

```
212 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{debug}
213   {\providecommand\bbl@trace[1]{\message{^^J[ #1 ]}}%
214    \let\bbl@debug\@firstofone
215    \ifx\directlua\undefined\else
216      \directlua{ Babel = Babel or {}
217                Babel.debug = true }%
218      \input{babel-debug.tex}%
219    \fi}
220 {\providecommand\bbl@trace[1]{}%
221  \let\bbl@debug\@gobble
222  \ifx\directlua\undefined\else
223    \directlua{ Babel = Babel or {}
224              Babel.debug = false }%
225  \fi}
226 \def\bbl@error#1#2{%
227   \begingroup
228     \def\{\MessageBreak}%
229     \PackageError{babel}{#1}{#2}%
230   \endgroup}
231 \def\bbl@warning#1{%
232   \begingroup
233     \def\{\MessageBreak}%
234     \PackageWarning{babel}{#1}%
235   \endgroup}
236 \def\bbl@infowarn#1{%
237   \begingroup
```

```

238 \def\{\MessageBreak}%
239 \GenericWarning
240 {(babel) \@spaces\@spaces\@spaces}%
241 {Package babel Info: #1}%
242 \endgroup}
243 \def\bbl@info#1{%
244 \begingroup
245 \def\{\MessageBreak}%
246 \PackageInfo{babel}{#1}%
247 \endgroup}

```

This file also takes care of a number of compatibility issues with other packages and defines a few additional package options. Apart from all the language options below we also have a few options that influence the behavior of language definition files.

Many of the following options don't do anything themselves, they are just defined in order to make it possible for babel and language definition files to check if one of them was specified by the user.

But first, include here the *Basic macros* defined above.

```

248 <<Basic macros>>
249 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{silent}
250 {\let\bbl@info@gobble
251 \let\bbl@infowarn@gobble
252 \let\bbl@warning@gobble}
253 {}
254 %
255 \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1{%
256 \global\expandafter\bbl@add\csname#1.ldf-h@@k\endcsname}%

```

If the format created a list of loaded languages (in `\bbl@languages`), get the name of the 0-th to show the actual language used. Also available with base, because it just shows info.

```

257 \ifx\bbl@languages\undefined\else
258 \begingroup
259 \catcode\^^I=12
260 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{showlanguages}{%
261 \begingroup
262 \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{\wlog{#2^^I#1^^I#3^^I#4}}%
263 \wlog{<*languages>}%
264 \bbl@languages
265 \wlog{</languages>}%
266 \endgroup}{%
267 \endgroup
268 \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{%
269 \ifnum#2=\z@
270 \gdef\bbl@nulllanguage{#1}%
271 \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{}}%
272 \fi}%
273 \bbl@languages
274 \fi%

```

### 7.3 base

The first 'real' option to be processed is base, which set the hyphenation patterns then resets `ver@babel.sty` so that  $\TeX$  forgets about the first loading. After a subset of `babel.def` has been loaded (the old `switch.def`) and `\AfterBabelLanguage` defined, it exits.

Now the base option. With it we can define (and load, with `luatex`) hyphenation patterns, even if we are not interested in the rest of babel.

```

275 \bbl@trace{Defining option 'base'}
276 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{base}{%
277 \let\bbl@onlyswitch\empty
278 \let\bbl@provide@locale\relax
279 \input babel.def

```

```

280 \let\bbl@onlyswitch\@undefined
281 \ifx\directlua\@undefined
282 \DeclareOption*{\bbl@patterns{\CurrentOption}}%
283 \else
284 \input luababel.def
285 \DeclareOption*{\bbl@patterns@lua{\CurrentOption}}%
286 \fi
287 \DeclareOption{base}{}%
288 \DeclareOption{showlanguages}{}%
289 \ProcessOptions
290 \global\expandafter\let\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname\relax
291 \global\expandafter\let\csname ver@babel.sty\endcsname\relax
292 \global\let\@ifl@ter@@\@ifl@ter
293 \def\@ifl@ter#1#2#3#4#5{\global\let\@ifl@ter\@ifl@ter@@}%
294 \endinput}{}%

```

## 7.4 key=value options and other general option

The following macros extract language modifiers, and only real package options are kept in the option list. Modifiers are saved and assigned to `\BabelModifiers` at `\bbl@load@language`; when no modifiers have been given, the former is `\relax`. How modifiers are handled are left to language styles; they can use `\in@`, loop them with `\@for` or `load keyval`, for example.

```

295 \bbl@trace{key=value and another general options}
296 \bbl@csarg\let{tempa\expandafter}\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname
297 \def\bbl@tempb#1.#2{% Remove trailing dot
298   #1\ifx\@empty#2\else,\bbl@afterfi\bbl@tempb#2\fi}%
299 \def\bbl@tempd#1.#2@nnil{% TODO. Refactor lists?
300   \ifx\@empty#2%
301     \edef\bbl@tempc{\ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1}%
302   \else
303     \in@{,provide=}{, #1}%
304     \ifin@
305       \edef\bbl@tempc{%
306         \ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1.\bbl@tempb#2}%
307     \else
308       \in@{=}{ #1}%
309       \ifin@
310         \edef\bbl@tempc{\ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1.#2}%
311       \else
312         \edef\bbl@tempc{\ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1}%
313         \bbl@csarg\edef{mod#1}{\bbl@tempb#2}%
314       \fi
315     \fi
316   \fi}
317 \let\bbl@tempc\@empty
318 \bbl@foreach\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempd#1.\@empty@nnil}
319 \expandafter\let\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname\bbl@tempc

```

The next option tells babel to leave shorthand characters active at the end of processing the package. This is *not* the default as it can cause problems with other packages, but for those who want to use the shorthand characters in the preamble of their documents this can help.

```

320 \DeclareOption{KeepShorthandsActive}{}
321 \DeclareOption{activeacute}{}
322 \DeclareOption{activegrave}{}
323 \DeclareOption{debug}{}
324 \DeclareOption{noconfigs}{}
325 \DeclareOption{showlanguages}{}
326 \DeclareOption{silent}{}

```



```

327% \DeclareOption{mono}{}
328 \DeclareOption{shorthands=off}{\bbl@tempa shorthands=\bbl@tempa}
329 \chardef\bbl@iniflag\z@
330 \DeclareOption{provide=*}{\chardef\bbl@iniflag\@ne} % main -> +1
331 \DeclareOption{provide+=*}{\chardef\bbl@iniflag\tw@} % add = 2
332 \DeclareOption{provide**=*}{\chardef\bbl@iniflag\thr@@} % add + main
333% A separate option
334 \let\bbl@autoload@options\@empty
335 \DeclareOption{provide=@*}{\def\bbl@autoload@options{import}}
336% Don't use. Experimental. TODO.
337 \newif\ifbbl@single
338 \DeclareOption{selectors=off}{\bbl@singletrue}
339 <<More package options>>

```

Handling of package options is done in three passes. (I [JBL] am not very happy with the idea, anyway.) The first one processes options which has been declared above or follow the syntax <key>=<value>, the second one loads the requested languages, except the main one if set with the key main, and the third one loads the latter. First, we “flag” valid keys with a nil value.

```

340 \let\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil
341 \let\bbl@opt@config\@nnil
342 \let\bbl@opt@main\@nnil
343 \let\bbl@opt@headfoot\@nnil
344 \let\bbl@opt@layout\@nnil
345 \let\bbl@opt@provide\@nnil

```

The following tool is defined temporarily to store the values of options.

```

346 \def\bbl@tempa#1=#2\bbl@tempa{%
347   \bbl@csarg\ifx{opt@#1}\@nnil
348     \bbl@csarg\edef{opt@#1}{#2}%
349   \else
350     \bbl@error
351     {Bad option '#1=#2'. Either you have misspelled the\\%
352     key or there is a previous setting of '#1'. Valid\\%
353     keys are, among others, 'shorthands', 'main', 'bidi',\\%
354     'strings', 'config', 'headfoot', 'safe', 'math'.}%
355     {See the manual for further details.}
356   \fi}

```

Now the option list is processed, taking into account only currently declared options (including those declared with a =), and <key>=<value> options (the former take precedence). Unrecognized options are saved in \bbl@language@opts, because they are language options.

```

357 \let\bbl@language@opts\@empty
358 \DeclareOption*{%
359   \bbl@xin@{\string=}{\CurrentOption}%
360   \ifin@
361     \expandafter\bbl@tempa\CurrentOption\bbl@tempa
362   \else
363     \bbl@add@list\bbl@language@opts{\CurrentOption}%
364   \fi}

```

Now we finish the first pass (and start over).

```

365 \ProcessOptions*
366 \ifx\bbl@opt@provide\@nnil
367   \let\bbl@opt@provide\@empty %%%% MOVE above
368 \else
369   \chardef\bbl@iniflag\@ne
370   \bbl@exp{\bbl@forkv{\@nameuse{raw@opt@babel.sty}}}{%
371     \in@{,provide,},{, #1,}%
372     \ifin@

```

```

373      \def\bbl@opt@provide{#2}%
374      \bbl@replace\bbl@opt@provide{;}{,}%
375      \fi}
376 \fi
377 %

```

## 7.5 Conditional loading of shorthands

If there is no `shorthands=<chars>`, the original babel macros are left untouched, but if there is, these macros are wrapped (in `babel.def`) to define only those given.

A bit of optimization: if there is no `shorthands=`, then `\bbl@ifshorthand` is always true, and it is always false if `shorthands` is empty. Also, some code makes sense only with `shorthands=...`

```

378 \bbl@trace{Conditional loading of shorthands}
379 \def\bbl@sh@string#1{%
380   \ifx#1\@empty\else
381     \ifx#1t\string~%
382     \else\ifx#1c\string,%
383     \else\string#1%
384     \fi\fi
385   \expandafter\bbl@sh@string
386   \fi}
387 \ifx\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil
388   \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#2}%
389 \else\ifx\bbl@opt@shorthands\@empty
390   \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#3}%
391 \else

```

The following macro tests if a shorthand is one of the allowed ones.

```

392   \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1{%
393     \bbl@xin@{\string#1}{\bbl@opt@shorthands}%
394     \ifin@
395     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
396     \else
397     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
398     \fi}

```

We make sure all chars in the string are ‘other’, with the help of an auxiliary macro defined above (which also zaps spaces).

```

399   \edef\bbl@opt@shorthands{%
400     \expandafter\bbl@sh@string\bbl@opt@shorthands\@empty}%

```

The following is ignored with `shorthands=off`, since it is intended to take some additional actions for certain chars.

```

401   \bbl@ifshorthand{'}%
402     {\PassOptionsToPackage{activeacute}{babel}}{}
403   \bbl@ifshorthand{`}%
404     {\PassOptionsToPackage{activegrave}{babel}}{}
405 \fi\fi

```

With `headfoot=lang` we can set the language used in heads/foots. For example, in `babel/3796` just adds `headfoot=english`. It misuses `\@resetactivechars` but seems to work.

```

406 \ifx\bbl@opt@headfoot\@nnil\else
407   \@addto@macro\@resetactivechars{%
408     \set@typeset@protect
409     \expandafter\select@language@x\expandafter{\bbl@opt@headfoot}%
410     \let\protect\noexpand}
411 \fi

```

For the option `safe` we use a different approach – `\bbl@opt@safe` says which macros are redefined (B for bibs and R for refs). By default, both are set.

```
412 \ifx\bbl@opt@safe\@undefined
413   \def\bbl@opt@safe{BR}
414 \fi
```

For layout an auxiliary macro is provided, available for packages and language styles. Optimization: if there is no layout, just do nothing.

```
415 \bbl@trace{Defining IfBabelLayout}
416 \ifx\bbl@opt@layout\@nnil
417   \newcommand\IfBabelLayout[3]{#3}%
418 \else
419   \newcommand\IfBabelLayout[1]{%
420     \@expandtwoargs\in@{.#1.}{.\bbl@opt@layout.}%
421     \ifin@
422       \expandafter\@firstoftwo
423     \else
424       \expandafter\@secondoftwo
425     \fi}
426 \fi
427 </package>
428 <*core>
```

## 7.6 Interlude for Plain

Because of the way `docstrip` works, we need to insert some code for Plain here. However, the tools provided by the babel installer for literate programming makes this section a short interlude, because the actual code is below, tagged as *Emulate LaTeX*.

```
429 \ifx\ldf@quit\@undefined\else
430 \endinput\fi % Same line!
431 <<Make sure ProvidesFile is defined>>
432 \ProvidesFile{babel.def}[\<<date>>] \<<version>> Babel common definitions]
433 \ifx\AtBeginDocument\@undefined % TODO. change test.
434   <<Emulate LaTeX>>
435 \fi
```

That is all for the moment. Now follows some common stuff, for both Plain and  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . After it, we will resume the  $\text{\LaTeX}$ -only stuff.

```
436 </core>
437 <*package | core>
```

## 8 Multiple languages

This is not a separate file (`switch.def`) anymore.

Plain  $\text{\TeX}$  version 3.0 provides the primitive `\language` that is used to store the current language. When used with a pre-3.0 version this function has to be implemented by allocating a counter.

```
438 \def\bbl@version{\<<version>>}
439 \def\bbl@date{\<<date>>}
440 <<Define core switching macros>>
```

`\adddialect` The macro `\adddialect` can be used to add the name of a dialect or variant language, for which an already defined hyphenation table can be used.

```
441 \def\adddialect#1#2{%
442   \global\chardef#1#2\relax
443   \bbl@usehooks{adddialect}{\#1}{\#2}%
444   \begingroup
445     \count@#1\relax
```

```

446 \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{%
447 \ifnum\count=##2\relax
448 \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@gobbletwo\string#1}%
449 \bbl@info{Hyphen rules for '\expandafter\@gobble\bbl@tempa'
450 set to \expandafter\string\csname l@##1\endcsname\\%
451 (\string\language\the\count@). Reported}%
452 \def\bbl@elt####1####2####3####4{%
453 \fi}%
454 \bbl@cs{languages}%
455 \endgroup}

```

\bbl@iflanguage executes code only if the language l@ exists. Otherwise raises an error. The argument of \bbl@fixname has to be a macro name, as it may get “fixed” if casing (lc/uc) is wrong. It’s an attempt to fix a long-standing bug when \foreignlanguage and the like appear in a \MakeXXXcase. However, a lowercase form is not imposed to improve backward compatibility (perhaps you defined a language named MYLANG, but unfortunately mixed case names cannot be trapped). Note l@ is encapsulated, so that its case does not change.

```

456 \def\bbl@fixname#1{%
457 \begingroup
458 \def\bbl@tempe{l@}%
459 \edef\bbl@tempd{\noexpand\ifundefined{\noexpand\bbl@tempe#1}}%
460 \bbl@tempd
461 {\lowercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}%
462 {\uppercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}%
463 \@empty
464 {\edef\bbl@tempd{\def\noexpand#1{#1}}%
465 \uppercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}}}%
466 {\edef\bbl@tempd{\def\noexpand#1{#1}}%
467 \lowercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}}}%
468 \@empty
469 \edef\bbl@tempd{\endgroup\def\noexpand#1{#1}}%
470 \bbl@tempd
471 \bbl@exp{\bbl@usehooks{language}{\language}{#1}}}
472 \def\bbl@iflanguage#1{%
473 \ifundefined{l@#1}{\@nolanerr{#1}\@gobble}\@firstofone}

```

After a name has been ‘fixed’, the selectors will try to load the language. If even the fixed name is not defined, will load it on the fly, either based on its name, or if activated, its BCP47 code.

We first need a couple of macros for a simple BCP 47 look up. It also makes sure, with \bbl@bcpcase, casing is the correct one, so that sr-latn-ba becomes fr-Latn-BA. Note #4 may contain some \@empty’s, but they are eventually removed. \bbl@bcpllookup either returns the found ini or it is \relax.

```

474 \def\bbl@bcpcase#1#2#3#4\@@#5{%
475 \ifx\@empty#3%
476 \uppercase{\def#5{#1#2}}%
477 \else
478 \uppercase{\def#5{#1}}%
479 \lowercase{\edef#5{#5#2#3#4}}%
480 \fi}
481 \def\bbl@bcpllookup#1-#2-#3-#4\@@{%
482 \let\bbl@bcp\relax
483 \lowercase{\def\bbl@tempa{#1}}%
484 \ifx\@empty#2%
485 \IfFileExists{babel-\bbl@tempa.ini}{\let\bbl@bcp\bbl@tempa}{}%
486 \else\ifx\@empty#3%
487 \bbl@bcpcase#2\@empty\@empty\@@\bbl@tempb
488 \IfFileExists{babel-\bbl@tempa-\bbl@tempb.ini}%
489 {\edef\bbl@bcp{\bbl@tempa-\bbl@tempb}}%
490 {}%
491 \ifx\bbl@bcp\relax

```



argument is a known language. If so, it compares the first argument with the value of `\language`. Then, depending on the result of the comparison, it executes either the second or the third argument.

```

548 \def\iflanguage#1{%
549   \bbl@iflanguage{#1}{%
550     \ifnum\csname l@#1\endcsname=\language
551       \expandafter\@firstoftwo
552     \else
553       \expandafter\@secondoftwo
554     \fi}}

```

## 8.1 Selecting the language

`\selectlanguage` The macro `\selectlanguage` checks whether the language is already defined before it performs its actual task, which is to update `\language` and activate language-specific definitions.

```

555 \let\bbl@select@type\z@
556 \edef\selectlanguage{%
557   \noexpand\protect
558   \expandafter\noexpand\csname selectlanguage \endcsname}

```

Because the command `\selectlanguage` could be used in a moving argument it expands to `\protect\selectlanguage`. Therefore, we have to make sure that a macro `\protect` exists. If it doesn't it is `\let` to `\relax`.

```

559 \ifx\@undefined\protect\let\protect\relax\fi

```

The following definition is preserved for backwards compatibility (eg, arabi, koma). It is related to a trick for 2.09, now discarded.

```

560 \let\xstring\string

```

Since version 3.5 babel writes entries to the auxiliary files in order to typeset table of contents etc. in the correct language environment.

`\bbl@pop@language` But when the language change happens *inside* a group the end of the group doesn't write anything to the auxiliary files. Therefore we need TeX's `aftergroup` mechanism to help us. The command `\aftergroup` stores the token immediately following it to be executed when the current group is closed. So we define a temporary control sequence `\bbl@pop@language` to be executed at the end of the group. It calls `\bbl@set@language` with the name of the current language as its argument.

`\bbl@language@stack` The previous solution works for one level of nesting groups, but as soon as more levels are used it is no longer adequate. For that case we need to keep track of the nested languages using a stack mechanism. This stack is called `\bbl@language@stack` and initially empty.

```

561 \def\bbl@language@stack{}

```

When using a stack we need a mechanism to push an element on the stack and to retrieve the information afterwards.

`\bbl@push@language` The stack is simply a list of languagenames, separated with a '+' sign; the push function can be simple:  
`\bbl@pop@language`

```

562 \def\bbl@push@language{%
563   \ifx\language\@undefined\else
564     \ifx\currentgroup\@undefined
565       \xdef\bbl@language@stack{\language+\bbl@language@stack}%
566     \else
567       \ifnum\currentgroup=1\z@
568         \xdef\bbl@language@stack{\language+}%
569       \else
570         \xdef\bbl@language@stack{\language+\bbl@language@stack}%
571       \fi
572     \fi
573   \fi}

```

Retrieving information from the stack is a little bit less simple, as we need to remove the element from the stack while storing it in the macro `\language`. For this we first define a helper function.

`\bbl@pop@lang` This macro stores its first element (which is delimited by the ‘+’-sign) in `\language` and stores the rest of the string in `\bbl@language@stack`.

```
574 \def\bbl@pop@lang#1+#2\@@{%
575   \edef\language{#1}%
576   \xdef\bbl@language@stack{#2}}
```

The reason for the somewhat weird arrangement of arguments to the helper function is the fact it is called in the following way. This means that before `\bbl@pop@lang` is executed  $\TeX$  first *expands* the stack, stored in `\bbl@language@stack`. The result of that is that the argument string of `\bbl@pop@lang` contains one or more language names, each followed by a ‘+’-sign (zero language names won’t occur as this macro will only be called after something has been pushed on the stack).

```
577 \let\bbl@ifrestoring\@secondoftwo
578 \def\bbl@pop@language{%
579   \expandafter\bbl@pop@lang\bbl@language@stack\@@
580   \let\bbl@ifrestoring\@firstoftwo
581   \expandafter\bbl@set@language\expandafter{\language}%
582   \let\bbl@ifrestoring\@secondoftwo}
```

Once the name of the previous language is retrieved from the stack, it is fed to `\bbl@set@language` to do the actual work of switching everything that needs switching.

An alternative way to identify languages (in the babel sense) with a numerical value is introduced in 3.30. This is one of the first steps for a new interface based on the concept of locale, which explains the name of `\localeid`. This means `\l@...` will be reserved for hyphenation patterns (so that two locales can share the same rules).

```
583 \chardef\localeid\z@
584 \def\bbl@id@last{0} % No real need for a new counter
585 \def\bbl@id@assign{%
586   \bbl@ifunset{bbl@id@\language}%
587   {\count@bbl@id@last\relax
588    \advance\count@\@ne
589    \bbl@csarg\chardef{id@\language}\count@
590    \edef\bbl@id@last{\the\count@}%
591    \ifcase\bbl@engine\or
592      \directlua{
593        Babel = Babel or {}
594        Babel.locale_props = Babel.locale_props or {}
595        Babel.locale_props[\bbl@id@last] = {}
596        Babel.locale_props[\bbl@id@last].name = '\language'
597      }%
598    \fi}%
599   }%
600   \chardef\localeid\bbl@c{id@}}
```

The unprotected part of `\selectlanguage`.

```
601 \expandafter\def\csname selectlanguage \endcsname#1{%
602   \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@cclv\let\bbl@hymapsel\tw@fi
603   \bbl@push@language
604   \aftergroup\bbl@pop@language
605   \bbl@set@language{#1}}
```

`\bbl@set@language` The macro `\bbl@set@language` takes care of switching the language environment *and* of writing entries on the auxiliary files. For historical reasons, language names can be either language of `\language`. To catch either form a trick is used, but unfortunately as a side effect the catcodes of letters in `\language` are messed up. This is a bug, but preserved for backwards compatibility.

The list of auxiliary files can be extended by redefining `\BabelContentsFiles`, but make sure they are loaded inside a group (as `aux`, `toc`, `lof`, and `lot` do) or the last language of the document will remain active afterwards.

We also write a command to change the current language in the auxiliary files.

`\bbl@savelastskip` is used to deal with skips before the write whatsit (as suggested by U Fischer).

Adapted from `hyperref`, but it might fail, so I'll consider it a temporary hack, while I study other options (the ideal, but very likely unfeasible except perhaps in `luatex`, is to avoid the `\write` altogether when not needed).

```

606 \def\BabelContentsFiles{toc,lof,lot}
607 \def\bbl@set@language#1{% from selectlanguage, pop@
608   % The old buggy way. Preserved for compatibility.
609   \edef\language#1%
610     \ifnum\escapechar=\expandafter`\string#1\@empty
611     \else\string#1\@empty\fi}%
612 \ifcat\relax\noexpand#1%
613   \expandafter\ifx\csname date\language\endcsname\relax
614     \edef\language{#1}%
615     \let\localename\language
616   \else
617     \bbl@info{Using '\string\language' instead of 'language' is\\%
618       deprecated. If what you want is to use a\\%
619       macro containing the actual locale, make\\%
620       sure it does not not match any language.\\%
621       Reported}%
622     \ifx\scantokens\undefined
623       \def\localename{??}%
624     \else
625       \scantokens\expandafter{\expandafter
626         \def\expandafter\localename\expandafter{\language}}%
627     \fi
628   \fi
629 \else
630   \def\localename{#1}% This one has the correct catcodes
631 \fi
632 \select@language{\language}%
633 % write to auxs
634 \expandafter\ifx\csname date\language\endcsname\relax\else
635   \if@filesw
636     \ifx\babel@aux\@gobbletwo\else % Set if single in the first, redundant
637       \bbl@savelastskip
638       \protected@write\@auxout{}\string\babel@aux{\bbl@auxname}{}}%
639       \bbl@restorelastskip
640     \fi
641     \bbl@usehooks{write}{}%
642   \fi
643 \fi}
644 %
645 \let\bbl@restorelastskip\relax
646 \let\bbl@savelastskip\relax
647 %
648 \newif\ifbbl@bcpallowed
649 \bbl@bcpallowedfalse
650 \def\select@language#1{% from set@, babel@aux
651   \ifx\bbl@selectorname\@empty
652     \def\bbl@selectorname{select}%
653   % set hymap
654   \fi
655   \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@cclv\chardef\bbl@hymapsel4\relax\fi

```



```

656 % set name
657 \edef\language{#1}%
658 \bbl@fixname\language
659 % TODO. name@map must be here?
660 \bbl@provide@locale
661 \bbl@iflanguage\language{%
662   \expandafter\ifx\csname date\language\endcsname\relax
663     \bbl@error
664     {Unknown language '\language'. Either you have\\%
665      misspelled its name, it has not been installed,\\%
666      or you requested it in a previous run. Fix its name,\\%
667      install it or just rerun the file, respectively. In\\%
668      some cases, you may need to remove the aux file}%
669     {You may proceed, but expect wrong results}%
670   \else
671     % set type
672     \let\bbl@select@type\z@
673     \expandafter\bbl@switch\expandafter{\language}%
674     \fi}}
675 \def\babel@aux#1#2{%
676   \select@language{#1}%
677   \bbl@foreach\BabelContentsFiles{% \relax -> don't assume vertical mode
678     \@writefile{##1}{\babel@toc{#1}{#2}\relax}}}% TODO - plain?
679 \def\babel@toc#1#2{%
680   \select@language{#1}}

```

First, check if the user asks for a known language. If so, update the value of `\language` and call `\originalTeX` to bring  $\TeX$  in a certain pre-defined state.

The name of the language is stored in the control sequence `\language`.

Then we have to redefine `\originalTeX` to compensate for the things that have been activated. To save memory space for the macro definition of `\originalTeX`, we construct the control sequence name for the `\noextras<lang>` command at definition time by expanding the `\csname` primitive. Now activate the language-specific definitions. This is done by constructing the names of three macros by concatenating three words with the argument of `\selectlanguage`, and calling these macros.

The switching of the values of `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` is somewhat different. First we save their current values, then we check if `\<lang>hyphenmins` is defined. If it is not, we set default values (2 and 3), otherwise the values in `\<lang>hyphenmins` will be used.

```

681 \newif\ifbbl@usedatagroup
682 \def\bbl@switch#1{% from select@, foreign@
683   % make sure there is info for the language if so requested
684   \bbl@ensureinfo{#1}%
685   % restore
686   \originalTeX
687   \expandafter\def\expandafter\originalTeX\expandafter{%
688     \csname noextras#1\endcsname
689     \let\originalTeX\@empty
690     \babel@beginsave}%
691   \bbl@usehooks{afterreset}}}%
692 \languageshorthands{none}%
693 % set the locale id
694 \bbl@id@assign
695 % switch captions, date
696 % No text is supposed to be added here, so we remove any
697 % spurious spaces.
698 \bbl@bsphack
699   \ifcase\bbl@select@type
700     \csname captions#1\endcsname\relax
701     \csname date#1\endcsname\relax

```

```

702 \else
703 \bbl@xin@{,captions,}{, \bbl@select@opts,}%
704 \ifin@
705 \csname captions#1\endcsname\relax
706 \fi
707 \bbl@xin@{,date,}{, \bbl@select@opts,}%
708 \ifin@ % if \foreign... within \<lang>date
709 \csname date#1\endcsname\relax
710 \fi
711 \fi
712 \bbl@esphack
713 % switch extras
714 \bbl@usehooks{beforeextras}{}%
715 \csname extras#1\endcsname\relax
716 \bbl@usehooks{afterextras}{}%
717 % > babel-ensure
718 % > babel-sh-<short>
719 % > babel-bidi
720 % > babel-fontspec
721 % hyphenation - case mapping
722 \ifcase\bbl@opt@hyphenmap\or
723 \def\BabelLower##1##2{\lccode##1=##2\relax}%
724 \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel>4\else
725 \csname\language\name @bbl@hyphenmap\endcsname
726 \fi
727 \chardef\bbl@opt@hyphenmap\z@
728 \else
729 \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel>\bbl@opt@hyphenmap\else
730 \csname\language\name @bbl@hyphenmap\endcsname
731 \fi
732 \fi
733 \let\bbl@hymapsel@cclv
734 % hyphenation - select rules
735 \ifnum\csname l@\language\name\endcsname=\l@unhyphenated
736 \edef\bbl@tempa{u}%
737 \else
738 \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@c1\lnbrk}%
739 \fi
740 % linebreaking - handle u, e, k (v in the future)
741 \bbl@xin@{/u}{/\bbl@tempa}%
742 \ifin@ \else \bbl@xin@{/e}{/\bbl@tempa} \fi % elongated forms
743 \ifin@ \else \bbl@xin@{/k}{/\bbl@tempa} \fi % only kashida
744 \ifin@ \else \bbl@xin@{/v}{/\bbl@tempa} \fi % variable font
745 \ifin@
746 % unhyphenated/kashida/elongated = allow stretching
747 \language\l@unhyphenated
748 \babel@savevariable\emergencystretch
749 \emergencystretch\maxdimen
750 \babel@savevariable\hbadness
751 \hbadness\@M
752 \else
753 % other = select patterns
754 \bbl@patterns{#1}%
755 \fi
756 % hyphenation - mins
757 \babel@savevariable\lefthyphenmin
758 \babel@savevariable\righthyphenmin
759 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
760 \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@\@relax

```

```

761 \else
762   \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
763   \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
764 \fi
765 \let\bbl@selectorname\@empty}

```

`otherlanguage` The `otherlanguage` environment can be used as an alternative to using the `\selectlanguage` declarative command. When you are typesetting a document which mixes left-to-right and right-to-left typesetting you have to use this environment in order to let things work as you expect them to.

The `\ignorespaces` command is necessary to hide the environment when it is entered in horizontal mode.

```

766 \long\def\otherlanguage#1{%
767   \def\bbl@selectorname{other}%
768   \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@cclv\let\bbl@hymapsel\thr@@\fi
769   \csname selectlanguage \endcsname{#1}%
770   \ignorespaces}

```

The `\endotherlanguage` part of the environment tries to hide itself when it is called in horizontal mode.

```

771 \long\def\endotherlanguage{%
772   \global\@ignoretrue\ignorespaces}

```

`otherlanguage*` The `otherlanguage` environment is meant to be used when a large part of text from a different language needs to be typeset, but without changing the translation of words such as ‘figure’. This environment makes use of `\foreign@language`.

```

773 \expandafter\def\csname otherlanguage*\endcsname{%
774   \@ifnextchar[\bbl@otherlanguage@s{\bbl@otherlanguage@s[]}}
775 \def\bbl@otherlanguage@s[#1]#2{%
776   \def\bbl@selectorname{other*}%
777   \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@cclv\chardef\bbl@hymapsel4\relax\fi
778   \def\bbl@select@opts{#1}%
779   \foreign@language{#2}}

```

At the end of the environment we need to switch off the extra definitions. The grouping mechanism of the environment will take care of resetting the correct hyphenation rules and “extras”.

```

780 \expandafter\let\csname endotherlanguage*\endcsname\relax

```

`\foreignlanguage` The `\foreignlanguage` command is another substitute for the `\selectlanguage` command. This command takes two arguments, the first argument is the name of the language to use for typesetting the text specified in the second argument.

Unlike `\selectlanguage` this command doesn’t switch *everything*, it only switches the hyphenation rules and the extra definitions for the language specified. It does this within a group and assumes the `\extras<lang>` command doesn’t make any `\global` changes. The coding is very similar to part of `\selectlanguage`.

`\bbl@beforeforeign` is a trick to fix a bug in bidi texts. `\foreignlanguage` is supposed to be a ‘text’ command, and therefore it must emit a `\leavevmode`, but it does not, and therefore the indent is placed on the opposite margin. For backward compatibility, however, it is done only if a right-to-left script is requested; otherwise, it is no-op.

(3.11) `\foreignlanguage*` is a temporary, experimental macro for a few lines with a different script direction, while preserving the paragraph format (thank the braces around `\par`, things like `\hangindent` are not reset). Do not use it in production, because its semantics and its syntax may change (and very likely will, or even it could be removed altogether). Currently it enters in vmode and then selects the language (which in turn sets the paragraph direction).

(3.11) Also experimental are the hook `foreign` and `foreign*`. With them you can redefine `\BabelText` which by default does nothing. Its behavior is not well defined yet. So, use it in horizontal mode only if you do not want surprises.

In other words, at the beginning of a paragraph `\foreignlanguage` enters into hmode with the surrounding lang, and with `\foreignlanguage*` with the new lang.

```

781 \providecommand\bbl@beforeforeign{}
782 \edef\foreignlanguage{%
783   \noexpand\protect
784   \expandafter\noexpand\csname foreignlanguage \endcsname}
785 \expandafter\def\csname foreignlanguage \endcsname{%
786   \@ifstar\bbl@foreign@s\bbl@foreign@x}
787 \providecommand\bbl@foreign@x[3][{}]{%
788   \begingroup
789     \def\bbl@selectorname{foreign}%
790     \def\bbl@select@opts{#1}%
791     \let\BabelText\@firstofone
792     \bbl@beforeforeign
793     \foreign@language{#2}%
794     \bbl@usehooks{foreign}{}%
795     \BabelText{#3}% Now in horizontal mode!
796   \endgroup}
797 \def\bbl@foreign@s#1#2{% TODO - \shapemode, \@setpar, ?\@par
798   \begingroup
799     {\par}%
800     \def\bbl@selectorname{foreign*}%
801     \let\bbl@select@opts\@empty
802     \let\BabelText\@firstofone
803     \foreign@language{#1}%
804     \bbl@usehooks{foreign*}{}%
805     \bbl@dirparastext
806     \BabelText{#2}% Still in vertical mode!
807     {\par}%
808   \endgroup}

```

`\foreign@language` This macro does the work for `\foreignlanguage` and the other `language*` environment. First we need to store the name of the language and check that it is a known language. Then it just calls `bbl@switch`.

```

809 \def\foreign@language#1{%
810   % set name
811   \edef\languagename{#1}%
812   \ifbbl@usedategroup
813     \bbl@add\bbl@select@opts{,date,}%
814     \bbl@usedategroupfalse
815   \fi
816   \bbl@fixname\languagename
817   % TODO. name@map here?
818   \bbl@provide@locale
819   \bbl@iflanguage\languagename{%
820     \expandafter\ifx\csname date\languagename\endcsname\relax
821       \bbl@warning % TODO - why a warning, not an error?
822       {Unknown language '#1'. Either you have\\%
823        misspelled its name, it has not been installed,\\%
824        or you requested it in a previous run. Fix its name,\\%
825        install it or just rerun the file, respectively. In\\%
826        some cases, you may need to remove the aux file.\\%
827        I'll proceed, but expect wrong results.\\%
828        Reported}%
829     \fi
830     % set type
831     \let\bbl@select@type\@ne
832     \expandafter\bbl@switch\expandafter{\languagename}}

```

The following macro executes conditionally some code based on the selector being used.

```

833 \def\IfBabelSelectorTF#1{%
834   \bbl@xin@{,\bbl@selectorname,}{,\zap@space#1 \@empty,}%
835   \ifin@
836     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
837   \else
838     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
839   \fi}

```

**\bbl@patterns** This macro selects the hyphenation patterns by changing the `\language` register. If special hyphenation patterns are available specifically for the current font encoding, use them instead of the default.

It also sets hyphenation exceptions, but only once, because they are global (here language `\lccode's` has been set, too). `\bbl@hyphenation@` is set to relax until the very first `\babelhyphenation`, so do nothing with this value. If the exceptions for a language (by its number, not its name, so that `:ENC` is taken into account) has been set, then use `\hyphenation` with both global and language exceptions and empty the latter to mark they must not be set again.

```

840 \let\bbl@hyphlist\@empty
841 \let\bbl@hyphenation@ \relax
842 \let\bbl@pttnlist\@empty
843 \let\bbl@patterns@ \relax
844 \let\bbl@hymapsel=\@ccclv
845 \def\bbl@patterns#1{%
846   \language=\expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname\relax
847     \csname l@#1\endcsname
848     \edef\bbl@tempa{#1}%
849   \else
850     \csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname
851     \edef\bbl@tempa{#1:\f@encoding}%
852   \fi
853   \@expandtwoargs\bbl@usehooks{patterns}{#1}{\bbl@tempa}%
854   % > luatex
855   \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphenation@}{#1}{% Can be \relax!
856     \begingroup
857       \bbl@xin@{,\number\language,}{,\bbl@hyphlist}%
858     \ifin@ \else
859       \@expandtwoargs\bbl@usehooks{hyphenation}{#1}{\bbl@tempa}%
860       \hyphenation{%
861         \bbl@hyphenation@
862         \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphenation@#1}%
863         \@empty
864         {\space\csname bbl@hyphenation@#1\endcsname}}%
865       \xdef\bbl@hyphlist{\bbl@hyphlist\number\language,}%
866     \fi
867   \endgroup}}

```

**hyphenrules** The environment `hyphenrules` can be used to select *just* the hyphenation rules. This environment does *not* change `\language` and when the hyphenation rules specified were not loaded it has no effect. Note however, `\lccode's` and font encodings are not set at all, so in most cases you should use `otherlanguage*`.

```

868 \def\hyphenrules#1{%
869   \edef\bbl@tempf{#1}%
870   \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempf
871   \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempf{%
872     \expandafter\bbl@patterns\expandafter{\bbl@tempf}%
873     \ifx\languageshorthands\undefined\else
874       \languageshorthands{none}%
875     \fi
876     \expandafter\ifx\csname\bbl@tempf hyphenmins\endcsname\relax

```

```

877     \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@@\relax
878     \else
879         \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
880         \csname\bbl@tempf hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
881     \fi}}
882 \let\endhyphenrules\@empty

\providehyphenmins The macro \providehyphenmins should be used in the language definition files to provide a default
                    setting for the hyphenation parameters \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin. If the macro
                    \langhyphenmins is already defined this command has no effect.

883 \def\providehyphenmins#1#2{%
884     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
885         \@namedef{#1hyphenmins}{#2}%
886     \fi}

\set@hyphenmins This macro sets the values of \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin. It expects two values as its
                 argument.

887 \def\set@hyphenmins#1#2{%
888     \lefthyphenmin#1\relax
889     \righthyphenmin#2\relax}

\ProvidesLanguage The identification code for each file is something that was introduced in  $\TeX$  2 $\epsilon$ . When the
                   command \ProvidesFile does not exist, a dummy definition is provided temporarily. For use in the
                   language definition file the command \ProvidesLanguage is defined by babel.
                   Depending on the format, ie, on if the former is defined, we use a similar definition or not.

890 \ifx\ProvidesFile\@undefined
891     \def\ProvidesLanguage#1[#2 #3 #4]{%
892         \wlog{Language: #1 #4 #3 <#2>}%
893     }
894 \else
895     \def\ProvidesLanguage#1{%
896         \begingroup
897         \catcode`\ 10 %
898         \@makeother\%
899         \@ifnextchar[%]
900             {\@provideslanguage{#1}}{\@provideslanguage{#1}[]}
901     \def\@provideslanguage#1[#2]{%
902         \wlog{Language: #1 #2}%
903         \expandafter\xdef\csname ver@#1.ldf\endcsname{#2}%
904     \endgroup}
905 \fi

\originalTeX The macro \originalTeX should be known to  $\TeX$  at this moment. As it has to be expandable we \let
              it to \@empty instead of \relax.

906 \ifx\originalTeX\@undefined\let\originalTeX\@empty\fi

Because this part of the code can be included in a format, we make sure that the macro which
initializes the save mechanism, \babel@beginsave, is not considered to be undefined.

907 \ifx\babel@beginsave\@undefined\let\babel@beginsave\relax\fi

A few macro names are reserved for future releases of babel, which will use the concept of ‘locale’:

908 \providecommand\setlocale{%
909     \bbl@error
910     {Not yet available}%
911     {Find an armchair, sit down and wait}}
912 \let\uselocale\setlocale
913 \let\locale\setlocale
914 \let\selectlocale\setlocale

```

```

915 \let\textlocale\setlocale
916 \let\textlanguage\setlocale
917 \let\language\setlocale

```

## 8.2 Errors

`\@nolanerr` `\@nopatterns` The babel package will signal an error when a documents tries to select a language that hasn't been defined earlier. When a user selects a language for which no hyphenation patterns were loaded into the format he will be given a warning about that fact. We revert to the patterns for `\language=0` in that case. In most formats that will be (US)english, but it might also be empty.

`\@noopterr` When the package was loaded without options not everything will work as expected. An error message is issued in that case.  
When the format knows about `\PackageError` it must be  $\text{\TeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ , so we can safely use its error handling interface. Otherwise we'll have to 'keep it simple'.  
Infos are not written to the console, but on the other hand many people think warnings are errors, so a further message type is defined: an important info which is sent to the console.

```

918 \edef\bbl@nulllanguage{\string\language=0}
919 \def\bbl@nocaption{\protect\bbl@nocaption@i}
920 \def\bbl@nocaption@i#1#2{% 1: text to be printed 2: caption macro \langXname
921   \global\@namedef{#2}{\textbf{?#1?}}%
922   \@nameuse{#2}%
923   \edef\bbl@tempa{#1}%
924   \bbl@sreplace\bbl@tempa{name}{}}%
925   \bbl@warning{% TODO.
926     \@backslashchar#1 not set for '\language'. Please,\\%
927     define it after the language has been loaded\\%
928     (typically in the preamble) with:\\%
929     \string\setlocalecaption{\language}{\bbl@tempa}{..}\\%
930     Reported}}
931 \def\bbl@tentative{\protect\bbl@tentative@i}
932 \def\bbl@tentative@i#1{%
933   \bbl@warning{%
934     Some functions for '#1' are tentative.\\%
935     They might not work as expected and their behavior\\%
936     could change in the future.\\%
937     Reported}}
938 \def\@nolanerr#1{%
939   \bbl@error
940   {You haven't defined the language '#1' yet.\\%
941     Perhaps you misspelled it or your installation\\%
942     is not complete}%
943   {Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}}
944 \def\@nopatterns#1{%
945   \bbl@warning
946   {No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for\\%
947     the language '#1' into the format.\\%
948     Please, configure your TeX system to add them and\\%
949     rebuild the format. Now I will use the patterns\\%
950     preloaded for \bbl@nulllanguage\space instead}}
951 \let\bbl@usehooks\@gobbles
952 \ifx\bbl@onlyswitch\@empty\endinput\fi
953 % Here ended switch.def

```

Here ended the now discarded switch.def. Here also (currently) ends the base option.

```

954 \ifx\directlua\@undefined\else
955   \ifx\bbl@luapatterns\@undefined
956     \input luababel.def
957   \fi

```

```

958 \fi
959 <<Basic macros>>
960 \bbl@trace{Compatibility with language.def}
961 \ifx\bbl@languages@undefined
962   \ifx\directlua@undefined
963     \openin1 = language.def % TODO. Remove hardcoded number
964     \ifeof1
965       \closein1
966       \message{I couldn't find the file language.def}
967     \else
968       \closein1
969       \begingroup
970         \def\addlanguage#1#2#3#4#5{%
971           \expandafter\ifx\csname lang@#1\endcsname\relax\else
972             \global\expandafter\let\csname l@#1\expandafter\endcsname
973               \csname lang@#1\endcsname
974           \fi}%
975         \def\uselanguage#1{%
976           \input language.def
977         \endgroup
978       \fi
979     \fi
980   \chardef\l@english\z@
981 \fi

```

`\addto` It takes two arguments, a *<control sequence>* and TeX-code to be added to the *<control sequence>*. If the *<control sequence>* has not been defined before it is defined now. The control sequence could also expand to `\relax`, in which case a circular definition results. The net result is a stack overflow. Note there is an inconsistency, because the assignment in the last branch is global.

```

982 \def\addto#1#2{%
983   \ifx#1\@undefined
984     \def#1{#2}%
985   \else
986     \ifx#1\relax
987       \def#1{#2}%
988     \else
989       {\toks@\expandafter{#1#2}%
990        \xdef#1{the\toks@}}%
991   \fi
992 \fi}

```

The macro `\initiate@active@char` below takes all the necessary actions to make its argument a shorthand character. The real work is performed once for each character. But first we define a little tool. TODO. Always used with additional expansions. Move them here? Move the macro to basic?

```

993 \def\bbl@withactive#1#2{%
994   \begingroup
995     \lccode`~=#2\relax
996     \lowercase{\endgroup#1~}}

```

`\bbl@redefine` To redefine a command, we save the old meaning of the macro. Then we redefine it to call the original macro with the ‘sanitized’ argument. The reason why we do it this way is that we don’t want to redefine the TeX macros completely in case their definitions change (they have changed in the past). A macro named `\macro` will be saved new control sequences named `\org@macro`.

```

997 \def\bbl@redefine#1{%
998   \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
999   \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1%
1000  \expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname}
1001 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefine

```



`\bbl@redefine@long` This version of `\babel@redefine` can be used to redefine `\long` commands such as `\ifthenelse`.

```
1002 \def\bbl@redefine@long#1{%
1003   \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
1004   \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1%
1005   \expandafter\long\expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname}
1006 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefine@long
```

`\bbl@redefineroobust` For commands that are redefined, but which *might* be robust we need a slightly more intelligent macro. A robust command `foo` is defined to expand to `\protect\foo_`. So it is necessary to check whether `\foo_` exists. The result is that the command that is being redefined is always robust afterwards. Therefore all we need to do now is define `\foo_`.

```
1007 \def\bbl@redefineroobust#1{%
1008   \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
1009   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@tempa\space}%
1010     {\expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1%
1011       \bbl@exp{\def\#1{\protect\<\bbl@tempa\space>}}}%
1012     {\bbl@exp{\let\<org@\bbl@tempa>\<\bbl@tempa\space>}}}%
1013     \@namedef{\bbl@tempa\space}}
1014 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefineroobust
```

## 8.3 Hooks

Admittedly, the current implementation is a somewhat simplistic and does very little to catch errors, but it is meant for developers, after all. `\bbl@usehooks` is the commands used by babel to execute hooks defined for an event.

```
1015 \bbl@trace{Hooks}
1016 \newcommand\AddBabelHook[3][{}]{%
1017   \bbl@ifunset{bbl@hk@#2}{\EnableBabelHook{#2}}{}%
1018   \def\bbl@tempa##1,#3=##2,##3\@empty{\def\bbl@tempb{##2}}%
1019   \expandafter\bbl@tempa\bbl@evargs,#3=,\@empty
1020   \bbl@ifunset{bbl@ev@#2@#3@#1}%
1021     {\bbl@csarg\bbl@add{ev@#3@#1}{\bbl@elth{#2}}}%
1022     {\bbl@csarg\let{ev@#2@#3@#1}\relax}%
1023   \bbl@csarg\newcommand{ev@#2@#3@#1}[\bbl@tempb]}
1024 \newcommand\EnableBabelHook[1]{\bbl@csarg\let{hk@#1}\@firstofone}
1025 \newcommand\DisableBabelHook[1]{\bbl@csarg\let{hk@#1}\@gobble}
1026 \def\bbl@usehooks#1#2{%
1027   \ifx\UseHook\@undefined\else\UseHook{babel/*/#1}\fi
1028   \def\bbl@elth##1{%
1029     \bbl@cs{hk@##1}{\bbl@cs{ev@##1@#1@#2}}%
1030     \bbl@cs{ev@#1@}%
1031     \ifx\language\@undefined\else % Test required for Plain (?)
1032       \ifx\UseHook\@undefined\else\UseHook{babel/\language/#1}\fi
1033       \def\bbl@elth##1{%
1034         \bbl@cs{hk@##1}{\bbl@cl{ev@##1@#1@#2}}%
1035         \bbl@cl{ev@#1}%
1036       \fi}
```

To ensure forward compatibility, arguments in hooks are set implicitly. So, if a further argument is added in the future, there is no need to change the existing code. Note events intended for `hyphen.cfg` are also loaded (just in case you need them for some reason).

```
1037 \def\bbl@evargs{,% <- don't delete this comma
1038   everylanguage=1,loadkernel=1,loadpatterns=1,loadexceptions=1,%
1039   adddialect=2,patterns=2,defaultcommands=0,encodedcommands=2,write=0,%
1040   beforeextras=0,afterextras=0,stopcommands=0,stringprocess=0,%
1041   hyphenation=2,initiateactive=3,afterreset=0,foreign=0,foreign*=0,%
1042   beforestart=0,language=2}
1043 \ifx\NewHook\@undefined\else
```

```

1044 \def\bbl@tempa#1=#2\@{\NewHook{babel/#1}}
1045 \bbl@foreach\bbl@evargs{\bbl@tempa#1\@}%
1046 \fi

```

`\babelensure` The user command just parses the optional argument and creates a new macro named `\bbl@e@<language>`. We register a hook at the `afterextras` event which just executes this macro in a “complete” selection (which, if undefined, is `\relax` and does nothing). This part is somewhat involved because we have to make sure things are expanded the correct number of times. The macro `\bbl@e@<language>` contains `\bbl@ensure{<include>}{<exclude>}{<fontenc>}`, which in turn loops over the macros names in `\bbl@captionslist`, excluding (with the help of `\in@`) those in the exclude list. If the fontenc is given (and not `\relax`), the `\fontencoding` is also added. Then we loop over the include list, but if the macro already contains `\foreignlanguage`, nothing is done. Note this macro (1) is not restricted to the preamble, and (2) changes are local.

```

1047 \bbl@trace{Defining babelensure}
1048 \newcommand\babelensure[2][{}]{% TODO - revise test files
1049   \AddBabelHook{babel-ensure}{afterextras}{%
1050     \ifcase\bbl@select@type
1051       \bbl@cl{e}%
1052     \fi}%
1053   \begingroup
1054     \let\bbl@ens@include\@empty
1055     \let\bbl@ens@exclude\@empty
1056     \def\bbl@ens@fontenc{\relax}%
1057     \def\bbl@tempb##1{%
1058       \ifx\@empty##1\else\noexpand##1\expandafter\bbl@tempb\fi}%
1059     \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempb#1\@empty}%
1060     \def\bbl@tempb##1=#2\@{\@namedef{\bbl@ens@##1}{##2}}%
1061     \bbl@foreach\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempb##1\@}%
1062     \def\bbl@tempc{\bbl@ensure}%
1063     \expandafter\bbl@add\expandafter\bbl@tempc\expandafter{%
1064       \expandafter{\bbl@ens@include}}%
1065     \expandafter\bbl@add\expandafter\bbl@tempc\expandafter{%
1066       \expandafter{\bbl@ens@exclude}}%
1067     \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@tempc}%
1068     \bbl@exp{%
1069   \endgroup
1070   \def\<bbl@e@#2>{\the\toks@{\bbl@ens@fontenc}}}%
1071 \def\bbl@ensure#1#2#3{% 1: include 2: exclude 3: fontenc
1072   \def\bbl@tempb##1{% elt for (excluding) \bbl@captionslist list
1073     \ifx##1\undefined % 3.32 - Don't assume the macro exists
1074       \edef##1{\noexpand\bbl@nocaption
1075         {\bbl@stripslash##1}{\language\name\bbl@stripslash##1}}%
1076     \fi
1077     \ifx##1\@empty\else
1078       \in@{##1}{#2}%
1079     \ifin\else
1080       \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@ensure@\language\name}%
1081       {\bbl@exp{%
1082         \\\DeclareRobustCommand\bbl@ensure@\language\name>[1]{%
1083           \\\foreignlanguage{\language\name}%
1084           {\ifx\relax#3\else
1085             \\\fontencoding{#3}\selectfont
1086             \fi
1087             #####1}}}%
1088       }%
1089       \toks@\expandafter{##1}%
1090       \edef##1{%
1091         \bbl@csarg\noexpand{ensure@\language\name}%
1092         {\the\toks@}}%

```

```

1093      \fi
1094      \expandafter\bb1@tempb
1095      \fi}%
1096 \expandafter\bb1@tempb\bb1@captionslist\today\@empty
1097 \def\bb1@tempa##1{% elt for include list
1098   \ifx##1\@empty\else
1099     \bb1@csarg\in{\ensure@\language\expandafter}\expandafter{##1}%
1100     \ifin\@else
1101       \bb1@tempb##1\@empty
1102     \fi
1103     \expandafter\bb1@tempa
1104   \fi}%
1105 \bb1@tempa#1\@empty}
1106 \def\bb1@captionslist{%
1107 \prefacename\refname\abstractname\bibname\chaptername\appendixname
1108 \contentsname\listfigurename\listtablename\indexname\figurename
1109 \tablename\partname\enclname\ccname\headtoname\pagename\seename
1110 \alsoname\proofname\glossaryname}

```

## 8.4 Setting up language files

**\LdfInit**    \LdfInit macro takes two arguments. The first argument is the name of the language that will be defined in the language definition file; the second argument is either a control sequence or a string from which a control sequence should be constructed. The existence of the control sequence indicates that the file has been processed before.

At the start of processing a language definition file we always check the category code of the at-sign. We make sure that it is a 'letter' during the processing of the file. We also save its name as the last called option, even if not loaded.

Another character that needs to have the correct category code during processing of language definition files is the equals sign, '=', because it is sometimes used in constructions with the \let primitive. Therefore we store its current catcode and restore it later on.

Now we check whether we should perhaps stop the processing of this file. To do this we first need to check whether the second argument that is passed to \LdfInit is a control sequence. We do that by looking at the first token after passing #2 through string. When it is equal to \@backslashchar we are dealing with a control sequence which we can compare with \@undefined.

If so, we call \ldf@quit to set the main language, restore the category code of the @-sign and call \endinput

When #2 was *not* a control sequence we construct one and compare it with \relax.

Finally we check \originalTeX.

```

1111 \bb1@trace{Macros for setting language files up}
1112 \def\bb1@ldfinit{%
1113   \let\bb1@screset\@empty
1114   \let\BabelStrings\bb1@opt@string
1115   \let\BabelOptions\@empty
1116   \let\BabelLanguages\relax
1117   \ifx\originalTeX\@undefined
1118     \let\originalTeX\@empty
1119   \else
1120     \originalTeX
1121   \fi}
1122 \def\LdfInit#1#2{%
1123   \chardef\atcatcode=\catcode`\@
1124   \catcode`\@=11\relax
1125   \chardef\eqcatcode=\catcode`\=
1126   \catcode`\==12\relax
1127   \expandafter\if\expandafter\@backslashchar
1128     \expandafter\@car\string#2\@nil
1129   \ifx#2\@undefined\else

```

```

1130 \ldf@quit{#1}%
1131 \fi
1132 \else
1133 \expandafter\ifx\csname#2\endcsname\relax\else
1134 \ldf@quit{#1}%
1135 \fi
1136 \fi
1137 \bbl@ldfinit}

```

`\ldf@quit` This macro interrupts the processing of a language definition file.

```

1138 \def\ldf@quit#1{%
1139 \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
1140 \catcode\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
1141 \catcode\==\eqcatcode \let\eqcatcode\relax
1142 \endinput}

```

`\ldf@finish` This macro takes one argument. It is the name of the language that was defined in the language definition file.  
We load the local configuration file if one is present, we set the main language (taking into account that the argument might be a control sequence that needs to be expanded) and reset the category code of the @-sign.

```

1143 \def\bbl@afterldf#1{% TODO. Merge into the next macro? Unused elsewhere
1144 \bbl@afterlang
1145 \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
1146 \let\BabelModifiers\relax
1147 \let\bbl@screset\relax}%
1148 \def\ldf@finish#1{%
1149 \loadlocalcfg{#1}%
1150 \bbl@afterldf{#1}%
1151 \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
1152 \catcode\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
1153 \catcode\==\eqcatcode \let\eqcatcode\relax}

```

After the preamble of the document the commands `\LdfInit`, `\ldf@quit` and `\ldf@finish` are no longer needed. Therefore they are turned into warning messages in `LTEX`.

```

1154 \@onlypreamble\LdfInit
1155 \@onlypreamble\ldf@quit
1156 \@onlypreamble\ldf@finish

```

`\main@language` This command should be used in the various language definition files. It stores its argument in `\bbl@main@language` to be used to switch to the correct language at the beginning of the document.

```

1157 \def\main@language#1{%
1158 \def\bbl@main@language{#1}%
1159 \let\language\bbl@main@language % TODO. Set localename
1160 \bbl@id@assign
1161 \bbl@patterns{\language}}

```

We also have to make sure that some code gets executed at the beginning of the document, either when the aux file is read or, if it does not exist, when the `\AtBeginDocument` is executed. Languages do not set `\pagedir`, so we set here for the whole document to the main `\bodydir`.

```

1162 \def\bbl@beforestart{%
1163 \def\@nolanerr##1{%
1164 \bbl@warning{Undefined language '##1' in aux.\Reported}}%
1165 \bbl@usehooks{beforestart}}}%
1166 \global\let\bbl@beforestart\relax}
1167 \AtBeginDocument{%
1168 {\@nameuse{bbl@beforestart}}% Group!
1169 \if@filesw

```

```

1170 \providecommand\babel@aux[2]{}%
1171 \immediate\write\@mainaux{%
1172 \string\providecommand\string\babel@aux[2]{}%
1173 \immediate\write\@mainaux{\string\nameuse{bbl@beforestart}}%
1174 \fi
1175 \expandafter\selectlanguage\expandafter{\bbl@main@language}%
1176 \ifbbl@single % must go after the line above.
1177 \renewcommand\selectlanguage[1]{}%
1178 \renewcommand\foreignlanguage[2]{#2}%
1179 \global\let\babel@aux\@gobbles % Also as flag
1180 \fi
1181 \ifcase\bbl@engine\or\pagedir\bodydir\fi} % TODO - a better place

```

A bit of optimization. Select in heads/foots the language only if necessary.

```

1182 \def\select@language@x#1{%
1183 \ifcase\bbl@select@type
1184 \bbl@ifsamestring\language@name{#1}{\select@language{#1}}%
1185 \else
1186 \select@language{#1}%
1187 \fi}

```

## 8.5 Shorthands

`\bbl@add@special` The macro `\bbl@add@special` is used to add a new character (or single character control sequence) to the macro `\dospecials` (and `\@sanitize` if  $\LaTeX$  is used). It is used only at one place, namely when `\initiate@active@char` is called (which is ignored if the char has been made active before). Because `\@sanitize` can be undefined, we put the definition inside a conditional. Items are added to the lists without checking its existence or the original catcode. It does not hurt, but should be fixed. It's already done with `\nfss@catcodes`, added in 3.10.

```

1188 \bbl@trace{Shorhands}
1189 \def\bbl@add@special#1{% 1:a macro like \", \?, etc.
1190 \bbl@add\dospecials{\do#1}% test @sanitize = \relax, for back. compat.
1191 \bbl@ifunset{@sanitize}{\bbl@add\@sanitize{\@makeother#1}}%
1192 \ifx\nfss@catcodes\@undefined\else % TODO - same for above
1193 \begingroup
1194 \catcode`#1\active
1195 \nfss@catcodes
1196 \ifnum\catcode`#1=\active
1197 \endgroup
1198 \bbl@add\nfss@catcodes{\@makeother#1}%
1199 \else
1200 \endgroup
1201 \fi
1202 \fi}

```

`\bbl@remove@special` The companion of the former macro is `\bbl@remove@special`. It removes a character from the set macros `\dospecials` and `\@sanitize`, but it is not used at all in the babel core.

```

1203 \def\bbl@remove@special#1{%
1204 \begingroup
1205 \def\x##1##2{\ifnum`#1=##2\noexpand\@empty
1206 \else\noexpand##1\noexpand##2\fi}%
1207 \def\do{\x\do}%
1208 \def\@makeother{\x\@makeother}%
1209 \edef\x{\endgroup
1210 \def\noexpand\dospecials{\dospecials}%
1211 \expandafter\ifx\c@name @sanitize\endc@name\relax\else
1212 \def\noexpand\@sanitize{\@sanitize}%
1213 \fi}%

```

1214 \x}

`\initiate@active@char` A language definition file can call this macro to make a character active. This macro takes one argument, the character that is to be made active. When the character was already active this macro does nothing. Otherwise, this macro defines the control sequence `\normal@char⟨char⟩` to expand to the character in its ‘normal state’ and it defines the active character to expand to `\normal@char⟨char⟩` by default (`⟨char⟩` being the character to be made active). Later its definition can be changed to expand to `\active@char⟨char⟩` by calling `\bbl@activate{⟨char⟩}`. For example, to make the double quote character active one could have `\initiate@active@char{"}` in a language definition file. This defines " as `\active@prefix "\active@char"` (where the first " is the character with its original catcode, when the shorthand is created, and `\active@char` is a single token). In protected contexts, it expands to `\protect "` or `\noexpand "` (ie, with the original "); otherwise `\active@char` is executed. This macro in turn expands to `\normal@char` in “safe” contexts (eg, `\label`), but `\user@active` in normal “unsafe” ones. The latter search a definition in the user, language and system levels, in this order, but if none is found, `\normal@char` is used. However, a deactivated shorthand (with `\bbl@deactivate` is defined as `\active@prefix "\normal@char"`. The following macro is used to define shorthands in the three levels. It takes 4 arguments: the (string’ed) character, `\<level>@group`, `<level>@active` and `<next-level>@active` (except in system).

```
1215 \def\bbl@active@def#1#2#3#4{%
1216   \@namedef{#3#1}{%
1217     \expandafter\ifx\csname#2@sh@#1\endcsname\relax
1218       \bbl@afterelse\bbl@sh@select#2#1{#3@arg#1}{#4#1}%
1219     \else
1220       \bbl@afterfi\csname#2@sh@#1\endcsname
1221     \fi}%

```

When there is also no current-level shorthand with an argument we will check whether there is a next-level defined shorthand for this active character.

```
1222 \long\@namedef{#3@arg#1}##1{%
1223   \expandafter\ifx\csname#2@sh@#1\string##1\endcsname\relax
1224     \bbl@afterelse\csname#4#1\endcsname##1%
1225   \else
1226     \bbl@afterfi\csname#2@sh@#1\string##1\endcsname
1227   \fi}%

```

`\initiate@active@char` calls `\@initiate@active@char` with 3 arguments. All of them are the same character with different catcodes: active, other (`\string’ed`) and the original one. This trick simplifies the code a lot.

```
1228 \def\initiate@active@char#1{%
1229   \bbl@ifunset{active@char\string#1}%
1230   {\bbl@withactive
1231     {\expandafter\@initiate@active@char\expandafter}#1\string#1#1}%
1232   {}}

```

The very first thing to do is saving the original catcode and the original definition, even if not active, which is possible (undefined characters require a special treatment to avoid making them `\relax` and preserving some degree of protection).

```
1233 \def\@initiate@active@char#1#2#3{%
1234   \bbl@csarg\edef{oricat@#2}{\catcode`#2=\the\catcode`#2\relax}%
1235   \ifx#1\@undefined
1236     \bbl@csarg\def{oridef@#2}{\def#1{\active@prefix#1\@undefined}}%
1237   \else
1238     \bbl@csarg\let{oridef@#2}#1%
1239     \bbl@csarg\edef{oridef@#2}{%
1240       \let\noexpand#1%
1241       \expandafter\noexpand\csname\bbl@oridef@@#2\endcsname}%
1242   \fi

```

If the character is already active we provide the default expansion under this shorthand mechanism. Otherwise we write a message in the transcript file, and define `\normal@char⟨char⟩` to expand to the character in its default state. If the character is mathematically active when babel is loaded (for example `'`) the normal expansion is somewhat different to avoid an infinite loop (but it does not prevent the loop if the mathcode is set to `"8000 a posteriori`).

```

1243 \ifx#1#3\relax
1244 \expandafter\let\csname normal@char#2\endcsname#3%
1245 \else
1246 \bbl@info{Making #2 an active character}%
1247 \ifnum\mathcode`#2=\ifodd\bbl@engine"1000000 \else"8000 \fi
1248 \@namedef{normal@char#2}{%
1249 \textormath{#3}{\csname bbl@oridef@#2\endcsname}}%
1250 \else
1251 \@namedef{normal@char#2}{#3}%
1252 \fi

```

To prevent problems with the loading of other packages after babel we reset the catcode of the character to the original one at the end of the package and of each language file (except with `KeepShorthandsActive`). It is re-activate again at `\begin{document}`. We also need to make sure that the shorthands are active during the processing of the `.aux` file. Otherwise some citations may give unexpected results in the printout when a shorthand was used in the optional argument of `\bibitem` for example. Then we make it active (not strictly necessary, but done for backward compatibility).

```

1253 \bbl@restoreactive{#2}%
1254 \AtBeginDocument{%
1255 \catcode`#2\active
1256 \if@filesw
1257 \immediate\write\@mainaux{\catcode`\string#2\active}%
1258 \fi}%
1259 \expandafter\bbl@add@special\csname#2\endcsname
1260 \catcode`#2\active
1261 \fi

```

Now we have set `\normal@char⟨char⟩`, we must define `\active@char⟨char⟩`, to be executed when the character is activated. We define the first level expansion of `\active@char⟨char⟩` to check the status of the `@safe@actives` flag. If it is set to true we expand to the `'normal'` version of this character, otherwise we call `\user@active⟨char⟩` to start the search of a definition in the user, language and system levels (or eventually `normal@char⟨char⟩`).

```

1262 \let\bbl@tempa\@firstoftwo
1263 \if\string^#2%
1264 \def\bbl@tempa{\noexpand\textormath}%
1265 \else
1266 \ifx\bbl@mathnormal\@undefined\else
1267 \let\bbl@tempa\bbl@mathnormal
1268 \fi
1269 \fi
1270 \expandafter\edef\csname active@char#2\endcsname{%
1271 \bbl@tempa
1272 {\noexpand\if@safe@actives
1273 \noexpand\expandafter
1274 \expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname
1275 \noexpand\else
1276 \noexpand\expandafter
1277 \expandafter\noexpand\csname bbl@doactive#2\endcsname
1278 \noexpand\fi}%
1279 {\expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname}}%
1280 \bbl@csarg\edef{doactive#2}{%
1281 \expandafter\noexpand\csname user@active#2\endcsname}%

```

We now define the default values which the shorthand is set to when activated or deactivated. It is set to the deactivated form (globally), so that the character expands to

`\active@prefix <char> \normal@char <char>`

(where `\active@char <char>` is one control sequence!).

```
1282 \bbl@csarg\edef{active@#2}{%
1283   \noexpand\active@prefix\noexpand#1%
1284   \expandafter\noexpand\csname active@char#2\endcsname}%
1285 \bbl@csarg\edef{normal@#2}{%
1286   \noexpand\active@prefix\noexpand#1%
1287   \expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname}%
1288 \expandafter\let\expandafter#1\csname bbl@normal@#2\endcsname
```

The next level of the code checks whether a user has defined a shorthand for himself with this character. First we check for a single character shorthand. If that doesn't exist we check for a shorthand with an argument.

```
1289 \bbl@active@def#2\user@group{user@active}{language@active}%
1290 \bbl@active@def#2\language@group{language@active}{system@active}%
1291 \bbl@active@def#2\system@group{system@active}{normal@char}%
```

In order to do the right thing when a shorthand with an argument is used by itself at the end of the line we provide a definition for the case of an empty argument. For that case we let the shorthand character expand to its non-active self. Also, When a shorthand combination such as `' '` ends up in a heading  $\TeX$  would see `\protect'\protect'`. To prevent this from happening a couple of shorthand needs to be defined at user level.

```
1292 \expandafter\edef\csname\user@group @sh@#2@@\endcsname
1293 {\expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname}%
1294 \expandafter\edef\csname\user@group @sh@#2@\string\protect\endcsname
1295 {\expandafter\noexpand\csname user@active#2\endcsname}%
```

Finally, a couple of special cases are taken care of. (1) If we are making the right quote (`'`) active we need to change `\pr@m@s` as well. Also, make sure that a single `'` in math mode 'does the right thing'. (2) If we are using the caret (`^`) as a shorthand character special care should be taken to make sure math still works. Therefore an extra level of expansion is introduced with a check for math mode on the upper level.

```
1296 \if\string'#2%
1297   \let\prim@s\bbl@prim@s
1298   \let\active@math@prime#1%
1299 \fi
1300 \bbl@usehooks{initiateactive}{\{#1\}{#2\}{#3\}}
```

The following package options control the behavior of shorthands in math mode.

```
1301 <<{*More package options}>> ≡
1302 \DeclareOption{math=active}{}
1303 \DeclareOption{math=normal}{\def\bbl@mathnormal{\noexpand\textormath}}
1304 <</More package options>>
```

Initiating a shorthand makes active the char. That is not strictly necessary but it is still done for backward compatibility. So we need to restore the original catcode at the end of package *and* the end of the ldf.

```
1305 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{KeepShorthandsActive}%
1306 {\let\bbl@restoreactive\@gobble}%
1307 {\def\bbl@restoreactive#1{%
1308   \bbl@exp{%
1309     \AfterBabelLanguage\CurrentOption
1310     {\catcode`#1=\the\catcode`#1\relax}%
1311     \AtEndOfPackage
1312     {\catcode`#1=\the\catcode`#1\relax}}}%
1313 \AtEndOfPackage{\let\bbl@restoreactive\@gobble}}
```



`\bbl@sh@select` This command helps the shorthand supporting macros to select how to proceed. Note that this macro needs to be expandable as do all the shorthand macros in order for them to work in expansion-only environments such as the argument of `\hyphenation`. This macro expects the name of a group of shorthands in its first argument and a shorthand character in its second argument. It will expand to either `\bbl@firstcs` or `\bbl@scndcs`. Hence two more arguments need to follow it.

```

1314 \def\bbl@sh@select#1#2{%
1315   \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@sh@#2@sel\endcsname\relax
1316     \bbl@afterelse\bbl@scndcs
1317   \else
1318     \bbl@afterfi\csname#1@sh@#2@sel\endcsname
1319   \fi}

```

`\active@prefix` The command `\active@prefix` which is used in the expansion of active characters has a function similar to `\OT1-cmd` in that it `\protect`s the active character whenever `\protect` is *not* `\@typeset@protect`. The `\@gobble` is needed to remove a token such as `\activechar:` (when the double colon was the active character to be dealt with). There are two definitions, depending of `\ifincsname` is available. If there is, the expansion will be more robust.

```

1320 \begingroup
1321 \bbl@ifunset{ifincsname}% TODO. Ugly. Correct? Only Plain?
1322 {\gdef\active@prefix#1{%
1323   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
1324   \else
1325     \ifx\protect\@unexpandable@protect
1326       \noexpand#1%
1327     \else
1328       \protect#1%
1329     \fi
1330     \expandafter\@gobble
1331   \fi}}
1332 {\gdef\active@prefix#1{%
1333   \ifincsname
1334     \string#1%
1335     \expandafter\@gobble
1336   \else
1337     \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
1338     \else
1339       \ifx\protect\@unexpandable@protect
1340         \noexpand#1%
1341       \else
1342         \protect#1%
1343       \fi
1344       \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\@gobble
1345     \fi
1346   \fi}}
1347 \endgroup

```

`\if@safe@actives` In some circumstances it is necessary to be able to change the expansion of an active character on the fly. For this purpose the switch `@safe@actives` is available. The setting of this switch should be checked in the first level expansion of `\active@char<char>`.

```

1348 \newif\if@safe@actives
1349 \@safe@activesfalse

```

`\bbl@restore@actives` When the output routine kicks in while the active characters were made “safe” this must be undone in the headers to prevent unexpected typeset results. For this situation we define a command to make them “unsafe” again.

```

1350 \def\bbl@restore@actives{\if@safe@actives\@safe@activesfalse\fi}

```

`\bbl@activate` Both macros take one argument, like `\initiate@active@char`. The macro is used to change the definition of an active character to expand to `\active@char<char>` in the case of `\bbl@activate`, or `\normal@char<char>` in the case of `\bbl@deactivate`.

```
1351 \chardef\bbl@activated\z@
1352 \def\bbl@activate#1{%
1353   \chardef\bbl@activated@ne
1354   \bbl@withactive{\expandafter\let\expandafter}#1%
1355   \csname bbl@active@\string#1\endcsname}
1356 \def\bbl@deactivate#1{%
1357   \chardef\bbl@activated\tw@
1358   \bbl@withactive{\expandafter\let\expandafter}#1%
1359   \csname bbl@normal@\string#1\endcsname}
```

`\bbl@firstcs` These macros are used only as a trick when declaring shorthands.

```
\bbl@scndcs
1360 \def\bbl@firstcs#1#2{\csname#1\endcsname}
1361 \def\bbl@scndcs#1#2{\csname#2\endcsname}
```

`\declare@shorthand` The command `\declare@shorthand` is used to declare a shorthand on a certain level. It takes three arguments:

1. a name for the collection of shorthands, i.e. 'system', or 'dutch';
2. the character (sequence) that makes up the shorthand, i.e. `~` or `"a`;
3. the code to be executed when the shorthand is encountered.

The auxiliary macro `\babel@texpdf` improves the interoperativity with `hyperref` and takes 4 arguments: (1) The  $\TeX$  code in text mode, (2) the string for `hyperref`, (3) the  $\TeX$  code in math mode, and (4), which is currently ignored, but it's meant for a string in math mode, like a minus sign instead of an hyphen (currently `hyperref` doesn't discriminate the mode). This macro may be used in `ldf` files.

```
1362 \def\babel@texpdf#1#2#3#4{%
1363   \ifx\texorpdfstring\undefined
1364     \textormath{#1}{#3}%
1365   \else
1366     \texorpdfstring{\textormath{#1}{#3}}{#2}%
1367     % \texorpdfstring{\textormath{#1}{#3}}{\textormath{#2}{#4}}%
1368   \fi}
1369 %
1370 \def\declare@shorthand#1#2{\@decl@short{#1}#2\@nil}
1371 \def\@decl@short#1#2#3\@nil#4{%
1372   \def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
1373   \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty
1374     \expandafter\let\csname #1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname\bbl@scndcs
1375     \bbl@ifunset{#1@sh@\string#2@}{}%
1376     {\def\bbl@tempa{#4}%
1377      \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@sh@\string#2@\endcsname\bbl@tempa
1378      \else
1379        \bbl@info
1380        {Redefining #1 shorthand \string#2\%
1381         in language \CurrentOption}%
1382      \fi}%
1383     \@namedef{#1@sh@\string#2@}{#4}%
1384   \else
1385     \expandafter\let\csname #1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname\bbl@firstcs
1386     \bbl@ifunset{#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@}{}%
1387     {\def\bbl@tempa{#4}%
1388      \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@\endcsname\bbl@tempa
1389      \else
1390        \bbl@info
1391        {Redefining #1 shorthand \string#2\string#3\%

```

```

1392         in language \CurrentOption}%
1393     \fi}%
1394     \@namedef{#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@}{#4}%
1395     \fi}

\textormath  Some of the shorthands that will be declared by the language definition files have to be usable in
              both text and mathmode. To achieve this the helper macro \textormath is provided.

1396 \def\textormath{%
1397     \ifmmode
1398         \expandafter\@secondoftwo
1399     \else
1400         \expandafter\@firstoftwo
1401     \fi}

\user@group  The current concept of ‘shorthands’ supports three levels or groups of shorthands. For each level the
\language@group name of the level or group is stored in a macro. The default is to have a user group; use language
\system@group   group ‘english’ and have a system group called ‘system’.

1402 \def\user@group{user}
1403 \def\language@group{english} % TODO. I don't like defaults
1404 \def\system@group{system}

\useshorthands This is the user level macro. It initializes and activates the character for use as a shorthand character
               (ie, it's active in the preamble). Languages can deactivate shorthands, so a starred version is also
               provided which activates them always after the language has been switched.

1405 \def\useshorthands{%
1406     \@ifstar\bb1@usesh@s{\bb1@usesh@x{}}
1407     \def\bb1@usesh@s#1{%
1408         \bb1@usesh@x
1409         {\AddBabelHook{babel-sh-\string#1}{afterextras}{\bb1@activate{#1}}}%
1410         {#1}}
1411     \def\bb1@usesh@x#1#2{%
1412         \bb1@ifshorthand{#2}%
1413         {\def\user@group{user}%
1414             \initiate@active@char{#2}%
1415             #1%
1416             \bb1@activate{#2}}%
1417         {\bb1@error
1418             {I can't declare a shorthand turned off (\string#2)}
1419             {Sorry, but you can't use shorthands which have been\\
1420             turned off in the package options}}}

\defineshorthand Currently we only support two groups of user level shorthands, named internally user and
                 user@<lang> (language-dependent user shorthands). By default, only the first one is taken into
                 account, but if the former is also used (in the optional argument of \defineshorthand) a new level is
                 inserted for it (user@generic, done by \bb1@set@user@generic); we make also sure {} and
                 \protect are taken into account in this new top level.

1421 \def\user@language@group{user@\language@group}
1422 \def\bb1@set@user@generic#1#2{%
1423     \bb1@ifunset{user@generic@active#1}%
1424     {\bb1@active@def#1\user@language@group{user@active}{user@generic@active}%
1425         \bb1@active@def#1\user@group{user@generic@active}{language@active}%
1426         \expandafter\edef\csname#2@sh@#1@\endcsname{%
1427             \expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#1\endcsname}%
1428             \expandafter\edef\csname#2@sh@#1@\string\protect\endcsname{%
1429                 \expandafter\noexpand\csname user@active#1\endcsname}}%
1430     \@empty}
1431 \newcommand\defineshorthand[3][user]{%
1432     \def\bb1@tempa{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%

```

```

1433 \bbl@for\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa{%
1434   \if*\expandafter\@car\bbl@tempb\@nil
1435   \edef\bbl@tempb{user@\expandafter\@gobble\bbl@tempb}%
1436   \expandtwoargs
1437   \bbl@set@user@generic{\expandafter\string\@car#2\@nil}\bbl@tempb
1438   \fi
1439   \declare@shorthand{\bbl@tempb}{#2}{#3}}

```

`\languageshorthands` A user level command to change the language from which shorthands are used. Unfortunately, babel currently does not keep track of defined groups, and therefore there is no way to catch a possible change in casing to fix it in the same way languages names are fixed. [TODO].

```

1440 \def\languageshorthands#1{\def\language@group{#1}}

```

`\aliasshorthand` First the new shorthand needs to be initialized. Then, we define the new shorthand in terms of the original one, but note with `\aliasshorthands{"}{/}` is `\active@prefix /\active@char/`, so we still need to let the latest to `\active@char`.

```

1441 \def\aliasshorthand#1#2{%
1442   \bbl@ifshorthand{#2}%
1443   {\expandafter\ifx\csname active@char\string#2\endcsname\relax
1444     \ifx\document\@notprerr
1445       \@notshorthand{#2}%
1446     \else
1447       \initiate@active@char{#2}%
1448       \expandafter\let\csname active@char\string#2\expandafter\endcsname
1449       \csname active@char\string#1\endcsname
1450       \expandafter\let\csname normal@char\string#2\expandafter\endcsname
1451       \csname normal@char\string#1\endcsname
1452       \bbl@activate{#2}%
1453     \fi
1454   \fi}%
1455   {\bbl@error
1456     {Cannot declare a shorthand turned off (\string#2)}
1457     {Sorry, but you cannot use shorthands which have been\\%
1458       turned off in the package options}}}

```

`\@notshorthand`

```

1459 \def\@notshorthand#1{%
1460   \bbl@error{%
1461     The character '\string #1' should be made a shorthand character;\\%
1462     add the command \string\usesshorthands\string{#1\string} to
1463     the preamble.\\%
1464     I will ignore your instruction}%
1465   {You may proceed, but expect unexpected results}}

```

`\shorthandon` The first level definition of these macros just passes the argument on to `\bbl@switch@sh`, adding `\shorthandoff` `\@nil` at the end to denote the end of the list of characters.

```

1466 \newcommand*\shorthandon[1]{\bbl@switch@sh\@ne#1\@nnil}
1467 \DeclareRobustCommand*\shorthandoff{%
1468   \@ifstar{\bbl@shorthandoff\tw}{\bbl@shorthandoff\z@}}
1469 \def\bbl@shorthandoff#1#2{\bbl@switch@sh#1#2\@nnil}

```

`\bbl@switch@sh` The macro `\bbl@switch@sh` takes the list of characters apart one by one and subsequently switches the category code of the shorthand character according to the first argument of `\bbl@switch@sh`. But before any of this switching takes place we make sure that the character we are dealing with is known as a shorthand character. If it is, a macro such as `\active@char` should exist. Switching off and on is easy – we just set the category code to ‘other’ (12) and `\active`. With the starred version, the original catcode and the original definition, saved in `@initiate@active@char`, are restored.

```

1470 \def\bbl@switch@sh#1#2{%
1471   \ifx#2\@nnil\else
1472     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@active@\string#2}%
1473     {\bbl@error
1474       {I can't switch '\string#2' on or off--not a shorthand}%
1475       {This character is not a shorthand. Maybe you made\\%
1476         a typing mistake? I will ignore your instruction.}}}%
1477     {\ifcase#1%   off, on, off*
1478       \catcode`#212\relax
1479     \or
1480       \catcode`#2\active
1481       \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@shdef@\string#2}%
1482       {}%
1483       {\bbl@withactive{\expandafter\let\expandafter}#2%
1484         \csname bbl@shdef@\string#2\endcsname
1485         \bbl@csarg\let{\shdef@\string#2}\relax}%
1486       \ifcase\bbl@activated\or
1487         \bbl@activate{#2}%
1488       \else
1489         \bbl@deactivate{#2}%
1490       \fi
1491     \or
1492       \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@shdef@\string#2}%
1493       {\bbl@withactive{\bbl@csarg\let{\shdef@\string#2}}#2}%
1494       {}%
1495       \csname bbl@oricat@\string#2\endcsname
1496       \csname bbl@oridef@\string#2\endcsname
1497       \fi}%
1498   \bbl@afterfi\bbl@switch@sh#1%
1499 \fi}

```

Note the value is that at the expansion time; eg, in the preamble shorhands are usually deactivated.

```

1500 \def\babelshorthand{\active@prefix\babelshorthand\bbl@putsh}
1501 \def\bbl@putsh#1{%
1502   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@active@\string#1}%
1503   {\bbl@putsh@i#1\@empty\@nnil}%
1504   {\csname bbl@active@\string#1\endcsname}}
1505 \def\bbl@putsh@i#1#2\@nnil{%
1506   \csname\language@group @sh@\string#1@%
1507   \ifx\@empty#2\else\string#2@\fi\endcsname}
1508 \ifx\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil\else
1509   \let\bbl@s@initiate@active@char\initiate@active@char
1510   \def\initiate@active@char#1{%
1511     \bbl@ifshorthand{#1}{\bbl@s@initiate@active@char{#1}}{}}
1512   \let\bbl@s@switch@sh\bbl@switch@sh
1513   \def\bbl@switch@sh#1#2{%
1514     \ifx#2\@nnil\else
1515       \bbl@afterfi
1516       \bbl@ifshorthand{#2}{\bbl@s@switch@sh#1{#2}}{\bbl@switch@sh#1}%
1517     \fi}
1518   \let\bbl@s@activate\bbl@activate
1519   \def\bbl@activate#1{%
1520     \bbl@ifshorthand{#1}{\bbl@s@activate{#1}}{}}
1521   \let\bbl@s@deactivate\bbl@deactivate
1522   \def\bbl@deactivate#1{%
1523     \bbl@ifshorthand{#1}{\bbl@s@deactivate{#1}}{}}
1524 \fi

```

You may want to test if a character is a shorthand. Note it does not test whether the shorthand is on

or off.

```
1525 \newcommand\ifbabelshorthand[3]{\bbl@ifunset\bbl@active@string#1}{#3}{#2}}
```

`\bbl@prim@s` One of the internal macros that are involved in substituting `\prime` for each right quote in  
`\bbl@pr@m@s` mathmode is `\prim@s`. This checks if the next character is a right quote. When the right quote is active, the definition of this macro needs to be adapted to look also for an active right quote; the hat could be active, too.

```
1526 \def\bbl@prim@s{%
1527   \prime\futurelet\@let@token\bbl@pr@m@s}
1528 \def\bbl@if@primes#1#2{%
1529   \ifx#1\@let@token
1530     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
1531   \else\ifx#2\@let@token
1532     \bbl@afterelse\expandafter\@firstoftwo
1533   \else
1534     \bbl@afterfi\expandafter\@secondoftwo
1535   \fi\fi}
1536 \begingroup
1537   \catcode`\^=7 \catcode`\*=\active \lccode`\*=\^
1538   \catcode`\'=12 \catcode`\"=\active \lccode`\"=\'
1539   \lowercase{%
1540     \gdef\bbl@pr@m@s{%
1541       \bbl@if@primes"%
1542         \pr@@@s
1543       {\bbl@if@primes*\^{\pr@@@t\egroup}}}}
1544 \endgroup
```

Usually the `~` is active and expands to `\penalty\@M\.`. When it is written to the `.aux` file it is written expanded. To prevent that and to be able to use the character `~` as a start character for a shorthand, it is redefined here as a one character shorthand on system level. The system declaration is in most cases redundant (when `~` is still a non-break space), and in some cases is inconvenient (if `~` has been redefined); however, for backward compatibility it is maintained (some existing documents may rely on the babel value).

```
1545 \initiate@active@char{~}
1546 \declare@shorthand{system}{~}{\leavevmode\nobreak\ }
1547 \bbl@activate{~}
```

`\OT1dqpos` The position of the double quote character is different for the OT1 and T1 encodings. It will later be  
`\T1dqpos` selected using the `\f@encoding` macro. Therefore we define two macros here to store the position of the character in these encodings.

```
1548 \expandafter\def\csname OT1dqpos\endcsname{127}
1549 \expandafter\def\csname T1dqpos\endcsname{4}
```

When the macro `\f@encoding` is undefined (as it is in plain  $\TeX$ ) we define it here to expand to OT1

```
1550 \ifx\f@encoding\undefined
1551   \def\f@encoding{OT1}
1552 \fi
```

## 8.6 Language attributes

Language attributes provide a means to give the user control over which features of the language definition files he wants to enable.

`\languageattribute` The macro `\languageattribute` checks whether its arguments are valid and then activates the selected language attribute. First check whether the language is known, and then process each attribute in the list.

```
1553 \bbl@trace{Language attributes}
1554 \newcommand\languageattribute[2]{%
```

```

1555 \def\bbl@tempc{#1}%
1556 \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempc
1557 \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempc{%
1558   \bbl@vforeach{#2}{%

```

We want to make sure that each attribute is selected only once; therefore we store the already selected attributes in `\bbl@known@attrs`. When that control sequence is not yet defined this attribute is certainly not selected before.

```

1559   \ifx\bbl@known@attrs\undefined
1560     \in@false
1561   \else
1562     \bbl@xin@{,\bbl@tempc-##1,}{,\bbl@known@attrs,}%
1563   \fi
1564   \ifin@
1565     \bbl@warning{%
1566       You have more than once selected the attribute '##1'\%
1567       for language #1. Reported}%
1568   \else

```

When we end up here the attribute is not selected before. So, we add it to the list of selected attributes and execute the associated  $\TeX$ -code.

```

1569   \bbl@exp{%
1570     \\bbl@add@list\\bbl@known@attrs{\bbl@tempc-##1}}%
1571   \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempc-##1}%
1572   \expandafter\bbl@ifknown@ttrib\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}\bbl@attributes%
1573   {\csname\bbl@tempc @attr##1\endcsname}%
1574   {\@attrerr{\bbl@tempc}{##1}}%
1575   \fi}}
1576 \@onlypreamble\languageattribute

```

The error text to be issued when an unknown attribute is selected.

```

1577 \newcommand*{\@attrerr}[2]{%
1578   \bbl@error
1579   {The attribute #2 is unknown for language #1.}%
1580   {Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}}

```

`\bbl@declare@ttribute` This command adds the new language/attribute combination to the list of known attributes. Then it defines a control sequence to be executed when the attribute is used in a document. The result of this should be that the macro `\extras...` for the current language is extended, otherwise the attribute will not work as its code is removed from memory at `\begin{document}`.

```

1581 \def\bbl@declare@ttribute#1#2#3{%
1582   \bbl@xin@{,#2,}{,\BabelModifiers,}%
1583   \ifin@
1584     \AfterBabelLanguage{#1}{\languageattribute{#1}{#2}}%
1585   \fi
1586   \bbl@add@list\bbl@attributes{#1-#2}%
1587   \expandafter\def\csname#1@attr#2\endcsname{#3}}

```

`\bbl@ifattributeset` This internal macro has 4 arguments. It can be used to interpret  $\TeX$  code based on whether a certain attribute was set. This command should appear inside the argument to `\AtBeginDocument` because the attributes are set in the document preamble, *after* babel is loaded. The first argument is the language, the second argument the attribute being checked, and the third and fourth arguments are the true and false clauses.

```

1588 \def\bbl@ifattributeset#1#2#3#4{%
1589   \ifx\bbl@known@attrs\undefined
1590     \in@false
1591   \else
1592     \bbl@xin@{,#1-#2,}{,\bbl@known@attrs,}%
1593   \fi

```

```

1594 \ifin@
1595 \bbl@afterelse#3%
1596 \else
1597 \bbl@afterfi#4%
1598 \fi}

```

`\bbl@ifknown@ttrib` An internal macro to check whether a given language/attribute is known. The macro takes 4 arguments, the language/attribute, the attribute list, the  $\TeX$ -code to be executed when the attribute is known and the  $\TeX$ -code to be executed otherwise. We first assume the attribute is unknown. Then we loop over the list of known attributes, trying to find a match.

```

1599 \def\bbl@ifknown@ttrib#1#2{%
1600 \let\bbl@tempa\@secondoftwo
1601 \bbl@loopx\bbl@tempb{#2}{%
1602 \expandafter\in\expandafter{\expandafter,\bbl@tempb,}{, #1,}%
1603 \ifin@
1604 \let\bbl@tempa\@firstoftwo
1605 \else
1606 \fi}%
1607 \bbl@tempa}

```

`\bbl@clear@ttribs` This macro removes all the attribute code from  $\TeX$ 's memory at `\begin{document}` time (if any is present).

```

1608 \def\bbl@clear@ttribs{%
1609 \ifx\bbl@attributes\@undefined\else
1610 \bbl@loopx\bbl@tempa{\bbl@attributes}{%
1611 \expandafter\bbl@clear@ttrib\bbl@tempa.
1612 }%
1613 \let\bbl@attributes\@undefined
1614 \fi}
1615 \def\bbl@clear@ttrib#1-#2.{%
1616 \expandafter\let\csname#1@attr@#2\endcsname\@undefined}
1617 \AtBeginDocument{\bbl@clear@ttribs}

```

## 8.7 Support for saving macro definitions

To save the meaning of control sequences using `\babel@save`, we use temporary control sequences. To save hash table entries for these control sequences, we don't use the name of the control sequence to be saved to construct the temporary name. Instead we simply use the value of a counter, which is reset to zero each time we begin to save new values. This works well because we release the saved meanings before we begin to save a new set of control sequence meanings (see `\selectlanguage` and `\originalTeX`). Note undefined macros are not undefined any more when saved – they are `\relax`'ed.

`\babel@savecnt` The initialization of a new save cycle: reset the counter to zero.  
`\babel@beginsave`

```

1618 \bbl@trace{Macros for saving definitions}
1619 \def\babel@beginsave{\babel@savecnt\z@}

```

Before it's forgotten, allocate the counter and initialize all.

```

1620 \newcount\babel@savecnt
1621 \babel@beginsave

```

`\babel@save` The macro `\babel@save{<csname>}` saves the current meaning of the control sequence `<csname>` to `\originalTeX`<sup>31</sup>. To do this, we let the current meaning to a temporary control sequence, the restore commands are appended to `\originalTeX` and the counter is incremented. The macro `\babel@savevariable{<variable>}` saves the value of the variable. `<variable>` can be anything allowed after the `\the` primitive.

<sup>31</sup>`\originalTeX` has to be expandable, i. e. you shouldn't let it to `\relax`.



```

1622 \def\babel@save#1{%
1623   \expandafter\let\csname babel@number\babel@savecnt\endcsname#1\relax
1624   \toks@\expandafter{\originalTeX\let#1=}%
1625   \bbl@exp{%
1626     \def\\originalTeX{\the\toks@<\babel@number\babel@savecnt>\relax}}%
1627   \advance\babel@savecnt\@ne}
1628 \def\babel@savevariable#1{%
1629   \toks@\expandafter{\originalTeX #1=}%
1630   \bbl@exp{\def\\originalTeX{\the\toks@the#1\relax}}}

```

`\bbl@frenchspacing` Some languages need to have `\frenchspacing` in effect. Others don't want that. The command `\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` switches it on when it isn't already in effect and `\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` switches it off if necessary. A more refined way to switch the catcodes is done with ini files. Here an auxiliary macro is defined, but the main part is in `\babelprovide`. This new method should be ideally the default one.

```

1631 \def\bbl@frenchspacing{%
1632   \ifnum\the\sfcode`\.=\@m
1633     \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\relax
1634   \else
1635     \frenchspacing
1636     \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\nonfrenchspacing
1637   \fi}
1638 \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\nonfrenchspacing
1639 \let\bbl@elt\relax
1640 \edef\bbl@fs@chars{%
1641   \bbl@elt{\string.}\@m{3000}\bbl@elt{\string?}\@m{3000}%
1642   \bbl@elt{\string!}\@m{3000}\bbl@elt{\string:}\@m{2000}%
1643   \bbl@elt{\string;} \@m{1500}\bbl@elt{\string,}\@m{1250}}
1644 \def\bbl@pre@fs{%
1645   \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3{\sfcode`##1=\the\sfcode`##1\relax}%
1646   \edef\bbl@save@sfcodes{\bbl@fs@chars}}%
1647 \def\bbl@post@fs{%
1648   \bbl@save@sfcodes
1649   \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@cl{frspc}}%
1650   \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@car\bbl@tempa\@nil}%
1651   \if u\bbl@tempa      % do nothing
1652   \else\if n\bbl@tempa % non french
1653     \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3{%
1654       \ifnum\sfcode`##1=##2\relax
1655         \babel@savevariable{\sfcode`##1}%
1656         \sfcode`##1=##3\relax
1657       \fi}%
1658     \bbl@fs@chars
1659   \else\if y\bbl@tempa % french
1660     \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3{%
1661       \ifnum\sfcode`##1=##3\relax
1662         \babel@savevariable{\sfcode`##1}%
1663         \sfcode`##1=##2\relax
1664       \fi}%
1665     \bbl@fs@chars
1666   \fi\fi\fi}

```

## 8.8 Short tags

`\babeltags` This macro is straightforward. After zapping spaces, we loop over the list and define the macros `\text{<tag>}` and `\<tag>`. Definitions are first expanded so that they don't contain `\csname` but the actual macro.

```

1667 \bbl@trace{Short tags}

```

```

1668 \def\babeltags#1{%
1669   \edef\bbl@tempa{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
1670   \def\bbl@tempb##1=##2\@@{%
1671     \edef\bbl@tempc{%
1672       \noexpand\newcommand
1673       \expandafter\noexpand\csname ##1\endcsname{%
1674         \noexpand\protect
1675         \expandafter\noexpand\csname otherlanguage*\endcsname{##2}}
1676       \noexpand\newcommand
1677       \expandafter\noexpand\csname text##1\endcsname{%
1678         \noexpand\foreignlanguage{##2}}
1679     \bbl@tempc}%
1680   \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempa{%
1681     \expandafter\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa\@@}}

```

## 8.9 Hyphens

`\babelhyphenation` This macro saves hyphenation exceptions. Two macros are used to store them: `\bbl@hyphenation@` for the global ones and `\bbl@hyphenation<lang>` for language ones. See `\bbl@patterns` above for further details. We make sure there is a space between words when multiple commands are used.

```

1682 \bbl@trace{Hyphens}
1683 \@onlypreamble\babelhyphenation
1684 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1685   \newcommand\babelhyphenation[2][\@empty]{%
1686     \ifx\bbl@hyphenation@relax
1687       \let\bbl@hyphenation@\@empty
1688     \fi
1689     \ifx\bbl@hyphlist\@empty\else
1690       \bbl@warning{%
1691         You must not intermingle \string\selectlanguage\space and\\%
1692         \string\babelhyphenation\space or some exceptions will not\\%
1693         be taken into account. Reported}%
1694       \fi
1695       \ifx\@empty#1%
1696         \protected@edef\bbl@hyphenation@{\bbl@hyphenation@\space#2}%
1697       \else
1698         \bbl@vforeach{#1}{%
1699           \def\bbl@tempa{##1}%
1700           \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempa
1701           \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempa{%
1702             \bbl@csarg\protected@edef{hyphenation@\bbl@tempa}{%
1703               \bbl@ifunset{bbl@hyphenation@\bbl@tempa}%
1704               {}%
1705               {\csname bbl@hyphenation@\bbl@tempa\endcsname\space}%
1706               #2}}}%
1707         \fi}}

```

`\bbl@allowhyphens` This macro makes hyphenation possible. Basically its definition is nothing more than `\nobreak \hskip 0pt plus 0pt`<sup>32</sup>.

```

1708 \def\bbl@allowhyphens{\ifvmode\else\nobreak\hskip\z@skip\fi}
1709 \def\bbl@t@one{T1}
1710 \def\allowhyphens{\ifx\cf@encoding\bbl@t@one\else\bbl@allowhyphens\fi}

```

`\babelhyphen` Macros to insert common hyphens. Note the space before `@` in `\babelhyphen`. Instead of protecting it with `\DeclareRobustCommand`, which could insert a `\relax`, we use the same procedure as shorthands, with `\active@prefix`.

<sup>32</sup> $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$  begins and ends a word for hyphenation at a glue node. The penalty prevents a linebreak at this glue node.

```

1711 \newcommand\babelnullhyphen{\char\hyphenchar\font}
1712 \def\babelhyphen{\active@prefix\babelhyphen\babelhyphen}
1713 \def\bbl@hyphen{%
1714   \@ifstar{\bbl@hyphen@i @}{\bbl@hyphen@i \@empty}}
1715 \def\bbl@hyphen@i#1#2{%
1716   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@hy@#1#2\@empty}%
1717   {\csname bbl@#1usehyphen\endcsname{\discretionary{#2}{}{#2}}}%
1718   {\csname bbl@hy@#1#2\@empty\endcsname}}

```

The following two commands are used to wrap the “hyphen” and set the behavior of the rest of the word – the version with a single @ is used when further hyphenation is allowed, while that with @@ if no more hyphens are allowed. In both cases, if the hyphen is preceded by a positive space, breaking after the hyphen is disallowed.

There should not be a discretionary after a hyphen at the beginning of a word, so it is prevented if preceded by a skip. Unfortunately, this does handle cases like “(-suffix)”. \nobreak is always preceded by \leavevmode, in case the shorthand starts a paragraph.

```

1719 \def\bbl@usehyphen#1{%
1720   \leavevmode
1721   \ifdim\lastskip>\z@\mbox{#1}\else\nobreak#1\fi
1722   \nobreak\hskip\z@skip}
1723 \def\bbl@@usehyphen#1{%
1724   \leavevmode\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\mbox{#1}\else#1\fi}

```

The following macro inserts the hyphen char.

```

1725 \def\bbl@hyphenchar{%
1726   \ifnum\hyphenchar\font=\m@ne
1727     \babelnullhyphen
1728   \else
1729     \char\hyphenchar\font
1730   \fi}

```

Finally, we define the hyphen “types”. Their names will not change, so you may use them in ldf’s. After a space, the \mbox in \bbl@hy@nobreak is redundant.

```

1731 \def\bbl@hy@soft{\bbl@usehyphen{\discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{}}{}}
1732 \def\bbl@hy@@soft{\bbl@usehyphen{\discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{}}{}}
1733 \def\bbl@hy@hard{\bbl@usehyphen\bbl@hyphenchar}
1734 \def\bbl@hy@@hard{\bbl@usehyphen\bbl@hyphenchar}
1735 \def\bbl@hy@nobreak{\bbl@usehyphen{\mbox{\bbl@hyphenchar}}}
1736 \def\bbl@hy@@nobreak{\mbox{\bbl@hyphenchar}}
1737 \def\bbl@hy@repeat{%
1738   \bbl@usehyphen{%
1739     \discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}}}
1740 \def\bbl@hy@@repeat{%
1741   \bbl@usehyphen{%
1742     \discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}}}
1743 \def\bbl@hy@empty{\hskip\z@skip}
1744 \def\bbl@hy@@empty{\discretionary{}{}{}}

```

**\bbl@disc** For some languages the macro \bbl@disc is used to ease the insertion of discretionaries for letters that behave ‘abnormally’ at a breakpoint.

```

1745 \def\bbl@disc#1#2{\nobreak\discretionary{#2-}{#1}\bbl@allowhyphens}

```

## 8.10 Multiencoding strings

The aim following commands is to provide a common interface for strings in several encodings. They also contains several hooks which can be used by luatex and xetex. The code is organized here with pseudo-guards, so we start with the basic commands.

**Tools** But first, a couple of tools. The first one makes global a local variable. This is not the best solution, but it works.

```

1746 \bbl@trace{Multiencoding strings}
1747 \def\bbl@tglobal#1{\global\let#1#1}
1748 \def\bbl@recatcode#1{% TODO. Used only once?
1749   \@tempcnta="7F
1750   \def\bbl@tempa{%
1751     \ifnum\@tempcnta>"FF\else
1752       \catcode\@tempcnta=#1\relax
1753       \advance\@tempcnta\@ne
1754       \expandafter\bbl@tempa
1755     \fi}%
1756   \bbl@tempa}

```

The second one. We need to patch `\@uclclist`, but it is done once and only if `\SetCase` is used or if strings are encoded. The code is far from satisfactory for several reasons, including the fact `\@uclclist` is not a list any more. Therefore a package option is added to ignore it. Instead of gobbling the macro getting the next two elements (usually `\reserved@a`), we pass it as argument to `\bbl@uclc`. The parser is restarted inside `\langle lang\rangle\bbl@uclc` because we do not know how many expansions are necessary (depends on whether strings are encoded). The last part is tricky – when uppercasing, we have:

```
\let\bbl@tolower\@empty\bbl@toupper\@empty
```

and starts over (and similarly when lowercasing).

```

1757 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{nocase}%
1758   {\let\bbl@patchuclc\relax}%
1759   {\def\bbl@patchuclc{%
1760     \global\let\bbl@patchuclc\relax
1761     \g@addto@macro\@uclclist{\reserved@b{\reserved@b\bbl@uclc}}%
1762     \gdef\bbl@uclc##1{%
1763       \let\bbl@encoded\bbl@encoded@uclc
1764       \bbl@ifunset{\language @bbl@uclc}% and resumes it
1765       {##1}%
1766       {\let\bbl@tempa##1\relax % Used by LANG@bbl@uclc
1767        \csname\language @bbl@uclc\endcsname}%
1768       {\bbl@tolower\@empty}{\bbl@toupper\@empty}}%
1769     \gdef\bbl@tolower{\csname\language @bbl@lc\endcsname}%
1770     \gdef\bbl@toupper{\csname\language @bbl@uc\endcsname}}%
1771 \langle *More package options\rangle \equiv
1772 \DeclareOption{nocase}{}
1773 \rangle /More package options\rangle

```

The following package options control the behavior of `\SetString`.

```

1774 \langle *More package options\rangle \equiv
1775 \let\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil % accept strings=value
1776 \DeclareOption{strings}{\def\bbl@opt@strings{\BabelStringsDefault}}
1777 \DeclareOption{strings=encoded}{\let\bbl@opt@strings\relax}
1778 \def\BabelStringsDefault{generic}
1779 \rangle /More package options\rangle

```

**Main command** This is the main command. With the first use it is redefined to omit the basic setup in subsequent blocks. We make sure strings contain actual letters in the range 128-255, not active characters.

```

1780 \@onlypreamble\StartBabelCommands
1781 \def\StartBabelCommands{%
1782   \begingroup

```

```

1783 \bbl@recatcode{11}%
1784 <<Macros local to BabelCommands>>
1785 \def\bbl@provstring##1##2{%
1786   \providecommand##1{##2}%
1787   \bbl@tglobal##1}%
1788 \global\let\bbl@scafter\@empty
1789 \let\StartBabelCommands\bbl@startcmds
1790 \ifx\BabelLanguages\relax
1791   \let\BabelLanguages\CurrentOption
1792 \fi
1793 \begingroup
1794 \let\bbl@screset\@nnil % local flag - disable 1st stopcommands
1795 \StartBabelCommands}
1796 \def\bbl@startcmds{%
1797   \ifx\bbl@screset\@nnil\else
1798     \bbl@usehooks{stopcommands}{}%
1799   \fi
1800 \endgroup
1801 \begingroup
1802 \@ifstar
1803   {\ifx\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil
1804     \let\bbl@opt@strings\BabelStringsDefault
1805   \fi
1806   \bbl@startcmds@i}%
1807   \bbl@startcmds@i}
1808 \def\bbl@startcmds@i#1#2{%
1809   \edef\bbl@L{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
1810   \edef\bbl@G{\zap@space#2 \@empty}%
1811   \bbl@startcmds@ii}
1812 \let\bbl@startcmds\StartBabelCommands

```

Parse the encoding info to get the label, input, and font parts.

Select the behavior of \SetString. There are two main cases, depending on if there is an optional argument: without it and strings=encoded, strings are defined always; otherwise, they are set only if they are still undefined (ie, fallback values). With labelled blocks and strings=encoded, define the strings, but with another value, define strings only if the current label or font encoding is the value of strings; otherwise (ie, no strings or a block whose label is not in strings=) do nothing.

We presume the current block is not loaded, and therefore set (above) a couple of default values to gobble the arguments. Then, these macros are redefined if necessary according to several parameters.

```

1813 \newcommand\bbl@startcmds@ii[1][\@empty]{%
1814   \let\SetString\@gobbletwo
1815   \let\bbl@stringdef\@gobbletwo
1816   \let\AfterBabelCommands\@gobble
1817   \ifx\@empty#1%
1818     \def\bbl@sc@label{generic}%
1819     \def\bbl@encstring##1##2{%
1820       \ProvideTextCommandDefault##1{##2}%
1821       \bbl@tglobal##1%
1822       \expandafter\bbl@tglobal\csname\string?\string##1\endcsname}%
1823     \let\bbl@sc@test\in@true
1824   \else
1825     \let\bbl@sc@charset\space % <- zapped below
1826     \let\bbl@sc@fontenc\space % <- " "
1827     \def\bbl@tempa##1=##2\@nil{%
1828       \bbl@csarg\edef{sc\zap@space##1 \@empty}{##2 }}%
1829     \bbl@vforeach{label=#1}{\bbl@tempa##1\@nil}%
1830     \def\bbl@tempa##1 ##2{% space -> comma
1831       ##1%

```

```

1832 \ifx\@empty##2\else\ifx,##1,\else,\fi\bbl@afterfi\bbl@tempa##2\fi}%
1833 \edef\bbl@sc@fontenc{\expandafter\bbl@tempa\bbl@sc@fontenc\@empty}%
1834 \edef\bbl@sc@label{\expandafter\zap@space\bbl@sc@label\@empty}%
1835 \edef\bbl@sc@charset{\expandafter\zap@space\bbl@sc@charset\@empty}%
1836 \def\bbl@encstring##1##2{%
1837 \bbl@foreach\bbl@sc@fontenc{%
1838 \bbl@ifunset{T####1}%
1839 {}%
1840 {\ProvideTextCommand##1{####1}{##2}%
1841 \bbl@tglobal##1%
1842 \expandafter
1843 \bbl@tglobal\csname####1\string##1\endcsname}}}%
1844 \def\bbl@sctest{%
1845 \bbl@xin@{\, \bbl@opt@strings,}{, \bbl@sc@label, \bbl@sc@fontenc,}}%
1846 \fi
1847 \ifx\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil % ie, no strings key -> defaults
1848 \else\ifx\bbl@opt@strings\relax % ie, strings=encoded
1849 \let\AfterBabelCommands\bbl@aftercmds
1850 \let\SetString\bbl@setstring
1851 \let\bbl@stringdef\bbl@encstring
1852 \else % ie, strings=value
1853 \bbl@sctest
1854 \fin@
1855 \let\AfterBabelCommands\bbl@aftercmds
1856 \let\SetString\bbl@setstring
1857 \let\bbl@stringdef\bbl@provstring
1858 \fi\fi\fi
1859 \bbl@scswitch
1860 \ifx\bbl@G\@empty
1861 \def\SetString##1##2{%
1862 \bbl@error{Missing group for string \string##1}%
1863 {You must assign strings to some category, typically\\%
1864 captions or extras, but you set none}}%
1865 \fi
1866 \ifx\@empty#1%
1867 \bbl@usehooks{defaultcommands}}}%
1868 \else
1869 \@expandtwoargs
1870 \bbl@usehooks{encodedcommands}{\bbl@sc@charset}{\bbl@sc@fontenc}}%
1871 \fi}

```

There are two versions of \bbl@scswitch. The first version is used when ldfs are read, and it makes sure \<group>\<language> is reset, but only once (\bbl@screset is used to keep track of this). The second version is used in the preamble and packages loaded after babel and does nothing. The macro \bbl@forlang loops \bbl@L but its body is executed only if the value is in \BabelLanguages (inside babel) or \date\<language> is defined (after babel has been loaded). There are also two version of \bbl@forlang. The first one skips the current iteration if the language is not in \BabelLanguages (used in ldfs), and the second one skips undefined languages (after babel has been loaded).

```

1872 \def\bbl@forlang#1#2{%
1873 \bbl@for#1\bbl@L{%
1874 \bbl@xin@{, #1,}{, \BabelLanguages,}%
1875 \ifin@#2\relax\fi}}
1876 \def\bbl@scswitch{%
1877 \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1878 \ifx\bbl@G\@empty\else
1879 \ifx\SetString\@gobbletwo\else
1880 \edef\bbl@GL{\bbl@G\bbl@tempa}%
1881 \bbl@xin@{\, \bbl@GL,}{, \bbl@screset,}%

```

```

1882      \ifin@ \else
1883      \global\expandafter\let\csname\bbl@GL\endcsname\@undefined
1884      \xdef\bbl@screset{\bbl@screset,\bbl@GL}%
1885      \fi
1886    \fi
1887  \fi}}
1888 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1889   \def\bbl@forlang#1#2{\bbl@for#1\bbl@L{\bbl@ifunset{date#1}{#2}}}%
1890   \let\bbl@scswitch\relax}
1891 \@onlypreamble\EndBabelCommands
1892 \def\EndBabelCommands{%
1893   \bbl@usehooks{stopcommands}{}%
1894   \endgroup
1895   \endgroup
1896   \bbl@scafter}
1897 \let\bbl@endcommands\EndBabelCommands

```

Now we define commands to be used inside \StartBabelCommands.

**Strings** The following macro is the actual definition of \SetString when it is “active” First save the “switcher”. Create it if undefined. Strings are defined only if undefined (ie, like \providescommand). With the event stringprocess you can preprocess the string by manipulating the value of \BabelString. If there are several hooks assigned to this event, preprocessing is done in the same order as defined. Finally, the string is set.

```

1898 \def\bbl@setstring#1#2{% eg, \prefacename{<string>}
1899   \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1900     \edef\bbl@LC{\bbl@tempa\bbl@stripslash#1}%
1901     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@LC}% eg, \germanchaptername
1902     {\bbl@exp{%
1903       \global\bbbl@add\<\bbl@G\bbl@tempa>\bbbl@scset\#1\<\bbl@LC>}}}%
1904     }%
1905   \def\BabelString{#2}%
1906   \bbl@usehooks{stringprocess}{}%
1907   \expandafter\bbl@stringdef
1908   \csname\bbl@LC\expandafter\endcsname\expandafter{\BabelString}}

```

Now, some additional stuff to be used when encoded strings are used. Captions then include \bbl@encoded for string to be expanded in case transformations. It is \relax by default, but in \MakeUppercase and \MakeLowercase its value is a modified expandable \@changed@cmd.

```

1909 \ifx\bbl@opt@strings\relax
1910   \def\bbl@scset#1#2{\def#1{\bbl@encoded#2}}
1911   \bbl@patchuclc
1912   \let\bbl@encoded\relax
1913   \def\bbl@encoded@uclc#1{%
1914     \@inmathwarn#1%
1915     \expandafter\ifx\csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname\relax
1916       \expandafter\ifx\csname ?\string#1\endcsname\relax
1917         \TextSymbolUnavailable#1%
1918       \else
1919         \csname ?\string#1\endcsname
1920       \fi
1921     \else
1922       \csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname
1923     \fi}
1924 \else
1925   \def\bbl@scset#1#2{\def#1{#2}}
1926 \fi

```

Define `\SetStringLoop`, which is actually set inside `\StartBabelCommands`. The current definition is somewhat complicated because we need a count, but `\count@` is not under our control (remember `\SetString` may call hooks). Instead of defining a dedicated count, we just “pre-expand” its value.

```
1927 <<*Macros local to BabelCommands>> ≡
1928 \def\SetStringLoop##1##2{%
1929   \def\bbl@templ####1{\expandafter\noexpand\csname##1\endcsname}%
1930   \count@\z@
1931   \bbl@loop\bbl@tempa{##2}{% empty items and spaces are ok
1932     \advance\count@\@ne
1933     \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}%
1934     \bbl@exp{%
1935       \\SetString\bbl@templ{\romannumeral\count@}{\the\toks@}%
1936       \count@=\the\count@\relax}}}%
1937 <</Macros local to BabelCommands>>
```

**Delaying code** Now the definition of `\AfterBabelCommands` when it is activated.

```
1938 \def\bbl@aftercmds#1{%
1939   \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@scafter#1}%
1940   \xdef\bbl@scafter{\the\toks@}}
```

**Case mapping** The command `\SetCase` provides a way to change the behavior of `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase`. `\bbl@tempa` is set by the patched `\@uclclist` to the parsing command.

```
1941 <<*Macros local to BabelCommands>> ≡
1942 \newcommand\SetCase[3][]{%
1943   \bbl@patchuclc
1944   \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1945     \expandafter\bbl@encstring
1946     \csname\bbl@tempa @bbl@uclc\endcsname{\bbl@tempa##1}%
1947     \expandafter\bbl@encstring
1948     \csname\bbl@tempa @bbl@uc\endcsname{##2}%
1949     \expandafter\bbl@encstring
1950     \csname\bbl@tempa @bbl@lc\endcsname{##3}}}%
1951 <</Macros local to BabelCommands>>
```

Macros to deal with case mapping for hyphenation. To decide if the document is monolingual or multilingual, we make a rough guess – just see if there is a comma in the languages list, built in the first pass of the package options.

```
1952 <<*Macros local to BabelCommands>> ≡
1953 \newcommand\SetHyphenMap[1]{%
1954   \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1955     \expandafter\bbl@stringdef
1956     \csname\bbl@tempa @bbl@hyphenmap\endcsname{##1}}}%
1957 <</Macros local to BabelCommands>>
```

There are 3 helper macros which do most of the work for you.

```
1958 \newcommand\BabelLower[2]{% one to one.
1959   \ifnum\lccode#1=#2\else
1960     \babel@savevariable{\lccode#1}%
1961     \lccode#1=#2\relax
1962   \fi}
1963 \newcommand\BabelLowerMM[4]{% many-to-many
1964   \@tempcnta=#1\relax
1965   \@tempcntb=#4\relax
1966   \def\bbl@tempa{%
1967     \ifnum\@tempcnta>#2\else
1968       \@expandtwoargs\BabelLower{\the\@tempcnta}{\the\@tempcntb}%
1969     \fi}
```



```

1969 \advance\@tempcnta#3\relax
1970 \advance\@tempcntb#3\relax
1971 \expandafter\bb1@tempa
1972 \fi}%
1973 \bb1@tempa}
1974 \newcommand\BabelLowerM0[4]{% many-to-one
1975 \@tempcnta=#1\relax
1976 \def\bb1@tempa{%
1977 \ifnum\@tempcnta>#2\else
1978 \@expandtwoargs\BabelLower{\the\@tempcnta}{#4}%
1979 \advance\@tempcnta#3
1980 \expandafter\bb1@tempa
1981 \fi}%
1982 \bb1@tempa}

```

The following package options control the behavior of hyphenation mapping.

```

1983 <<(*More package options)>> ≡
1984 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=off}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\z@}
1985 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=first}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\@ne}
1986 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=select}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\tw@}
1987 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=other}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\thr@@}
1988 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=other*}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap4\relax}
1989 <</More package options>>

```

Initial setup to provide a default behavior if hyphenmap is not set.

```

1990 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1991 \ifx\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\undefined
1992 \bb1@xin@{,}{\bb1@language@opts}%
1993 \chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\ifin4\else\@ne\fi
1994 \fi}

```

This section ends with a general tool for resetting the caption names with a unique interface. With the old way, which mixes the switcher and the string, we convert it to the new one, which separates these two steps.

```

1995 \newcommand\setlocalecaption{% TODO. Catch typos. What about ensure?
1996 \@ifstar\bb1@setcaption@s\bb1@setcaption@x}
1997 \def\bb1@setcaption@x#1#2#3{% language caption-name string
1998 \bb1@trim@def\bb1@tempa{#2}%
1999 \bb1@xin@{.template}{\bb1@tempa}%
2000 \ifin@
2001 \bb1@ini@captions@template{#3}{#1}%
2002 \else
2003 \edef\bb1@tempd{%
2004 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter
2005 \strip@prefix\expandafter\meaning\csname captions#1\endcsname}%
2006 \bb1@xin@
2007 {\expandafter\string\csname #2name\endcsname}%
2008 {\bb1@tempd}%
2009 \ifin@ % Renew caption
2010 \bb1@xin@{\string\bb1@scset}{\bb1@tempd}%
2011 \ifin@
2012 \bb1@exp{%
2013 \\\bb1@ifsamestring{\bb1@tempa}{\language\name}%
2014 {\\\bb1@scset\<#2name>\<#1#2name>}%
2015 {}}%
2016 \else % Old way converts to new way
2017 \bb1@ifunset{#1#2name}%
2018 {\bb1@exp{%
2019 \\\bb1@add\<captions#1>\def\<#2name>\<#1#2name>}}%

```

```

2020          \\bbl@ifsamestring{\bbl@tempa}{\language}%
2021          {\def\<#2name>{\<#1#2name>}}}%
2022          {}}}}%
2023      {}%
2024      \fi
2025  \else
2026      \bbl@xin@{\string\bbl@scset}{\bbl@tempd}% New
2027      \ifin@ % New way
2028      \bbl@exp{%
2029          \\bbl@add\<captions#1>{\bbl@scset\<#2name>\<#1#2name>}}%
2030          \\bbl@ifsamestring{\bbl@tempa}{\language}%
2031          {\bbl@scset\<#2name>\<#1#2name>}}}%
2032          {}}}}%
2033      \else % Old way, but defined in the new way
2034      \bbl@exp{%
2035          \\bbl@add\<captions#1>{\def\<#2name>{\<#1#2name>}}}%
2036          \\bbl@ifsamestring{\bbl@tempa}{\language}%
2037          {\def\<#2name>{\<#1#2name>}}}%
2038          {}}}}%
2039      \fi%
2040      \fi
2041      \@namedef{#1#2name}{#3}%
2042      \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@captionslist}%
2043      \bbl@exp{\in@{\<#2name>}{\the\toks@}}%
2044      \ifin@\else
2045      \bbl@exp{\bbl@add\bbl@captionslist{\<#2name>}}%
2046      \bbl@toggle\bbl@captionslist
2047      \fi
2048      \fi}
2049 % \def\bbl@setcaption@s#1#2#3{} % TODO. Not yet implemented

```

## 8.11 Macros common to a number of languages

`\set@low@box` The following macro is used to lower quotes to the same level as the comma. It prepares its argument in box register 0.

```

2050 \bbl@trace{Macros related to glyphs}
2051 \def\set@low@box#1{\setbox\tw\hbox{,}\setbox\z\hbox{#1}%
2052     \dimen\z\ht\z@ \advance\dimen\z@ -\ht\tw@%
2053     \setbox\z\hbox{\lower\dimen\z@ \box\z}\ht\z\ht\tw@ \dp\z\dp\tw@}

```

`\save@sf@q` The macro `\save@sf@q` is used to save and reset the current space factor.

```

2054 \def\save@sf@q#1{\leavevmode
2055     \begingroup
2056     \edef\@SF{\spacefactor\the\spacefactor}#1\@SF
2057     \endgroup}

```

## 8.12 Making glyphs available

This section makes a number of glyphs available that either do not exist in the OT1 encoding and have to be ‘faked’, or that are not accessible through `T1enc.def`.

### 8.12.1 Quotation marks

`\quotedblbase` In the T1 encoding the opening double quote at the baseline is available as a separate character, accessible via `\quotedblbase`. In the OT1 encoding it is not available, therefore we make it available by lowering the normal open quote character to the baseline.

```

2058 \ProvideTextCommand{\quotedblbase}{OT1}{%
2059     \save@sf@q{\set@low@box{\textquotedblright\}}%

```

```
2060 \box\z@\kern-.04em\bb1@allowhyphens}}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used this glyph can still be typeset.

```
2061 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\quotedblbase}{%
2062 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\quotedblbase}}
```

`\quotesinglbase` We also need the single quote character at the baseline.

```
2063 \ProvideTextCommand{\quotesinglbase}{OT1}{%
2064 \save@sf@q{\set@low@box{\textquoteright\}%
2065 \box\z@\kern-.04em\bb1@allowhyphens}}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used this glyph can still be typeset.

```
2066 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\quotesinglbase}{%
2067 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\quotesinglbase}}
```

`\guillemetleft` The guillemet characters are not available in OT1 encoding. They are faked. (Wrong names with o  
`\guillemetright` preserved for compatibility.)

```
2068 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemetleft}{OT1}{%
2069 \ifmmode
2070 \ll
2071 \else
2072 \save@sf@q{\nobreak
2073 \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle\ll$}\bb1@allowhyphens}%
2074 \fi}
2075 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemetright}{OT1}{%
2076 \ifmmode
2077 \gg
2078 \else
2079 \save@sf@q{\nobreak
2080 \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle\gg$}\bb1@allowhyphens}%
2081 \fi}
2082 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemotleft}{OT1}{%
2083 \ifmmode
2084 \ll
2085 \else
2086 \save@sf@q{\nobreak
2087 \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle\ll$}\bb1@allowhyphens}%
2088 \fi}
2089 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemotright}{OT1}{%
2090 \ifmmode
2091 \gg
2092 \else
2093 \save@sf@q{\nobreak
2094 \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle\gg$}\bb1@allowhyphens}%
2095 \fi}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```
2096 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemetleft}{%
2097 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemetleft}}
2098 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemetright}{%
2099 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemetright}}
2100 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemotleft}{%
2101 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemotleft}}
2102 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemotright}{%
2103 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemotright}}
```

`\guilsinglleft` The single guillemets are not available in OT1 encoding. They are faked.  
`\guilsinglright`

```
2104 \ProvideTextCommand{\guilsinglleft}{OT1}{%
2105 \ifmmode
```

```

2106 <%
2107 \else
2108 \save@sf@q{\nobreak
2109 \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle<$\bbl@allowhyphens}%
2110 \fi}
2111 \ProvideTextCommand{\guilsinglright}{OT1}{%
2112 \ifmmode
2113 >%
2114 \else
2115 \save@sf@q{\nobreak
2116 \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle>$\bbl@allowhyphens}%
2117 \fi}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

2118 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guilsinglleft}{%
2119 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guilsinglleft}}
2120 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guilsinglright}{%
2121 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guilsinglright}}

```

### 8.12.2 Letters

`\ij` The dutch language uses the letter ‘ij’. It is available in T1 encoded fonts, but not in the OT1 encoded  
`\IJ` fonts. Therefore we fake it for the OT1 encoding.

```

2122 \DeclareTextCommand{\ij}{OT1}{%
2123 i\kern-0.02em\bbl@allowhyphens j}
2124 \DeclareTextCommand{\IJ}{OT1}{%
2125 I\kern-0.02em\bbl@allowhyphens J}
2126 \DeclareTextCommand{\ij}{T1}{\char188}
2127 \DeclareTextCommand{\IJ}{T1}{\char156}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

2128 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\ij}{%
2129 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\ij}}
2130 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\IJ}{%
2131 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\IJ}}

```

`\dj` The croatian language needs the letters `\dj` and `\DJ`; they are available in the T1 encoding, but not in  
`\DJ` the OT1 encoding by default.

Some code to construct these glyphs for the OT1 encoding was made available to me by Stipčević Mario, (stipcevic@olimp.irb.hr).

```

2132 \def\crrtic@{\hrule height0.1ex width0.3em}
2133 \def\crttic@{\hrule height0.1ex width0.33em}
2134 \def\ddj@{%
2135 \setbox0\hbox{d}\dimen@=\ht0
2136 \advance\dimen@1ex
2137 \dimen@.45\dimen@
2138 \dimen@ii\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen\@ne\font\dimen@
2139 \advance\dimen@ii.5ex
2140 \leavevmode\rlap{\raise\dimen@\hbox{\kern\dimen@ii\vbox{\crrtic@}}}}
2141 \def\DDJ@{%
2142 \setbox0\hbox{D}\dimen@=.55\ht0
2143 \dimen@ii\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen\@ne\font\dimen@
2144 \advance\dimen@ii.15ex % correction for the dash position
2145 \advance\dimen@ii-.15\fontdimen7\font % correction for cmtt font
2146 \dimen\thr@@\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen7\font\dimen@
2147 \leavevmode\rlap{\raise\dimen@\hbox{\kern\dimen@ii\vbox{\crttic@}}}}
2148 %
2149 \DeclareTextCommand{\dj}{OT1}{\ddj@ d}
2150 \DeclareTextCommand{\DJ}{OT1}{\DDJ@ D}

```



### 8.12.4 Umlauts and tremas

The command `\` needs to have a different effect for different languages. For German for instance, the ‘umlaut’ should be positioned lower than the default position for placing it over the letters a, o, u, A, O and U. When placed over an e, i, E or I it can retain its normal position. For Dutch the same glyph is always placed in the lower position.

`\umlauthigh` To be able to provide both positions of `\` we provide two commands to switch the positioning, the default will be `\umlauthigh` (the normal positioning).

```
2187 \def\umlauthigh{%
2188   \def\bbl@umlauta##1{\leavevmode\bgroup%
2189     \expandafter\accent\csname\fontencoding dqpos\endcsname
2190     ##1\bbl@allowhyphens\egroup}%
2191   \let\bbl@umlaute\bbl@umlauta}
2192 \def\umlautlow{%
2193   \def\bbl@umlauta{\protect\lower@umlaut}}
2194 \def\umlautelow{%
2195   \def\bbl@umlaute{\protect\lower@umlaut}}
2196 \umlauthigh
```

`\lower@umlaut` The command `\lower@umlaut` is used to position the `\` closer to the letter. We want the umlaut character lowered, nearer to the letter. To do this we need an extra *<dimen>* register.

```
2197 \expandafter\ifx\csname U@D\endcsname\relax
2198   \csname newdimen\endcsname\U@D
2199 \fi
```

The following code fools  $\TeX$ 's `make_accent` procedure about the current x-height of the font to force another placement of the umlaut character. First we have to save the current x-height of the font, because we'll change this font dimension and this is always done globally.

Then we compute the new x-height in such a way that the umlaut character is lowered to the base character. The value of `.45ex` depends on the METAFONT parameters with which the fonts were built. (Just try out, which value will look best.) If the new x-height is too low, it is not changed. Finally we call the `\accent` primitive, reset the old x-height and insert the base character in the argument.

```
2200 \def\lower@umlaut#1{%
2201   \leavevmode\bgroup
2202     \U@D 1ex%
2203     {\setbox\z@\hbox{%
2204       \expandafter\char\csname\fontencoding dqpos\endcsname}%
2205       \dimen@ -.45ex\advance\dimen@\ht\z@
2206       \ifdim 1ex<\dimen@ \fontdimen5\font\dimen@ \fi}%
2207     \expandafter\accent\csname\fontencoding dqpos\endcsname
2208     \fontdimen5\font\U@D #1%
2209   \egroup}
```

For all vowels we declare `\` to be a composite command which uses `\bbl@umlauta` or `\bbl@umlaute` to position the umlaut character. We need to be sure that these definitions override the ones that are provided when the package `fontenc` with option `OT1` is used. Therefore these declarations are postponed until the beginning of the document. Note these definitions only apply to some languages, but `babel` sets them for *all* languages – you may want to redefine `\bbl@umlauta` and/or `\bbl@umlaute` for a language in the corresponding `ldf` (using the `babel` switching mechanism, of course).

```
2210 \AtBeginDocument{%
2211   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{a}{\bbl@umlauta{a}}%
2212   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{e}{\bbl@umlaute{e}}%
2213   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{i}{\bbl@umlaute{i}}%
2214   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{\i}{\bbl@umlaute{i}}%
2215   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{o}{\bbl@umlauta{o}}%
2216   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{u}{\bbl@umlauta{u}}%
2217   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{A}{\bbl@umlauta{A}}%
```

```

2218 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{"}{OT1}{E}{\bbl@umlaut{E}}%
2219 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{"}{OT1}{I}{\bbl@umlaut{I}}%
2220 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{"}{OT1}{O}{\bbl@umlaut{O}}%
2221 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{"}{OT1}{U}{\bbl@umlaut{U}}

```

Finally, make sure the default hyphenrules are defined (even if empty). For internal use, another empty \language is defined. Currently used in Amharic.

```

2222 \ifx\l@english\@undefined
2223 \chardef\l@english\z@
2224 \fi
2225 % The following is used to cancel rules in ini files (see Amharic).
2226 \ifx\l@unhyphenated\@undefined
2227 \newlanguage\l@unhyphenated
2228 \fi

```

## 8.13 Layout

Layout is mainly intended to set bidi documents, but there is at least a tool useful in general.

```

2229 \bbl@trace{Bidi layout}
2230 \providecommand\IfBabelLayout[3]{#3}%
2231 \newcommand\BabelPatchSection[1]{%
2232   \@ifundefined{#1}{}{%
2233     \bbl@exp{\let\bbl@ss@#1<\<#1>%
2234     \@namedef{#1}{%
2235       \@ifstar{\bbl@presec@#1}{%
2236         {\@dblarg{\bbl@presec@x{#1}}}}}%
2237 \def\bbl@presec@x#1[#2]#3{%
2238   \bbl@exp{%
2239     \\select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
2240     \\bbl@cs{sspre@#1}%
2241     \\bbl@cs{ss@#1}%
2242     [\\foreignlanguage{\language}{\unexpanded{#2}}}%
2243     {\\foreignlanguage{\language}{\unexpanded{#3}}}%
2244     \\select@language@x{\language}}}%
2245 \def\bbl@presec@#1#2{%
2246   \bbl@exp{%
2247     \\select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
2248     \\bbl@cs{sspre@#1}%
2249     \\bbl@cs{ss@#1}*%
2250     {\\foreignlanguage{\language}{\unexpanded{#2}}}%
2251     \\select@language@x{\language}}}%
2252 \IfBabelLayout{sectioning}%
2253   {\BabelPatchSection{part}%
2254   \BabelPatchSection{chapter}%
2255   \BabelPatchSection{section}%
2256   \BabelPatchSection{subsection}%
2257   \BabelPatchSection{subsubsection}%
2258   \BabelPatchSection{paragraph}%
2259   \BabelPatchSection{subparagraph}%
2260   \def\babel@toc#1{%
2261     \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}}}%
2262 \IfBabelLayout{captions}%
2263   {\BabelPatchSection{caption}}}%

```

## 8.14 Load engine specific macros

```

2264 \bbl@trace{Input engine specific macros}
2265 \ifcase\bbl@engine

```

```

2266 \input txtbabel.def
2267 \or
2268 \input luababel.def
2269 \or
2270 \input xebabel.def
2271 \fi

```

## 8.15 Creating and modifying languages

`\babelprovide` is a general purpose tool for creating and modifying languages. It creates the language infrastructure, and loads, if requested, an ini file. It may be used in conjunction to previously loaded ldf files.

```

2272 \bbl@trace{Creating languages and reading ini files}
2273 \let\bbl@extend@ini@gobble
2274 \newcommand\babelprovide[2][]{%
2275   \let\bbl@savelangname\languagename
2276   \edef\bbl@savelocaleid{\the\localeid}%
2277   % Set name and locale id
2278   \edef\languagename{#2}%
2279   \bbl@id@assign
2280   % Initialize keys
2281   \let\bbl@KVP@captions\@nil
2282   \let\bbl@KVP@date\@nil
2283   \let\bbl@KVP@import\@nil
2284   \let\bbl@KVP@main\@nil
2285   \let\bbl@KVP@script\@nil
2286   \let\bbl@KVP@language\@nil
2287   \let\bbl@KVP@hyphenrules\@nil
2288   \let\bbl@KVP@linebreaking\@nil
2289   \let\bbl@KVP@justification\@nil
2290   \let\bbl@KVP@mapfont\@nil
2291   \let\bbl@KVP@maparabic\@nil
2292   \let\bbl@KVP@mapdigits\@nil
2293   \let\bbl@KVP@intraspace\@nil
2294   \let\bbl@KVP@intrapenalty\@nil
2295   \let\bbl@KVP@onchar\@nil
2296   \let\bbl@KVP@transforms\@nil
2297   \global\let\bbl@release@transforms\@empty
2298   \let\bbl@KVP@alph\@nil
2299   \let\bbl@KVP@Alph\@nil
2300   \let\bbl@KVP@labels\@nil
2301   \bbl@csarg\let{KVP@labels*}\@nil
2302   \global\let\bbl@inidata\@empty
2303   \global\let\bbl@extend@ini@gobble
2304   \gdef\bbl@key@list{;}%
2305   \bbl@forkv{#1}{% TODO - error handling
2306     \in@{/}{##1}%
2307     \ifin@
2308       \global\let\bbl@extend@ini\bbl@extend@ini@aux
2309       \bbl@renewinikey##1\@{##2}%
2310     \else
2311       \bbl@csarg\def{KVP@##1}{##2}%
2312     \fi}%
2313   \chardef\bbl@howloaded=% 0:none; 1:ldf without ini; 2:ini
2314   \bbl@ifunset{date#2}\z@{\bbl@ifunset\bbl@llevel#2}\@one\tw@}%
2315   % == init ==
2316   \ifx\bbl@screset\@undefined
2317     \bbl@ldfinit
2318   \fi

```



```

2319 % ==
2320 \let\bbl@lbkflag\relax % \@empty = do setup linebreak
2321 \ifcase\bbl@howloaded
2322   \let\bbl@lbkflag\@empty % new
2323 \else
2324   \ifx\bbl@KVP@hyphenrules\@nil\else
2325     \let\bbl@lbkflag\@empty
2326   \fi
2327   \ifx\bbl@KVP@import\@nil\else
2328     \let\bbl@lbkflag\@empty
2329   \fi
2330 \fi
2331 % == import, captions ==
2332 \ifx\bbl@KVP@import\@nil\else
2333   \bbl@exp{\bbl@ifblank{\bbl@KVP@import}}%
2334   {\ifx\bbl@initoload\relax
2335     \begingroup
2336       \def\BabelBeforeIni##1##2{\gdef\bbl@KVP@import{##1}\endinput}%
2337       \bbl@input@texini{#2}%
2338     \endgroup
2339   \else
2340     \xdef\bbl@KVP@import{\bbl@initoload}%
2341   \fi}%
2342 {}%
2343 \fi
2344 \ifx\bbl@KVP@captions\@nil
2345   \let\bbl@KVP@captions\bbl@KVP@import
2346 \fi
2347 % ==
2348 \ifx\bbl@KVP@transforms\@nil\else
2349   \bbl@replace\bbl@KVP@transforms{ }{,}%
2350 \fi
2351 % == Load ini ==
2352 \ifcase\bbl@howloaded
2353   \bbl@provide@new{#2}%
2354 \else
2355   \bbl@ifblank{#1}%
2356   {}% With \bbl@load@basic below
2357   {\bbl@provide@renew{#2}}%
2358 \fi
2359 % Post tasks
2360 % -----
2361 % == subsequent calls after the first provide for a locale ==
2362 \ifx\bbl@inidata\@empty\else
2363   \bbl@extend@ini{#2}%
2364 \fi
2365 % == ensure captions ==
2366 \ifx\bbl@KVP@captions\@nil\else
2367   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@extracaps@#2}%
2368   {\bbl@exp{\bbl@babelensure[exclude=\\today]{#2}}}%
2369   {\bbl@exp{\bbl@babelensure[exclude=\\today,
2370     include=\[bbl@extracaps@#2]]{#2}}}%
2371   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@ensure@language}%
2372   {\bbl@exp{%
2373     \\DeclareRobustCommand\<bbl@ensure@language>[1]{%
2374       \\foreignlanguage{language}%
2375       {###1}}}%
2376   {}%
2377   \bbl@exp{%

```

```

2378      \\bbl@toglobal\<bbl@ensure@\language\name>%
2379      \\bbl@toglobal\<bbl@ensure@\language\name\space>}%
2380  \fi
2381  % ==
2382  % At this point all parameters are defined if 'import'. Now we
2383  % execute some code depending on them. But what about if nothing was
2384  % imported? We just set the basic parameters, but still loading the
2385  % whole ini file.
2386  \bbl@load@basic{#2}%
2387  % == script, language ==
2388  % Override the values from ini or defines them
2389  \ifx\bbl@KVP@script\@nil\else
2390    \bbl@csarg\edef\sname{#2}{\bbl@KVP@script}%
2391  \fi
2392  \ifx\bbl@KVP@language\@nil\else
2393    \bbl@csarg\edef\lname{#2}{\bbl@KVP@language}%
2394  \fi
2395  % == onchar ==
2396  \ifx\bbl@KVP@onchar\@nil\else
2397    \bbl@luahyphenate
2398    \directlua{
2399      if Babel.locale_mapped == nil then
2400        Babel.locale_mapped = true
2401        Babel.linebreaking.add_before(Babel.locale_map)
2402        Babel.loc_to_scr = {}
2403        Babel.chr_to_loc = Babel.chr_to_loc or {}
2404      end}%
2405  \bbl@xin@{ ids }{ \bbl@KVP@onchar\space}%
2406  \ifin@
2407    \ifx\bbl@starthyphens\@undefined % Needed if no explicit selection
2408      \AddBabelHook{babel-onchar}{beforestart}{\bbl@starthyphens}%
2409    \fi
2410    \bbl@exp{\\bbl@add\\bbl@starthyphens
2411      {\\bbl@patterns@lua{\language\name}}}%
2412    % TODO - error/warning if no script
2413    \directlua{
2414      if Babel.script_blocks['\bbl@cl{sbc}'] then
2415        Babel.loc_to_scr[\the\localeid] =
2416          Babel.script_blocks['\bbl@cl{sbc}']
2417        Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].lc = \the\localeid\space
2418        Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].lg = \the\@nameuse{1@language}\space
2419      end
2420    }%
2421  \fi
2422  \bbl@xin@{ fonts }{ \bbl@KVP@onchar\space}%
2423  \ifin@
2424    \bbl@ifunset{bbl@lsys@\language\name}{\bbl@provide@lsys{\language\name}}}%
2425    \bbl@ifunset{bbl@wdir@\language\name}{\bbl@provide@dirs{\language\name}}}%
2426    \directlua{
2427      if Babel.script_blocks['\bbl@cl{sbc}'] then
2428        Babel.loc_to_scr[\the\localeid] =
2429          Babel.script_blocks['\bbl@cl{sbc}']
2430      end}%
2431  \ifx\bbl@mapselect\@undefined % TODO. almost the same as mapfont
2432    \AtBeginDocument{%
2433      \bbl@patchfont{\bbl@mapselect}%
2434      {\selectfont}}%
2435    \def\bbl@mapselect{%
2436      \let\bbl@mapselect\relax

```

```

2437         \edef\bbl@prefontid{\fontid\font}}%
2438     \def\bbl@mapdir##1{%
2439         {\def\language{##1}%
2440         \let\bbl@ifrestoring\@firstoftwo % To avoid font warning
2441         \bbl@switchfont
2442         \ifnum\fontid\font>\z@ % A hack, for the pgf nullfont hack
2443             \directlua{
2444                 Babel.locale_props[\the\csname bbl@id@##1\endcsname]%
2445                 ['/bbl@prefontid'] = \fontid\font\space}%
2446             \fi}}%
2447     \fi
2448     \bbl@exp{\bbl@add\bbl@mapselect{\bbl@mapdir{\language}}}%
2449     \fi
2450     % TODO - catch non-valid values
2451 \fi
2452 % == mapfont ==
2453 % For bidi texts, to switch the font based on direction
2454 \ifx\bbl@KVP@mapfont\@nil\else
2455     \bbl@ifsamestring{\bbl@KVP@mapfont}{direction}}%
2456     {\bbl@error{Option '\bbl@KVP@mapfont' unknown for\
2457         mapfont. Use 'direction'.%
2458         {See the manual for details.}}}%
2459     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@lsys@\language}{\bbl@provide@lsys{\language}}}%
2460     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@wdir@\language}{\bbl@provide@dirs{\language}}}%
2461     \ifx\bbl@mapselect\@undefined % TODO. See onchar.
2462         \AtBeginDocument{%
2463             \bbl@patchfont{\bbl@mapselect}}%
2464             {\selectfont}}%
2465         \def\bbl@mapselect{%
2466             \let\bbl@mapselect\relax
2467             \edef\bbl@prefontid{\fontid\font}}%
2468     \def\bbl@mapdir##1{%
2469         {\def\language{##1}%
2470         \let\bbl@ifrestoring\@firstoftwo % avoid font warning
2471         \bbl@switchfont
2472         \directlua{Babel.fontmap
2473             [\the\csname bbl@wdir@##1\endcsname]%
2474             [\bbl@prefontid]=\fontid\font}}}%
2475     \fi
2476     \bbl@exp{\bbl@add\bbl@mapselect{\bbl@mapdir{\language}}}%
2477 \fi
2478 % == Line breaking: intraspace, intrapenalty ==
2479 % For CJK, East Asian, Southeast Asian, if interspace in ini
2480 \ifx\bbl@KVP@intraspace\@nil\else % We can override the ini or set
2481     \bbl@csarg\edef{intsp@#2}{\bbl@KVP@intraspace}%
2482 \fi
2483 \bbl@provide@intraspace
2484 % == Line breaking: CJK quotes ==
2485 \ifcase\bbl@engine\or
2486     \bbl@xin{/c}{\bbl@c1{lnbrk}}%
2487     \ifin@
2488         \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@quote@\language}{}%
2489         {\directlua{
2490             Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].cjk_quotes = {}
2491             local cs = 'op'
2492             for c in string.utfvalues(
2493                 [[\csname bbl@quote@\language\endcsname]]) do
2494                 if Babel.cjk_characters[c].c == 'qu' then
2495                     Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].cjk_quotes[c] = cs

```

```

2496             end
2497             cs = ( cs == 'op') and 'cl' or 'op'
2498         end
2499     } }%
2500     \fi
2501 \fi
2502 % == Line breaking: justification ==
2503 \ifx\bb1@KVP@justification\@nil\else
2504     \let\bb1@KVP@linebreaking\bb1@KVP@justification
2505 \fi
2506 \ifx\bb1@KVP@linebreaking\@nil\else
2507     \bb1@xin{,\bb1@KVP@linebreaking,}{,elongated,kashida,cjk,unhyphenated,}%
2508     \ifin@
2509         \bb1@csarg\xdef
2510             {lnbrk@\language\name}{\expandafter\@car\bb1@KVP@linebreaking\@nil}%
2511     \fi
2512 \fi
2513 \bb1@xin{/e}{/\bb1@cl{lnbrk}}%
2514 \ifin@else\bb1@xin{/k}{/\bb1@cl{lnbrk}}\fi
2515 \ifin@\bb1@arabicjust\fi
2516 % == Line breaking: hyphenate.other.(locale|script) ==
2517 \ifx\bb1@lbfkflag\@empty
2518     \bb1@ifunset{\bb1@hyotl@\language\name}{ }%
2519     {\bb1@csarg\bb1@replace{\hyotl@\language\name}{ }{ },}%
2520     \bb1@startcommands*\language\name}%
2521     \bb1@csarg\bb1@foreach{\hyotl@\language\name}{ }%
2522     \ifcase\bb1@engine
2523         \ifnum##1<257
2524             \SetHyphenMap{\BabelLower{##1}{##1}}%
2525         \fi
2526     \else
2527         \SetHyphenMap{\BabelLower{##1}{##1}}%
2528     \fi}%
2529 \bb1@endcommands}%
2530 \bb1@ifunset{\bb1@hyots@\language\name}{ }%
2531 {\bb1@csarg\bb1@replace{\hyots@\language\name}{ }{ },}%
2532 \bb1@csarg\bb1@foreach{\hyots@\language\name}{ }%
2533 \ifcase\bb1@engine
2534     \ifnum##1<257
2535         \global\lccode##1=##1\relax
2536     \fi
2537 \else
2538     \global\lccode##1=##1\relax
2539 \fi}%
2540 \fi
2541 % == Counters: maparabic ==
2542 % Native digits, if provided in ini (TeX level, xe and lua)
2543 \ifcase\bb1@engine\else
2544     \bb1@ifunset{\bb1@dgnat@\language\name}{ }%
2545     {\expandafter\ifx\csname\bb1@dgnat@\language\name\endcsname\@empty\else
2546         \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter
2547         \bb1@setdigits\csname\bb1@dgnat@\language\name\endcsname
2548         \ifx\bb1@KVP@maparabic\@nil\else
2549             \ifx\bb1@latinarabic\@undefined
2550                 \expandafter\let\expandafter\@arabic
2551                 \csname\bb1@counter@\language\name\endcsname
2552             \else % ie, if layout=counters, which redefines \@arabic
2553                 \expandafter\let\expandafter\bb1@latinarabic
2554                 \csname\bb1@counter@\language\name\endcsname

```

```

2555         \fi
2556     \fi
2557 \fi}%
2558 \fi
2559 % == Counters: mapdigits ==
2560 % Native digits (lua level).
2561 \ifodd\bbl@engine
2562     \ifx\bbl@KVP@mapdigits\@nil\else
2563         \bbl@ifunset{bbl@dgnat\@languagename}{}%
2564         {\RequirePackage{luatexbase}%
2565         \bbl@activate@preotf
2566         \directlua{
2567             Babel = Babel or {}  %% -> presets in luababel
2568             Babel.digits_mapped = true
2569             Babel.digits = Babel.digits or {}
2570             Babel.digits[\the\localeid] =
2571                 table.pack(string.utfvalue('\bbl@cl{dgnat}'))
2572             if not Babel.numbers then
2573                 function Babel.numbers(head)
2574                     local LOCALE = Babel.attr_locale
2575                     local GLYPH = node.id'glyph'
2576                     local inmath = false
2577                     for item in node.traverse(head) do
2578                         if not inmath and item.id == GLYPH then
2579                             local temp = node.get_attribute(item, LOCALE)
2580                             if Babel.digits[temp] then
2581                                 local chr = item.char
2582                                 if chr > 47 and chr < 58 then
2583                                     item.char = Babel.digits[temp][chr-47]
2584                                 end
2585                             end
2586                             elseif item.id == node.id'math' then
2587                                 inmath = (item.subtype == 0)
2588                             end
2589                         end
2590                     return head
2591                 end
2592             end
2593         }}%
2594     \fi
2595 \fi
2596 % == Counters: alph, Alph ==
2597 % What if extras<lang> contains a \babel@save\@alph? It won't be
2598 % restored correctly when exiting the language, so we ignore
2599 % this change with the \bbl@alph@saved trick.
2600 \ifx\bbl@KVP@alph\@nil\else
2601     \bbl@extras@wrap{\bbl@alph@saved}%
2602     {\let\bbl@alph@saved\@alph}%
2603     {\let\@alph\bbl@alph@saved
2604     \babel@save\@alph}%
2605     \bbl@exp{%
2606         \bbl@add\<extras\languagename>{%
2607             \let\@alph\<bbl@cntr@\bbl@KVP@alph @\languagename>}}%
2608 \fi
2609 \ifx\bbl@KVP@Alph\@nil\else
2610     \bbl@extras@wrap{\bbl@Alph@saved}%
2611     {\let\bbl@Alph@saved\@Alph}%
2612     {\let\@Alph\bbl@Alph@saved
2613     \babel@save\@Alph}%

```

```

2614 \bbl@exp{%
2615   \\bbl@add<\extras\language>{%
2616     \let\\@Alph<\bbl@cntr@bbl@KVP@Alph @\language>}}%
2617 \fi
2618 % == require.babel in ini ==
2619 % To load or reload the babel-*.tex, if require.babel in ini
2620 \ifx\bbl@beforestart\relax\else % But not in doc aux or body
2621   \bbl@ifunset{bbl@rqtex@\language}{}%
2622     {\expandafter\ifx\csname bbl@rqtex@\language\endcsname\empty\else
2623       \let\BabelBeforeIni@gobbletwo
2624       \chardef\atcatcode=\catcode`\@
2625       \catcode`\@=11\relax
2626       \bbl@input@texini{\bbl@cs{rqtex@\language}}%
2627       \catcode`\@=\atcatcode
2628       \let\atcatcode\relax
2629       \global\bbl@csarg\let{rqtex@\language}\relax
2630     \fi}%
2631 \fi
2632 % == frenchspacing ==
2633 \ifcase\bbl@howloaded\in@true\else\in@false\fi
2634 \ifin@else\bbl@xin@{typography/frenchspacing}{\bbl@key@list}\fi
2635 \ifin@
2636   \bbl@extras@wrap{\\bbl@pre@fs}%
2637   {\bbl@pre@fs}%
2638   {\bbl@post@fs}%
2639 \fi
2640 % == Release saved transforms ==
2641 \bbl@release@transforms\relax % \relax closes the last item.
2642 % == main ==
2643 \ifx\bbl@KVP@main\@nil % Restore only if not 'main'
2644   \let\language\bbl@savelangname
2645   \chardef\localeid\bbl@savelocaleid\relax
2646 \fi}

```

Depending on whether or not the language exists (based on \date<language>), we define two macros. Remember \bbl@startcommands opens a group.

```

2647 \def\bbl@provide@new#1{%
2648   \@namedef{date#1}{}% marks lang exists - required by \StartBabelCommands
2649   \@namedef{extras#1}{}%
2650   \@namedef{noextras#1}{}%
2651   \bbl@startcommands*{#1}{captions}%
2652   \ifx\bbl@KVP@captions\@nil % and also if import, implicit
2653     \def\bbl@tempb##1{% elt for \bbl@captionslist
2654       \ifx##1\empty\else
2655         \bbl@exp{%
2656           \\SetString\\##1{%
2657             \\bbl@nocaption{\bbl@stripslash##1}{#1\bbl@stripslash##1}}%
2658           \expandafter\bbl@tempb
2659         \fi}%
2660     \expandafter\bbl@tempb\bbl@captionslist\empty
2661   \else
2662     \ifx\bbl@initoload\relax
2663       \bbl@read@ini{\bbl@KVP@captions}2% % Here letters cat = 11
2664     \else
2665       \bbl@read@ini{\bbl@initoload}2% % Same
2666     \fi
2667   \fi
2668   \StartBabelCommands*{#1}{date}%
2669   \ifx\bbl@KVP@import\@nil

```

```

2670 \bbl@exp{%
2671 \\\SetString\\today{\\bbl@nocaption{today}{#1today}}}%
2672 \else
2673 \bbl@savetoday
2674 \bbl@savestate
2675 \fi
2676 \bbl@endcommands
2677 \bbl@load@basic{#1}%
2678 % == hyphenmins == (only if new)
2679 \bbl@exp{%
2680 \gdef\<#1hyphenmins>{%
2681 {\bbl@ifunset{bbl@lfthm@#1}{2}{\bbl@cs{lfthm@#1}}}%
2682 {\bbl@ifunset{bbl@rgthm@#1}{3}{\bbl@cs{rgthm@#1}}}%}%
2683 % == hyphenrules (also in renew) ==
2684 \bbl@provide@hyphens{#1}%
2685 \ifx\bbl@KVP@main\@nil\else
2686 \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
2687 \fi}
2688 %
2689 \def\bbl@provide@renew#1{%
2690 \ifx\bbl@KVP@captions\@nil\else
2691 \StartBabelCommands*{#1}{captions}%
2692 \bbl@read@ini{\bbl@KVP@captions}2% % Here all letters cat = 11
2693 \EndBabelCommands
2694 \fi
2695 \ifx\bbl@KVP@import\@nil\else
2696 \StartBabelCommands*{#1}{date}%
2697 \bbl@savetoday
2698 \bbl@savestate
2699 \EndBabelCommands
2700 \fi
2701 % == hyphenrules (also in new) ==
2702 \ifx\bbl@lbfkflag\@empty
2703 \bbl@provide@hyphens{#1}%
2704 \fi}

```

Load the basic parameters (ids, typography, counters, and a few more), while captions and dates are left out. But it may happen some data has been loaded before automatically, so we first discard the saved values. (TODO. But preserving previous values would be useful.)

```

2705 \def\bbl@load@basic#1{%
2706 \ifcase\bbl@howloaded\or\or
2707 \ifcase\csname bbl@llevel@\language\endcsname
2708 \bbl@csarg\let{lname@\language}\relax
2709 \fi
2710 \fi
2711 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@lname@#1}%
2712 {\def\BabelBeforeIni##1##2{%
2713 \begingroup
2714 \let\bbl@ini@captions@aux\@gobbletwo
2715 \def\bbl@inidate ####1.####2.####3.####4\relax ####5####6}%
2716 \bbl@read@ini{##1}1%
2717 \ifx\bbl@initoload\relax\endinput\fi
2718 \endgroup}%
2719 \begingroup % boxed, to avoid extra spaces:
2720 \ifx\bbl@initoload\relax
2721 \bbl@input@texini{##1}%
2722 \else
2723 \setbox\z@\hbox{\BabelBeforeIni{\bbl@initoload}}}%
2724 \fi

```

```

2725 \endgroup}%
2726 {}

```

The hyphenrules option is handled with an auxiliary macro.

```

2727 \def\bbbl@provide@hyphens#1{%
2728 \let\bbbl@tempa\relax
2729 \ifx\bbbl@KVP@hyphenrules\@nil\else
2730 \bbbl@replace\bbbl@KVP@hyphenrules{ }{,}%
2731 \bbbl@foreach\bbbl@KVP@hyphenrules{%
2732 \ifx\bbbl@tempa\relax % if not yet found
2733 \bbbl@ifsamestring{##1}{+}%
2734 {\bbbl@exp{\addlanguage\<#1>}}}%
2735 }%
2736 \bbbl@ifunset{#1}%
2737 }%
2738 {\bbbl@exp{\let\bbbl@tempa\<#1>}}%
2739 \fi}%
2740 \fi
2741 \ifx\bbbl@tempa\relax % if no opt or no language in opt found
2742 \ifx\bbbl@KVP@import\@nil
2743 \ifx\bbbl@initoload\relax\else
2744 \bbbl@exp{% and hyphenrules is not empty
2745 \bbbl@ifblank{\bbbl@cs{hyphr#1}}%
2746 }%
2747 {\let\bbbl@tempa\<#1>\bbbl@cl{hyphr}>}}%
2748 \fi
2749 \else % if importing
2750 \bbbl@exp{% and hyphenrules is not empty
2751 \bbbl@ifblank{\bbbl@cs{hyphr#1}}%
2752 }%
2753 {\let\bbbl@tempa\<#1>\bbbl@cl{hyphr}>}}%
2754 \fi
2755 \fi
2756 \bbbl@ifunset{\bbbl@tempa}% ie, relax or undefined
2757 {\bbbl@ifunset{#1}% no hyphenrules found - fallback
2758 {\bbbl@exp{\adddialect\<#1>\language}}%
2759 }% so, #1<lang> is ok - nothing to do
2760 {\bbbl@exp{\adddialect\<#1>\bbbl@tempa}}% found in opt list or ini

```

The reader of babel-...tex files. We reset temporarily some catcodes.

```

2761 \def\bbbl@input@texini#1{%
2762 \bbbl@bsphack
2763 \bbbl@exp{%
2764 \catcode\@=14 \catcode\@=0
2765 \catcode\@=1 \catcode\@=2
2766 \lowercase{\InputIfFileExists{babel-#1.tex}{}}%
2767 \catcode\@=\the\catcode\@relax
2768 \catcode\@=\the\catcode\@relax
2769 \catcode\@=\the\catcode\@relax
2770 \catcode\@=\the\catcode\@relax}%
2771 \bbbl@esphack}

```

The following macros read and store ini files (but don't process them). For each line, there are 3 possible actions: ignore if starts with ;, switch section if starts with [, and store otherwise. There are used in the first step of \bbbl@read@ini.

```

2772 \def\bbbl@inline#1\bbbl@inline{%
2773 \@ifnextchar[\bbbl@inisect{\@ifnextchar\bbbl@iniskip\bbbl@inistore}#1\@}% ]
2774 \def\bbbl@inisect[#1]#2\@{\def\bbbl@section{#1}}
2775 \def\bbbl@iniskip#1\@{\% if starts with ;

```



```

2776 \def\bbl@inistore#1=#2\@@{%      full (default)
2777   \bbl@trim@def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
2778   \bbl@trim\toks@{#2}%
2779   \bbl@xin@{;\bbl@section/\bbl@tempa;}{\bbl@key@list}%
2780   \ifin\else
2781     \bbl@exp{%
2782       \\g@addto@macro\\bbl@inidata{%
2783         \\bbl@elt{\bbl@section}{\bbl@tempa}{\the\toks@}}}%
2784   \fi}
2785 \def\bbl@inistore@min#1=#2\@@{%  minimal (maybe set in \bbl@read@ini)
2786   \bbl@trim@def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
2787   \bbl@trim\toks@{#2}%
2788   \bbl@xin@{.identification.}{.\bbl@section.}%
2789   \ifin@
2790     \bbl@exp{\\g@addto@macro\\bbl@inidata{%
2791       \\bbl@elt{identification}{\bbl@tempa}{\the\toks@}}}%
2792   \fi}

```

Now, the ‘main loop’, which **must be executed inside a group**. At this point, \bbl@inidata may contain data declared in \babelprovide, with ‘slashed’ keys. There are 3 steps: first read the ini file and store it; then traverse the stored values, and process some groups if required (date, captions, labels, counters); finally, ‘export’ some values by defining global macros (identification, typography, characters, numbers). The second argument is 0 when called to read the minimal data for fonts; with \babelprovide it’s either 1 or 2.

```

2793 \ifx\bbl@readstream\undefined
2794   \csname newread\endcsname\bbl@readstream
2795 \fi
2796 \def\bbl@read@ini#1#2{%
2797   \global\let\bbl@extend@ini@gobble
2798   \openin\bbl@readstream=babel-#1.ini
2799   \ifeof\bbl@readstream
2800     \bbl@error
2801     {There is no ini file for the requested language\\%
2802      (#1: \language). Perhaps you misspelled it or your\\%
2803      installation is not complete.}%
2804     {Fix the name or reinstall babel.}%
2805   \else
2806     % == Store ini data in \bbl@inidata ==
2807     \catcode`\[=12 \catcode`\]=12 \catcode`\==12 \catcode`\&=12
2808     \catcode`\;=12 \catcode`\|=12 \catcode`\%=14 \catcode`\-=12
2809     \bbl@info{Importing
2810               \ifcase#2font and identification \or basic \fi
2811               data for \language\\%
2812               from babel-#1.ini. Reported}%
2813     \ifnum#2=\z@
2814       \global\let\bbl@inidata\empty
2815       \let\bbl@inistore\bbl@inistore@min    % Remember it's local
2816     \fi
2817     \def\bbl@section{identification}%
2818     \bbl@exp{\\bbl@inistore tag.ini=#1\\@@}%
2819     \bbl@inistore load.level=#2\@@
2820     \loop
2821     \if T\ifeof\bbl@readstream F\fi T\relax % Trick, because inside \loop
2822       \endlinechar\m@ne
2823       \read\bbl@readstream to \bbl@line
2824       \endlinechar\^^M
2825       \ifx\bbl@line\empty\else
2826         \expandafter\bbl@inline\bbl@line\bbl@inline
2827       \fi

```

```

2828 \repeat
2829 % == Process stored data ==
2830 \bbl@csarg\xdef{lini@language}{#1}%
2831 \bbl@read@ini@aux
2832 % == 'Export' data ==
2833 \bbl@ini@exports{#2}%
2834 \global\bbl@csarg\let{inidata@language}\bbl@inidata
2835 \global\let\bbl@inidata@empty
2836 \bbl@exp{\bbl@add@list\bbl@ini@loaded{language}}%
2837 \bbl@tglobal\bbl@ini@loaded
2838 \fi}
2839 \def\bbl@read@ini@aux{%
2840 \let\bbl@savestrings@empty
2841 \let\bbl@savetoday@empty
2842 \let\bbl@savestate@empty
2843 \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3{%
2844 \def\bbl@section{##1}%
2845 \in{=date.}{=##1}% Find a better place
2846 \ifin@
2847 \bbl@ini@calendar{##1}%
2848 \fi
2849 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@inikv@##1}{}%
2850 {\csname bbl@inikv@##1\endcsname{##2}{##3}}%
2851 \bbl@inidata}

```

A variant to be used when the ini file has been already loaded, because it's not the first \babelprovide for this language.

```

2852 \def\bbl@extend@ini@aux#1{%
2853 \bbl@startcommands*{#1}{captions}%
2854 % Activate captions/... and modify exports
2855 \bbl@csarg\def{inikv@captions.licr}##1##2{%
2856 \setlocalecaption{#1}{##1}{##2}%
2857 \def\bbl@inikv@captions##1##2{%
2858 \bbl@ini@captions@aux{##1}{##2}%
2859 \def\bbl@stringdef##1##2{\gdef##1{##2}}%
2860 \def\bbl@exportkey##1##2##3{%
2861 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@kv@##2}{%
2862 {\expandafter\ifx\csname bbl@kv@##2\endcsname\@empty\else
2863 \bbl@exp{\global\let\bbl@##1@language>\bbl@kv@##2}}%
2864 \fi}}%
2865 % As with \bbl@read@ini, but with some changes
2866 \bbl@read@ini@aux
2867 \bbl@ini@exports\tw@
2868 % Update inidata@lang by pretending the ini is read.
2869 \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3{%
2870 \def\bbl@section{##1}%
2871 \bbl@iniline##2=##3\bbl@iniline}%
2872 \csname bbl@inidata@#1\endcsname
2873 \global\bbl@csarg\let{inidata@#1}\bbl@inidata
2874 \StartBabelCommands*{#1}{date}% And from the import stuff
2875 \def\bbl@stringdef##1##2{\gdef##1{##2}}%
2876 \bbl@savetoday
2877 \bbl@savestate
2878 \bbl@endcommands}

```

A somewhat hackish tool to handle calendar sections. To be improved.

```

2879 \def\bbl@ini@calendar#1{%
2880 \lowercase{\def\bbl@tempa{=#1=}}%
2881 \bbl@replace\bbl@tempa{=date.gregorian}{}%

```

```

2882 \bbl@replace\bbl@tempa{=date.}{}%
2883 \in@{.licr={}{#1=}}%
2884 \ifin@
2885 \ifcase\bbl@engine
2886 \bbl@replace\bbl@tempa{.licr={}}%
2887 \else
2888 \let\bbl@tempa\relax
2889 \fi
2890 \fi
2891 \ifx\bbl@tempa\relax\else
2892 \bbl@replace\bbl@tempa{=}{}%
2893 \bbl@exp{%
2894 \def\<bbl@inikv@#1>####1####2{%
2895 \\\bbl@inidate####1...\relax{####2}{\bbl@tempa}}}%
2896 \fi}

```

A key with a slash in \babelprovide replaces the value in the ini file (which is ignored altogether). The mechanism is simple (but suboptimal): add the data to the ini one (at this point the ini file has not yet been read), and define a dummy macro. When the ini file is read, just skip the corresponding key and reset the macro (in \bbl@inistore above).

```

2897 \def\bbl@renewinikey#1/#2\@#3{%
2898 \edef\bbl@tempa{\zap@space #1 \@empty}% section
2899 \edef\bbl@tempb{\zap@space #2 \@empty}% key
2900 \bbl@trim\toks@{#3}% value
2901 \bbl@exp{%
2902 \edef\\bbl@key@list{\bbl@key@list \bbl@tempa/\bbl@tempb;}%
2903 \\g@addto@macro\\bbl@inidata{%
2904 \\\bbl@elt{\bbl@tempa}{\bbl@tempb}{\the\toks@}}}%

```

The previous assignments are local, so we need to export them. If the value is empty, we can provide a default value.

```

2905 \def\bbl@exportkey#1#2#3{%
2906 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@@kv@#2}%
2907 {\bbl@csarg\gdef{#1@\language}\@empty}%
2908 {\expandafter\ifx\csname bbl@@kv@#2\endcsname\@empty
2909 \bbl@csarg\gdef{#1@\language}\@empty}%
2910 \else
2911 \bbl@exp{\global\let\<bbl@#1@\language>\<bbl@@kv@#2>}%
2912 \fi}}

```

Key-value pairs are treated differently depending on the section in the ini file. The following macros are the readers for identification and typography. Note \bbl@ini@exports is called always (via \bbl@inisec), while \bbl@after@ini must be called explicitly after \bbl@read@ini if necessary.

```

2913 \def\bbl@iniwarning#1{%
2914 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@@kv@identification.warning#1}{}%
2915 {\bbl@warning{%
2916 From babel-\bbl@cs{lini@\language}.ini:\\%
2917 \bbl@cs{@kv@identification.warning#1}\\%
2918 Reported }}}
2919 %
2920 \let\bbl@release@transforms\@empty
2921 %
2922 \def\bbl@ini@exports#1{%
2923 % Identification always exported
2924 \bbl@iniwarning}%
2925 \ifcase\bbl@engine
2926 \bbl@iniwarning{.pdf\latex}%
2927 \or
2928 \bbl@iniwarning{.lua\latex}%

```

```

2929 \or
2930 \bbl@iniwarning{.xelatex}%
2931 \fi%
2932 \bbl@exportkey{llevel}{identification.load.level}{}%
2933 \bbl@exportkey{elname}{identification.name.english}{}%
2934 \bbl@exp{\bbl@exportkey{lname}{identification.name.opentype}%
2935 {\csname bbl@elname@language\endcsname}}%
2936 \bbl@exportkey{tbc}{identification.tag.bcp47}{}%
2937 \bbl@exportkey{lbc}{identification.language.tag.bcp47}{}%
2938 \bbl@exportkey{lotf}{identification.tag.opentype}{dflt}%
2939 \bbl@exportkey{esname}{identification.script.name}{}%
2940 \bbl@exp{\bbl@exportkey{sname}{identification.script.name.opentype}%
2941 {\csname bbl@esname@language\endcsname}}%
2942 \bbl@exportkey{sbc}{identification.script.tag.bcp47}{}%
2943 \bbl@exportkey{sotf}{identification.script.tag.opentype}{DFLT}%
2944 % Also maps bcp47 -> language
2945 \ifbbl@bcptoname
2946 \bbl@csarg\xdef{bcp@map@bbl@cl{tbc}}{\language}%
2947 \fi
2948 % Conditional
2949 \ifnum#1>\z@ % 0 = only info, 1, 2 = basic, (re)new
2950 \bbl@exportkey{lbrk}{typography.linebreaking}{h}%
2951 \bbl@exportkey{hyphr}{typography.hyphenrules}{}%
2952 \bbl@exportkey{lftm}{typography.lefthyphenmin}{2}%
2953 \bbl@exportkey{rgtm}{typography.righthyphenmin}{3}%
2954 \bbl@exportkey{prehc}{typography.prehyphenchar}{}%
2955 \bbl@exportkey{hyotl}{typography.hyphenate.other.locale}{}%
2956 \bbl@exportkey{hyots}{typography.hyphenate.other.script}{}%
2957 \bbl@exportkey{intsp}{typography.intraspace}{}%
2958 \bbl@exportkey{frspc}{typography.frenchspacing}{u}%
2959 \bbl@exportkey{chrng}{characters.ranges}{}%
2960 \bbl@exportkey{quote}{characters.delimiters.quotes}{}%
2961 \bbl@exportkey{dgnat}{numbers.digits.native}{}%
2962 \ifnum#1=\tw@ % only (re)new
2963 \bbl@exportkey{rqtex}{identification.require.babel}{}%
2964 \bbl@tglobal\bbl@savetoday
2965 \bbl@tglobal\bbl@savestate
2966 \bbl@savestrings
2967 \fi
2968 \fi}

```

A shared handler for key=val lines to be stored in \bbl@kv@<section>.<key>.

```

2969 \def\bbl@inikv#1#2{%      key=value
2970 \toks@{#2}%              This hides #'s from ini values
2971 \bbl@csarg\edef{@kv@bbl@section.#1}{\the\toks@}}

```

By default, the following sections are just read. Actions are taken later.

```

2972 \let\bbl@inikv@identification\bbl@inikv
2973 \let\bbl@inikv@typography\bbl@inikv
2974 \let\bbl@inikv@characters\bbl@inikv
2975 \let\bbl@inikv@numbers\bbl@inikv

```

Additive numerals require an additional definition. When .1 is found, two macros are defined – the basic one, without .1 called by \localnumeral, and another one preserving the trailing .1 for the ‘units’.

```

2976 \def\bbl@inikv@counters#1#2{%
2977 \bbl@ifsamestring{#1}{digits}%
2978 {\bbl@error{The counter name 'digits' is reserved for mapping\\%
2979 decimal digits}%

```

```

2980             {Use another name.}}%
2981     {}%
2982 \def\bbl@tempc{#1}%
2983 \bbl@trim@def{\bbl@tempb*}{#2}%
2984 \in@{.1$}{#1$}%
2985 \ifin@
2986     \bbl@replace\bbl@tempc{.1}{}%
2987     \bbl@csarg\protected@xdef{cntr@\bbl@tempc @\languagename}{%
2988         \noexpand\bbl@alphanumeric{\bbl@tempc}}%
2989 \fi
2990 \in@{.F.}{#1}%
2991 \ifin@else\in@{.S.}{#1}\fi
2992 \ifin@
2993     \bbl@csarg\protected@xdef{cntr@#1@\languagename}{\bbl@tempb*}%
2994 \else
2995     \toks@{}% Required by \bbl@buildifcase, which returns \bbl@tempa
2996     \expandafter\bbl@buildifcase\bbl@tempb* \ \ % Space after \ \
2997     \bbl@csarg{\global\expandafter\let}{cntr@#1@\languagename}\bbl@tempa
2998 \fi}

```

Now captions and captions.licr, depending on the engine. And below also for dates. They rely on a few auxiliary macros. It is expected the ini file provides the complete set in Unicode and LICR, in that order.

```

2999 \ifcase\bbl@engine
3000     \bbl@csarg\def{inikv@captions.licr}#1#2{%
3001         \bbl@ini@captions@aux{#1}{#2}}
3002 \else
3003     \def\bbl@inikv@captions#1#2{%
3004         \bbl@ini@captions@aux{#1}{#2}}
3005 \fi

```

The auxiliary macro for captions define \<caption>name.

```

3006 \def\bbl@ini@captions@template#1#2{% string language tempa=capt-name
3007     \bbl@replace\bbl@tempa{.template}{}%
3008     \def\bbl@toreplace{#1}{}%
3009     \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[ ]}{\nobreakspace}}%
3010     \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[ ]}{\csname}%
3011     \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[ ]}{\csname the}%
3012     \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[ ]}{\name\endcsname}}%
3013     \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[ ]}{\endcsname}}%
3014     \bbl@xin@{, \bbl@tempa,}{, chapter, appendix, part,}%
3015 \ifin@
3016     \@nameuse{\bbl@patch\bbl@tempa}%
3017     \global\bbl@csarg\let{\bbl@tempa fmt@#2}\bbl@toreplace
3018 \fi
3019 \bbl@xin@{, \bbl@tempa,}{, figure, table,}%
3020 \ifin@
3021     \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@toreplace}%
3022     \bbl@exp{\gdef\<fnum@\bbl@tempa>{\the\toks@}}%
3023 \fi}
3024 \def\bbl@ini@captions@aux#1#2{%
3025     \bbl@trim@def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
3026     \bbl@xin@{.template}{\bbl@tempa}%
3027 \ifin@
3028     \bbl@ini@captions@template{#2}\languagename
3029 \else
3030     \bbl@ifblank{#2}%
3031     {\bbl@exp{%
3032         \toks@{\ \ \bbl@nocaption{\bbl@tempa}{\languagename\bbl@tempa name}}}%

```

```

3033     {\bbl@trim\toks@{#2}}%
3034     \bbl@exp{%
3035         \\bbl@add\\bbl@savestrings{%
3036             \\SetString\<\bbl@tempa name>{\the\toks@}}}%
3037     \toks@ \expandafter{\bbl@captionslist}%
3038     \bbl@exp{\\in@{\<\bbl@tempa name>}{\the\toks@}}%
3039     \ifin@ \else
3040         \bbl@exp{%
3041             \\bbl@add\<bbl@extracaps@\languagename>{\<\bbl@tempa name>}}%
3042             \\bbl@toglobal\<bbl@extracaps@\languagename>}}%
3043     \fi
3044     \fi}

```

**Labels.** Captions must contain just strings, no format at all, so there is new group in ini files.

```

3045 \def\bbl@list@the{%
3046     part,chapter,section,subsection,subsubsection,paragraph,%
3047     subparagraph,enumi,enumii,enumiii,enumiv,equation,figure,%
3048     table,page,footnote,mpfootnote,mpfn}
3049 \def\bbl@map@cnt#1{% #1:roman,etc, // #2:enumi,etc
3050     \bbl@ifunset{bbl@map@#1@\languagename}%
3051         {\@nameuse{#1}}%
3052         {\@nameuse{bbl@map@#1@\languagename}}}
3053 \def\bbl@inikv@labels#1#2{%
3054     \in@{.map}{#1}%
3055     \ifin@
3056         \ifx\bbl@KVP@labels\@nil\else
3057             \bbl@xin@{ map }{ \bbl@KVP@labels\space}%
3058             \ifin@
3059                 \def\bbl@tempc{#1}%
3060                 \bbl@replace\bbl@tempc{.map}{}%
3061                 \in@{,#2,}{,arabic,roman,Roman,alph,Alph,fnsymbol,}%
3062                 \bbl@exp{%
3063                     \gdef\<bbl@map@\bbl@tempc @\languagename>%
3064                     {\ifin@\<#2>\else\\localecounter{#2}\fi}}%
3065                 \bbl@foreach\bbl@list@the{%
3066                     \bbl@ifunset{the##1}{}%
3067                     {\bbl@exp{\let\\bbl@tempd\<the##1>}%
3068                     \bbl@exp{%
3069                         \\bbl@sreplace\<the##1>%
3070                         {\<\bbl@tempc>{##1}}{\\\bbl@map@cnt{\bbl@tempc}{##1}}}%
3071                         \\bbl@sreplace\<the##1>%
3072                         {\<\@empty @\bbl@tempc>\<c@##1>}{\\bbl@map@cnt{\bbl@tempc}{##1}}}%
3073                     \expandafter\ifx\csname the##1\endcsname\bbl@tempd\else
3074                         \toks@\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter{%
3075                             \csname the##1\endcsname}%
3076                         \expandafter\xdef\csname the##1\endcsname{{\the\toks@}}%
3077                     \fi}}%
3078     \fi
3079     \fi
3080     %
3081     \else
3082         %
3083         % The following code is still under study. You can test it and make
3084         % suggestions. Eg, enumerate.2 = ([enumi]).([enumii]). It's
3085         % language dependent.
3086         \in@{enumerate.}{#1}%
3087         \ifin@
3088             \def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
3089             \bbl@replace\bbl@tempa{enumerate.}{}%

```

```

3090 \def\bbl@toreplace{#2}%
3091 \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[ ]}{\nobreakspace{}}%
3092 \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[ ]}{\csname the}%
3093 \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[ ]}{\endcsname{}}}%
3094 \toks@ \expandafter{\bbl@toreplace}%
3095 % TODO. Execute only once:
3096 \bbl@exp{%
3097   \\ \bbl@add\<extras\language>{%
3098     \\ \babel@save\<labelenum\romannumeral\bbl@tempa>%
3099     \def\<labelenum\romannumeral\bbl@tempa>{\the\toks@}}%
3100   \\ \bbl@tglobal\<extras\language>}%
3101 \fi
3102 \fi}

```

To show correctly some captions in a few languages, we need to patch some internal macros, because the order is hardcoded. For example, in Japanese the chapter number is surrounded by two string, while in Hungarian is placed after. These replacement works in many classes, but not all. Actually, the following lines are somewhat tentative.

```

3103 \def\bbl@chapttype{chapter}
3104 \ifx\@makechapterhead\undefined
3105 \let\bbl@patchchapter\relax
3106 \else\ifx\thechapter\undefined
3107 \let\bbl@patchchapter\relax
3108 \else\ifx\ps@headings\undefined
3109 \let\bbl@patchchapter\relax
3110 \else
3111 \def\bbl@patchchapter{%
3112   \global\let\bbl@patchchapter\relax
3113   \gdef\bbl@chfmt{%
3114     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@bbl@chapttype fmt@\language}%
3115     {\@chapapp\space\thechapter}
3116     {\@nameuse{\bbl@bbl@chapttype fmt@\language}}}%
3117   \bbl@add\appendix{\def\bbl@chapttype{appendix}}% Not harmful, I hope
3118   \bbl@sreplace\ps@headings{\@chapapp\ \thechapter}{\bbl@chfmt}%
3119   \bbl@sreplace\chaptermark{\@chapapp\ \thechapter}{\bbl@chfmt}%
3120   \bbl@sreplace\@makechapterhead{\@chapapp\space\thechapter}{\bbl@chfmt}%
3121   \bbl@tglobal\appendix
3122   \bbl@tglobal\ps@headings
3123   \bbl@tglobal\chaptermark
3124   \bbl@tglobal\@makechapterhead}
3125 \let\bbl@patchappendix\bbl@patchchapter
3126 \fi\fi\fi
3127 \ifx\@part\undefined
3128 \let\bbl@patchpart\relax
3129 \else
3130 \def\bbl@patchpart{%
3131   \global\let\bbl@patchpart\relax
3132   \gdef\bbl@partformat{%
3133     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@partfmt@\language}%
3134     {\partname\nobreakspace\thepart}
3135     {\@nameuse{\bbl@partfmt@\language}}}%
3136   \bbl@sreplace\@part{\partname\nobreakspace\thepart}{\bbl@partformat}%
3137   \bbl@tglobal\@part}
3138 \fi

```

**Date.** TODO. Document

```

3139 % Arguments are _not_ protected.
3140 \let\bbl@calendar\@empty
3141 \DeclareRobustCommand\localedate[1][\bbl@localedate{#1}]

```

```

3142 \def\bbl@localedate#1#2#3#4{%
3143   \begingroup
3144     \ifx\@empty#1\@empty\else
3145       \let\bbl@ld@calendar\@empty
3146       \let\bbl@ld@variant\@empty
3147       \edef\bbl@tempa{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
3148       \def\bbl@tempb##1=##2\@{\@namedef{\bbl@ld@##1}{##2}}%
3149       \bbl@foreach\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempb##1\@}%
3150       \edef\bbl@calendar{%
3151         \bbl@ld@calendar
3152         \ifx\bbl@ld@variant\@empty\else
3153           .\bbl@ld@variant
3154         \fi}%
3155       \bbl@replace\bbl@calendar{gregorian}{}%
3156     \fi
3157     \bbl@cased
3158     {\@nameuse{\bbl@date@\language @\bbl@calendar}{#2}{#3}{#4}}%
3159   \endgroup}
3160 % eg: 1=months, 2=wide, 3=1, 4=dummy, 5=value, 6=calendar
3161 \def\bbl@inidate#1.#2.#3.#4\relax#5#6{% TODO - ignore with 'captions'
3162   \bbl@trim@def\bbl@tempa{#1.#2}%
3163   \bbl@ifsamestring{\bbl@tempa}{months.wide}%      to savedate
3164   {\bbl@trim@def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
3165     \bbl@trim\toks@{#5}%
3166     \@temptokena\expandafter{\bbl@savedate}%
3167     \bbl@exp{% Reverse order - in ini last wins
3168       \def\\bbl@savedate{%
3169         \\SetString\<month\romannumeral\bbl@tempa#6name>{\the\toks@}%
3170         \the\@temptokena}}}%
3171   {\bbl@ifsamestring{\bbl@tempa}{date.long}%      defined now
3172     {\lowercase{\def\bbl@tempb{#6}}%
3173       \bbl@trim@def\bbl@toreplace{#5}%
3174       \bbl@TG@@date
3175       \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@date@\language @}%
3176       {\bbl@exp{% TODO. Move to a better place.
3177         \gdef\<\language date>{\protect\<\language date >}%
3178         \gdef\<\language date >####1####2####3{%
3179           \\bbl@usedategroupttrue
3180           \<bbl@ensure@\language >{%
3181             \\localedate{####1}{####2}{####3}}}%
3182           \\bbl@add\\bbl@savetoday{%
3183             \\SetString\\today{%
3184               \<\language date>%
3185               {\the\year}{\the\month}{\the\day}}}}}%
3186         {}}%
3187       \global\bbl@csarg\let{date@\language @}\bbl@toreplace
3188       \ifx\bbl@tempb\@empty\else
3189         \global\bbl@csarg\let{date@\language @\bbl@tempb}\bbl@toreplace
3190       \fi}%
3191     {}}}}

```

**Dates** will require some macros for the basic formatting. They may be redefined by language, so “semi-public” names (camel case) are used. Oddly enough, the CLDR places particles like “de” inconsistently in either in the date or in the month name. Note after `\bbl@replace \toks@` contains the resulting string, which is used by `\bbl@replace@finish@iii` (this implicit behavior doesn't seem a good idea, but it's efficient).

```

3192 \let\bbl@calendar\@empty
3193 \newcommand\BabelDateSpace{\nobreakspace}
3194 \newcommand\BabelDateDot{.\@} % TODO. \let instead of repeating

```



```

3195 \newcommand\BabelDated[1]{\number#1}
3196 \newcommand\BabelDatedd[1]{\ifnum#1<10 0\fi\number#1}
3197 \newcommand\BabelDateM[1]{\number#1}
3198 \newcommand\BabelDateMM[1]{\ifnum#1<10 0\fi\number#1}
3199 \newcommand\BabelDateMMMM[1]{%
3200   \csname month\romannumeral#1\bb1@calendar name\endcsname}%
3201 \newcommand\BabelDatey[1]{\number#1}%
3202 \newcommand\BabelDateyy[1]{%
3203   \ifnum#1<10 0\number#1 %
3204   \else\ifnum#1<100 \number#1 %
3205   \else\ifnum#1<1000 \expandafter\@gobble\number#1 %
3206   \else\ifnum#1<10000 \expandafter\@gobbletwo\number#1 %
3207   \else
3208     \bb1@error
3209     {Currently two-digit years are restricted to the\
3210      range 0-9999.}%
3211     {There is little you can do. Sorry.}%
3212   \fi\fi\fi\fi}
3213 \newcommand\BabelDateyyyy[1]{\number#1} % TODO - add leading 0
3214 \def\bb1@replace@finish@iii#1{%
3215   \bb1@exp{\def\#1###1###2###3{\the\toks@}}
3216 \def\bb1@TG@date{%
3217   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[ ]}{\BabelDateSpace{}}%
3218   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{.}{\BabelDateDot{}}%
3219   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[d]}{\BabelDated{###3}}%
3220   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[dd]}{\BabelDatedd{###3}}%
3221   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[M]}{\BabelDateM{###2}}%
3222   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[MM]}{\BabelDateMM{###2}}%
3223   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[MMMM]}{\BabelDateMMMM{###2}}%
3224   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[y]}{\BabelDatey{###1}}%
3225   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[yy]}{\BabelDateyy{###1}}%
3226   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[yyyy]}{\BabelDateyyyy{###1}}%
3227   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[y|]}{\bb1@datecctr[###1|]}%
3228   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[m|]}{\bb1@datecctr[###2|]}%
3229   \bb1@replace\bb1@toreplace{[d|]}{\bb1@datecctr[###3|]}%
3230   \bb1@replace@finish@iii\bb1@toreplace}
3231 \def\bb1@datecctr{\expandafter\bb1@xdatecctr\expandafter}
3232 \def\bb1@xdatecctr[#1|#2]{\localenumeral{#2}{#1}}

```

### Transforms.

```

3233 \let\bb1@release@transforms\@empty
3234 \@namedef{bb1@inikv@transforms.prehyphenation}{%
3235   \bb1@transforms\babelprehyphenation}
3236 \@namedef{bb1@inikv@transforms.posthyphenation}{%
3237   \bb1@transforms\babelposthyphenation}
3238 \def\bb1@transforms@aux#1#2#3#4,#5\relax{%
3239   #1[#2]{#3}{#4}{#5}}
3240 \begingroup % A hack. TODO. Don't require an specific order
3241   \catcode`\%=12
3242   \catcode`\&=14
3243   \gdef\bb1@transforms#1#2#3{&%
3244     \ifx\bb1@KVP@transforms\@nil\else
3245       \directlua{
3246         local str = [=[#2]=]
3247         str = str:gsub('%.%d+%.%d+$', '')
3248         tex.print([[ \def\string\babeltempa{]] .. str .. [[]])
3249       }&%
3250     \bb1@xin@{,\babeltempa,}{,\bb1@KVP@transforms,}&%
3251     \fin@

```

```

3252 \in@{.0$}{#2$}&%
3253 \ifin@
3254 \directlua{
3255     local str = string.match([[ \bbl@KVP@transforms]],
3256                             '%(([^%(-)%)^%)]-\babeltempa')
3257     if str == nil then
3258         tex.print([[ \def\string\babeltempb{}}])
3259     else
3260         tex.print([[ \def\string\babeltempb{,attribute=} .. str .. [{}]])
3261     end
3262 }
3263 \toks@{#3}&%
3264 \bbl@exp{&%
3265     \\\g@addto@macro\ \bbl@release@transforms{&%
3266         \relax &% Closes previous \bbl@transforms@aux
3267         \\\bbl@transforms@aux
3268         \\\#1{label=\babeltempa\babeltempb}{\language\the\toks@}}&%
3269 \else
3270     \g@addto@macro\ \bbl@release@transforms{, {#3}}&%
3271 \fi
3272 \fi
3273 \fi}
3274 \endgroup

```

Language and Script values to be used when defining a font or setting the direction are set with the following macros.

```

3275 \def\bbl@provide@lsys#1{%
3276     \bbl@ifunset{bbl@lname@#1}%
3277     {\bbl@load@info{#1}}%
3278     }%
3279 \bbl@csarg\let{lsys@#1}\empty
3280 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@sname@#1}{\bbl@csarg\gdef{sname@#1}{Default}}{}%
3281 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@sotf@#1}{\bbl@csarg\gdef{sotf@#1}{DFLT}}{}%
3282 \bbl@csarg\bbl@add@list{lsys@#1}{Script=\bbl@cs{sname@#1}}%
3283 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@lname@#1}{%
3284     {\bbl@csarg\bbl@add@list{lsys@#1}{Language=\bbl@cs{lname@#1}}}%
3285 \ifcase\bbl@engine\or\or
3286     \bbl@ifunset{bbl@prehc@#1}{}%
3287     {\bbl@exp{\ \bbl@ifblank{\bbl@cs{prehc@#1}}}%
3288     }%
3289     {\ifx\bbl@xenoxyph\@undefined
3290         \let\bbl@xenoxyph\bbl@xenoxyph@d
3291         \ifx\AtBeginDocument\@notprerr
3292             \expandafter\@secondoftwo % to execute right now
3293         \fi
3294         \AtBeginDocument{%
3295             \bbl@patchfont{\bbl@xenoxyph}%
3296             \expandafter\selectlanguage\expandafter{\language}%
3297         \fi}}%
3298 \fi
3299 \bbl@csarg\bbl@to@global{lsys@#1}}
3300 \def\bbl@xenoxyph@d{%
3301     \bbl@ifset{bbl@prehc@language}%
3302     {\ifnum\hyphenchar\font=\defaultshyphenchar
3303         \iffontchar\font\bbl@cl{prehc}\relax
3304         \hyphenchar\font\bbl@cl{prehc}\relax
3305     \else\iffontchar\font"200B
3306         \hyphenchar\font"200B
3307     \else

```

```

3308         \bbl@warning
3309         {Neither 0 nor ZERO WIDTH SPACE are available\\%
3310         in the current font, and therefore the hyphen\\%
3311         will be printed. Try changing the fontspec's\\%
3312         'HyphenChar' to another value, but be aware\\%
3313         this setting is not safe (see the manual)}%
3314         \hyphenchar\font\defaultshyphenchar
3315         \fi\fi
3316         \fi}%
3317         {\hyphenchar\font\defaultshyphenchar}}
3318     % \fi}

```

```

3319 \def\bbl@load@info#1{%
3320   \def\BabelBeforeIni##1##2{%
3321     \begingroup
3322       \bbl@read@ini{##1}0%
3323       \endinput           % babel- .tex may contain onlypreamble's
3324     \endgroup}%          boxed, to avoid extra spaces:
3325   {\bbl@input@texini{#1}}}
```

[illegible]

```

3357 \def\bbbl@buildifcase#1 {% Returns \bbbl@tempa, requires \toks@={}%
3358 \ifx\\#1% % \\ before, in case #1 is multiletter
3359 \bbbl@exp{%
3360 \def\\bbbl@tempa####1{%
3361 \<ifcase>####1\space\the\toks@\\<else>\\@ctrerr\\<fi>}}%
3362 \else
3363 \toks@\\expandafter{\the\toks@\\or #1}%
3364 \expandafter\bbbl@buildifcase
3365 \fi}

```

The code for additive counters is somewhat tricky and it's based on the fact the arguments just before @@ collects digits which have been left 'unused' in previous arguments, the first of them being the number of digits in the number to be converted. This explains the reverse set 76543210. Digits above 10000 are not handled yet. When the key contains the subkey .F., the number after is treated as an special case, for a fixed form (see babel-he.ini, for example).

```

3366 \newcommand\localenumeral[2]{\bbbl@cs{cntr@#1@\language}\{#2}}
3367 \def\bbbl@localecntr#1#2{\localenumeral{#2}{#1}}
3368 \newcommand\localecounter[2]{%
3369 \expandafter\bbbl@localecntr
3370 \expandafter{\number\csname c@#2\endcsname}\{#1}}
3371 \def\bbbl@alphnumeral#1#2{%
3372 \expandafter\bbbl@alphnumeral@i\number#2 76543210@@{#1}}
3373 \def\bbbl@alphnumeral@i#1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8\@@#9{%
3374 \ifcase\@car#8\@nil\or % Currenty <10000, but prepared for bigger
3375 \bbbl@alphnumeral@ii{#9}000000#1\or
3376 \bbbl@alphnumeral@ii{#9}00000#1#2\or
3377 \bbbl@alphnumeral@ii{#9}0000#1#2#3\or
3378 \bbbl@alphnumeral@ii{#9}000#1#2#3#4\else
3379 \bbbl@alphnum@invalid{>9999}%
3380 \fi}
3381 \def\bbbl@alphnumeral@ii#1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8{%
3382 \bbbl@ifunset{bbbl@cntr@#1.F.\number#5#6#7#8@\language}%
3383 {\bbbl@cs{cntr@#1.4@\language}\{#5}}
3384 {\bbbl@cs{cntr@#1.3@\language}\{#6}}
3385 {\bbbl@cs{cntr@#1.2@\language}\{#7}}
3386 {\bbbl@cs{cntr@#1.1@\language}\{#8}}
3387 \ifnum#6#7#8>\z@ % TODO. An ad hoc rule for Greek. Ugly.
3388 \bbbl@ifunset{bbbl@cntr@#1.S.321@\language}\{#9}}
3389 {\bbbl@cs{cntr@#1.S.321@\language}\{#9}}
3390 \fi}%
3391 {\bbbl@cs{cntr@#1.F.\number#5#6#7#8@\language}\{#9}}
3392 \def\bbbl@alphnum@invalid#1{%
3393 \bbbl@error{Alphabetic numeral too large (#1)}%
3394 {Currently this is the limit.}}

```

The information in the identification section can be useful, so the following macro just exposes it with a user command.

```

3395 \newcommand\localeinfo[1]{%
3396 \bbbl@ifunset{bbbl@csname bbbl@info@#1\endcsname @\language}%
3397 {\bbbl@error{I've found no info for the current locale.\\%
3398 The corresponding ini file has not been loaded\\%
3399 Perhaps it doesn't exist}%
3400 {See the manual for details.}}%
3401 {\bbbl@cs{csname bbbl@info@#1\endcsname @\language}\{#1}}
3402 % \namedef{bbbl@info@name.locale}\{lname}
3403 \namedef{bbbl@info@tag.ini}\{lini}
3404 \namedef{bbbl@info@name.english}\{elname}
3405 \namedef{bbbl@info@name.opentype}\{lname}
3406 \namedef{bbbl@info@tag.bcp47}\{tbcp}

```

```

3407 \@namedef{bbl@info@language.tag.bcp47}{lbcpr}
3408 \@namedef{bbl@info@tag.opentype}{lotf}
3409 \@namedef{bbl@info@script.name}{esname}
3410 \@namedef{bbl@info@script.name.opentype}{sname}
3411 \@namedef{bbl@info@script.tag.bcp47}{sbcp}
3412 \@namedef{bbl@info@script.tag.opentype}{sotf}
3413 \let\bbl@ensureinfo\@gobble
3414 \newcommand\BabelEnsureInfo{%
3415   \ifx\InputIfFileExists\undefined\else
3416     \def\bbl@ensureinfo##1{%
3417       \bbl@ifunset{bbl@lname@##1}{\bbl@load@info{##1}}{}}%
3418   \fi
3419   \bbl@foreach\bbl@loaded{%
3420     \def\language{##1}%
3421     \bbl@ensureinfo{##1}}}%

```

More general, but non-expandable, is `\getlocaleproperty`. To inspect every possible loaded ini, we define `\LocaleForEach`, where `\bbl@ini@loaded` is a comma-separated list of locales, built by `\bbl@read@ini`.

```

3422 \newcommand\getlocaleproperty{%
3423   \@ifstar\bbl@getproperty@s\bbl@getproperty@x}
3424 \def\bbl@getproperty@s#1#2#3{%
3425   \let#1\relax
3426   \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3{%
3427     \bbl@ifsamestring{##1/##2}{##3}%
3428     {\providecommand#1{##3}%
3429     \def\bbl@elt####1####2####3{}}}%
3430   {}}%
3431   \bbl@cs{inidata@#2}}%
3432 \def\bbl@getproperty@x#1#2#3{%
3433   \bbl@getproperty@s{#1}{#2}{#3}%
3434   \ifx#1\relax
3435     \bbl@error
3436       {Unknown key for locale '#2':\%
3437       #3\%
3438       \string#1 will be set to \relax}%
3439     {Perhaps you misspelled it.}%
3440   \fi}
3441 \let\bbl@ini@loaded\@empty
3442 \newcommand\LocaleForEach{\bbl@foreach\bbl@ini@loaded}

```

## 9 Adjusting the Babel bahavior

A generic high level interface is provided to adjust some global and general settings.

```

3443 \newcommand\babeladjust[1]{% TODO. Error handling.
3444   \bbl@forkv{#1}{%
3445     \bbl@ifunset{bbl@ADJ@##1@##2}%
3446     {\bbl@cs{ADJ@##1}{##2}}%
3447     {\bbl@cs{ADJ@##1@##2}}}%
3448 %
3449 \def\bbl@adjust@lua#1#2{%
3450   \ifvmode
3451     \ifnum\currentgrouplevel=\z@
3452       \directlua{ Babel.#2 }%
3453       \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\@gobble
3454     \fi
3455   \fi
3456   {\bbl@error % The error is gobbled if everything went ok.

```

```

3457     {Currently, #1 related features can be adjusted only\\%
3458     in the main vertical list.}%
3459     {Maybe things change in the future, but this is what it is.}}
3460 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@bidi.mirroring@on}{%
3461     \bbl@adjust@lua{bidi}{mirroring_enabled=true}}
3462 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@bidi.mirroring@off}{%
3463     \bbl@adjust@lua{bidi}{mirroring_enabled=false}}
3464 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@bidi.text@on}{%
3465     \bbl@adjust@lua{bidi}{bidi_enabled=true}}
3466 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@bidi.text@off}{%
3467     \bbl@adjust@lua{bidi}{bidi_enabled=false}}
3468 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@bidi.mapdigits@on}{%
3469     \bbl@adjust@lua{bidi}{digits_mapped=true}}
3470 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@bidi.mapdigits@off}{%
3471     \bbl@adjust@lua{bidi}{digits_mapped=false}}
3472 %
3473 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@linebreak.sea@on}{%
3474     \bbl@adjust@lua{linebreak}{sea_enabled=true}}
3475 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@linebreak.sea@off}{%
3476     \bbl@adjust@lua{linebreak}{sea_enabled=false}}
3477 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@linebreak.cjk@on}{%
3478     \bbl@adjust@lua{linebreak}{cjk_enabled=true}}
3479 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@linebreak.cjk@off}{%
3480     \bbl@adjust@lua{linebreak}{cjk_enabled=false}}
3481 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@justify.arabic@on}{%
3482     \bbl@adjust@lua{linebreak}{arabic.justify_enabled=true}}
3483 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@justify.arabic@off}{%
3484     \bbl@adjust@lua{linebreak}{arabic.justify_enabled=false}}
3485 %
3486 \def\bbl@adjust@layout#1{%
3487     \ifvmode
3488         #1%
3489     \expandafter\@gobble
3490     \fi
3491     {\bbl@error    % The error is gobbled if everything went ok.
3492     {Currently, layout related features can be adjusted only\\%
3493     in vertical mode.}%
3494     {Maybe things change in the future, but this is what it is.}}
3495 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@layout.tabular@on}{%
3496     \bbl@adjust@layout{\let\@tabular\bbl@NL@tabular}}
3497 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@layout.tabular@off}{%
3498     \bbl@adjust@layout{\let\@tabular\bbl@OL@tabular}}
3499 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@layout.lists@on}{%
3500     \bbl@adjust@layout{\let\list\bbl@NL@list}}
3501 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@layout.lists@off}{%
3502     \bbl@adjust@layout{\let\list\bbl@OL@list}}
3503 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@hyphenation.extra@on}{%
3504     \bbl@activateposthyphen}
3505 %
3506 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@autoload.bcp47@on}{%
3507     \bbl@bcpallowedtrue}
3508 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@autoload.bcp47@off}{%
3509     \bbl@bcpallowedfalse}
3510 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@autoload.bcp47.prefix}#1{%
3511     \def\bbl@bcp@prefix{#1}}
3512 \def\bbl@bcp@prefix{bcp47-}
3513 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@autoload.options}#1{%
3514     \def\bbl@autoload@options{#1}}
3515 \let\bbl@autoload@bcptoptions\@empty

```

```

3516 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@autoload.bcp47.options}#1{%
3517   \def\bbl@autoload@bcptoptions{#1}}
3518 \newif\ifbbl@bcptname
3519 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@bcp47.toname@on}{%
3520   \bbl@bcptonametrue
3521   \BabelEnsureInfo}
3522 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@bcp47.toname@off}{%
3523   \bbl@bcptonamefalse}
3524 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@prehyphenation.disable@nohyphenation}{%
3525   \directlua{ Babel.ignore_pre_char = function(node)
3526     return (node.lang == \the\csname l@nohyphenation\endcsname)
3527   end }}
3528 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@prehyphenation.disable@off}{%
3529   \directlua{ Babel.ignore_pre_char = function(node)
3530     return false
3531   end }}
3532 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@select.write@shift}{%
3533   \let\bbl@restorelastskip\relax
3534   \def\bbl@savelastskip{%
3535     \let\bbl@restorelastskip\relax
3536     \ifvmode
3537       \ifdim\lastskip=\z@
3538         \let\bbl@restorelastskip\nobreak
3539       \else
3540         \bbl@exp{%
3541           \def\\bbl@restorelastskip{%
3542             \skip@=\the\lastskip
3543             \\nobreak \vskip-\skip@ \vskip\skip@}}%
3544         \fi
3545       \fi}}
3546 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@select.write@keep}{%
3547   \let\bbl@restorelastskip\relax
3548   \let\bbl@savelastskip\relax}
3549 \@namedef{bbl@ADJ@select.write@omit}{%
3550   \let\bbl@restorelastskip\relax
3551   \def\bbl@savelastskip##1\bbl@restorelastskip{}}

```

As the final task, load the code for lua. TODO: use babel name, override

```

3552 \ifx\directlua\@undefined\else
3553   \ifx\bbl@luapatterns\@undefined
3554     \input luababel.def
3555   \fi
3556 \fi

```

Continue with  $\LaTeX$ .

```

3557 </package | core>
3558 <*package>

```

## 9.1 Cross referencing macros

The  $\LaTeX$  book states:

The *key* argument is any sequence of letters, digits, and punctuation symbols; upper- and lowercase letters are regarded as different.

When the above quote should still be true when a document is typeset in a language that has active characters, special care has to be taken of the category codes of these characters when they appear in an argument of the cross referencing macros.

When a cross referencing command processes its argument, all tokens in this argument should be character tokens with category ‘letter’ or ‘other’.

The following package options control which macros are to be redefined.

```
3559 <<{*More package options}>> ≡
3560 \DeclareOption{safe=none}{\let\bbl@opt@safe\@empty}
3561 \DeclareOption{safe=bib}{\def\bbl@opt@safe{B}}
3562 \DeclareOption{safe=ref}{\def\bbl@opt@safe{R}}
3563 <</More package options>>
```

`\@newl@bel` First we open a new group to keep the changed setting of `\protect` local and then we set the `@safe@actives` switch to true to make sure that any shorthand that appears in any of the arguments immediately expands to its non-active self.

```
3564 \bbl@trace{Cross referencing macros}
3565 \ifx\bbl@opt@safe\@empty\else
3566   \def\@newl@bel#1#2#3{%
3567     {\@safe@activestrue
3568       \bbl@ifunset{#1@#2}%
3569         \relax
3570         {\gdef\@multiplelabels{%
3571           \@latex@warning@no@line{There were multiply-defined labels}}%
3572           \@latex@warning@no@line{Label `#2' multiply defined}}%
3573       \global\@namedef{#1@#2}{#3}}}
```

`\@testdef` An internal  $\TeX$  macro used to test if the labels that have been written on the `.aux` file have changed. It is called by the `\enddocument` macro.

```
3574 \CheckCommand*\@testdef[3]{%
3575   \def\reserved@a{#3}%
3576   \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@#2\endcsname\reserved@a
3577   \else
3578     \@tempswatrue
3579   \fi}
```

Now that we made sure that `\@testdef` still has the same definition we can rewrite it. First we make the shorthands ‘safe’. Then we use `\bbl@tempa` as an ‘alias’ for the macro that contains the label which is being checked. Then we define `\bbl@tempb` just as `\@newl@bel` does it. When the label is defined we replace the definition of `\bbl@tempa` by its meaning. If the label didn’t change, `\bbl@tempa` and `\bbl@tempb` should be identical macros.

```
3580 \def\@testdef#1#2#3{% TODO. With @samestring?
3581   \@safe@activestrue
3582   \expandafter\let\expandafter\bbl@tempa\csname #1@#2\endcsname
3583   \def\bbl@tempb{#3}%
3584   \@safe@activesfalse
3585   \ifx\bbl@tempa\relax
3586   \else
3587     \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempa}%
3588   \fi
3589   \edef\bbl@tempb{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempb}%
3590   \ifx\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb
3591   \else
3592     \@tempswatrue
3593   \fi}
3594 \fi
```

`\ref` `\pageref` The same holds for the macro `\ref` that references a label and `\pageref` to reference a page. We make them robust as well (if they weren’t already) to prevent problems if they should become expanded at the wrong moment.

```
3595 \bbl@xin@{R}\bbl@opt@safe
3596 \ifin@
3597   \bbl@redefineroobust\ref#1{%
3598     \@safe@activestrue\org@ref{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
```



```

3599 \bbl@redefineroast\pageref#1{%
3600 \@safe@activetrue\org@pageref{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
3601 \else
3602 \let\org@ref\ref
3603 \let\org@pageref\pageref
3604 \fi

```

`\@citex` The macro used to cite from a bibliography, `\cite`, uses an internal macro, `\@citex`. It is this internal macro that picks up the argument(s), so we redefine this internal macro and leave `\cite` alone. The first argument is used for typesetting, so the shorthands need only be deactivated in the second argument.

```

3605 \bbl@xin@{B}\bbl@opt@safe
3606 \ifin@
3607 \bbl@redefine\@citex[#1]#2{%
3608 \@safe@activetrue\edef\@tempa{#2}\@safe@activesfalse
3609 \org@@citex[#1]{\@tempa}}

```

Unfortunately, the packages `natbib` and `cite` need a different definition of `\@citex`... To begin with, `natbib` has a definition for `\@citex` with *three* arguments... We only know that a package is loaded when `\begin{document}` is executed, so we need to postpone the different redefinition.

```

3610 \AtBeginDocument{%
3611 \ifpackageloaded{natbib}{%

```

Notice that we use `\def` here instead of `\bbl@redefine` because `\org@@citex` is already defined and we don't want to overwrite that definition (it would result in parameter stack overflow because of a circular definition).

(Recent versions of `natbib` change dynamically `\@citex`, so PR4087 doesn't seem fixable in a simple way. Just load `natbib` before.)

```

3612 \def\@citex[#1][#2]#3{%
3613 \@safe@activetrue\edef\@tempa{#3}\@safe@activesfalse
3614 \org@@citex[#1][#2]{\@tempa}}%
3615 }{}

```

The package `cite` has a definition of `\@citex` where the shorthands need to be turned off in both arguments.

```

3616 \AtBeginDocument{%
3617 \ifpackageloaded{cite}{%
3618 \def\@citex[#1]#2{%
3619 \@safe@activetrue\org@@citex[#1][#2]\@safe@activesfalse}%
3620 }{}

```

`\nocite` The macro `\nocite` which is used to instruct BiBTeX to extract uncited references from the database.

```

3621 \bbl@redefine\nocite#1{%
3622 \@safe@activetrue\org@nocite{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}

```

`\bibcite` The macro that is used in the `.aux` file to define citation labels. When packages such as `natbib` or `cite` are not loaded its second argument is used to typeset the citation label. In that case, this second argument can contain active characters but is used in an environment where `\@safe@activetrue` is in effect. This switch needs to be reset inside the `\hbox` which contains the citation label. In order to determine during `.aux` file processing which definition of `\bibcite` is needed we define `\bibcite` in such a way that it redefines itself with the proper definition. We call `\bbl@cite@choice` to select the proper definition for `\bibcite`. This new definition is then activated.

```

3623 \bbl@redefine\bibcite{%
3624 \bbl@cite@choice
3625 \bibcite}

```

`\bbl@bibcite` The macro `\bbl@bibcite` holds the definition of `\bibcite` needed when neither `natbib` nor `cite` is loaded.

```

3626 \def\bbl@bibcite#1#2{%
3627 \org@bibcite{#1}{\@safe@activesfalse#2}}

```

`\bbl@cite@choice` The macro `\bbl@cite@choice` determines which definition of `\bbl@cite` is needed. First we give `\bbl@cite` its default definition.

```
3628 \def\bbl@cite@choice{%
3629   \global\let\bbl@cite\bbl@bibcite
3630   \@ifpackageloaded{natbib}{\global\let\bbl@cite\org@bibcite}{}%
3631   \@ifpackageloaded{cite}{\global\let\bbl@cite\org@bibcite}{}%
3632   \global\let\bbl@cite@choice\relax}
```

When a document is run for the first time, no .aux file is available, and `\bbl@cite` will not yet be properly defined. In this case, this has to happen before the document starts.

```
3633 \AtBeginDocument{\bbl@cite@choice}
```

`\@bibitem` One of the two internal  $\TeX$  macros called by `\bibitem` that write the citation label on the .aux file.

```
3634 \bbl@redefine\@bibitem#1{%
3635   \@safe@activetrue\org@bibitem{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
3636 \else
3637   \let\org@nocite\nocite
3638   \let\org@@citex\@citex
3639   \let\org@bibcite\bbl@bibcite
3640   \let\org@bibitem\@bibitem
3641 \fi
```

## 9.2 Marks

`\markright` Because the output routine is asynchronous, we must pass the current language attribute to the head lines. To achieve this we need to adapt the definition of `\markright` and `\markboth` somewhat. However, headlines and footlines can contain text outside marks; for that we must take some actions in the output routine if the 'headfoot' options is used. We need to make some redefinitions to the output routine to avoid an endless loop and to correctly handle the page number in bidi documents.

```
3642 \bbl@trace{Marks}
3643 \IfBabelLayout{sectioning}
3644   {\ifx\bbl@opt@headfoot\@nnil
3645     \g@addto@macro\@resetactivechars{%
3646       \set@typeset@protect
3647       \expandafter\select@language@x\expandafter{\bbl@main@language}%
3648       \let\protect\noexpand
3649       \ifcase\bbl@bidimode\else % Only with bidi. See also above
3650         \edef\thepage{%
3651           \noexpand\babelsublr{\unexpanded\expandafter{\thepage}}}%
3652       \fi}%
3653   \fi}
3654 {\ifbbl@single\else
3655   \bbl@ifunset{markright }{\bbl@redefine\bbl@redefineroobust
3656     \markright#1{%
3657       \bbl@ifblank{#1}%
3658       {\org@markright{}}}%
3659     {\toks@{#1}%
3660      \bbl@exp{%
3661        \org@markright{\protect\foreignlanguage{\language}\thepage}%
3662        {\protect\bbl@restore@actives\the\toks@}}}%
3663   }
```

`\markboth` The definition of `\markboth` is equivalent to that of `\markright`, except that we need two token registers. The documentclasses report and book define and set the headings for the page. While doing so they also store a copy of `\markboth` in `\@mkboth`. Therefore we need to check whether `\@mkboth` has already been set. If so we need to do that again with the new definition of `\markboth`. (As of Oct 2019,  $\TeX$  stores the definition in an intermediate macro, so it's not necessary anymore, but it's preserved for older versions.)

```

3663 \ifx\@mkboth\markboth
3664 \def\bbl@tempc{\let\@mkboth\markboth}
3665 \else
3666 \def\bbl@tempc{}
3667 \fi
3668 \bbl@ifunset{markboth }\bbl@redefine\bbl@redefineroobust
3669 \markboth#1#2{%
3670 \protected@edef\bbl@tempb##1{%
3671 \protect\foreignlanguage
3672 {\language}\protect\bbl@restore@actives##1}}%
3673 \bbl@ifblank{#1}%
3674 {\toks@{}}%
3675 {\toks@\expandafter{\bbl@tempb{#1}}}%
3676 \bbl@ifblank{#2}%
3677 {\@temptokena{}}%
3678 {\@temptokena\expandafter{\bbl@tempb{#2}}}%
3679 \bbl@exp{\@org@markboth{\the\toks@}{\the\@temptokena}}
3680 \bbl@tempc
3681 \fi} % end ifbbl@single, end \IfBabelLayout

```

## 9.3 Preventing clashes with other packages

### 9.3.1 ifthen

`\ifthenelse` Sometimes a document writer wants to create a special effect depending on the page a certain fragment of text appears on. This can be achieved by the following piece of code:

```

\ifthenelse{\isodd{\pageref{some:label}}}{
  {code for odd pages}
}{code for even pages}

```

In order for this to work the argument of `\isodd` needs to be fully expandable. With the above redefinition of `\pageref` it is not in the case of this example. To overcome that, we add some code to the definition of `\ifthenelse` to make things work.

We want to revert the definition of `\pageref` and `\ref` to their original definition for the first argument of `\ifthenelse`, so we first need to store their current meanings.

Then we can set the `\@safe@actives` switch and call the original `\ifthenelse`. In order to be able to use shorthands in the second and third arguments of `\ifthenelse` the resetting of the switch *and* the definition of `\pageref` happens inside those arguments.

```

3682 \bbl@trace{Preventing clashes with other packages}
3683 \bbl@xin@{R}\bbl@opt@safe
3684 \ifin@
3685 \AtBeginDocument{%
3686 \@ifpackageloaded{ifthen}{%
3687 \bbl@redefine@long\ifthenelse#1#2#3{%
3688 \let\bbl@temp@pref\pageref
3689 \let\pageref\org@pageref
3690 \let\bbl@temp@ref\ref
3691 \let\ref\org@ref
3692 \@safe@activestrue
3693 \org@ifthenelse{#1}%
3694 {\let\pageref\bbl@temp@pref
3695 \let\ref\bbl@temp@ref
3696 \@safe@activesfalse
3697 #2}%
3698 {\let\pageref\bbl@temp@pref
3699 \let\ref\bbl@temp@ref
3700 \@safe@activesfalse

```

```

3701         #3}%
3702     }%
3703 }{}%
3704 }

```

### 9.3.2 varioref

`\@@vpageref` When the package `varioref` is in use we need to modify its internal command `\@@vpageref` in order to prevent problems when an active character ends up in the argument of `\vref`. The same needs to happen for `\vrefpagenum`.

```

3705 \AtBeginDocument{%
3706   \ifpackageloaded{varioref}{%
3707     \bbl@redefine\@@vpageref#1[#2]#3{%
3708       \@safe@activetrue
3709       \org@@vpageref{#1}[#2]{#3}%
3710       \@safe@activesfalse}%
3711     \bbl@redefine\vrefpagenum#1#2{%
3712       \@safe@activetrue
3713       \org\vrefpagenum{#1}{#2}%
3714       \@safe@activesfalse}%

```

The package `varioref` defines `\Ref` to be a robust command which uppercases the first character of the reference text. In order to be able to do that it needs to access the expandable form of `\ref`. So we employ a little trick here. We redefine the (internal) command `\Ref` to call `\org@ref` instead of `\ref`. The disadvantage of this solution is that whenever the definition of `\Ref` changes, this definition needs to be updated as well.

```

3715   \expandafter\def\csname Ref\endcsname#1{%
3716     \protected@edef\@tempa{\org@ref{#1}}\expandafter\MakeUppercase\@tempa}
3717   }{}%
3718 }
3719 \fi

```

### 9.3.3 hhline

`\hhline` Delaying the activation of the shorthand characters has introduced a problem with the `hhline` package. The reason is that it uses the ‘`:`’ character which is made active by the french support in `babel`. Therefore we need to *reload* the package when the ‘`:`’ is an active character. Note that this happens *after* the category code of the `@`-sign has been changed to other, so we need to temporarily change it to letter again.

```

3720 \AtEndOfPackage{%
3721   \AtBeginDocument{%
3722     \ifpackageloaded{hhline}%
3723     {\expandafter\ifx\csname normal@char\string\endcsname\relax
3724       \else
3725         \makeatletter
3726         \def\@currname{hhline}\input{hhline.sty}\makeatother
3727         \fi}%
3728     {}}}

```

`\substitutefontfamily` Deprecated. Use the tools provided by  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . The command `\substitutefontfamily` creates an `.fd` file on the fly. The first argument is an encoding mnemonic, the second and third arguments are font family names.

```

3729 \def\substitutefontfamily#1#2#3{%
3730   \lowercase{\immediate\openout15=#1#2.fd\relax}%
3731   \immediate\write15{%
3732     \string\ProvidesFile{#1#2.fd}%
3733     [\the\year/\two@digits{\the\month}/\two@digits{\the\day}
3734     \space generated font description file]^^J

```

```

3735 \string\DeclareFontFamily{#1}{#2}{}}^^J
3736 \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{n}{<->ssub * #3/m/n}{}}^^J
3737 \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{it}{<->ssub * #3/m/it}{}}^^J
3738 \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{sl}{<->ssub * #3/m/sl}{}}^^J
3739 \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{sc}{<->ssub * #3/m/sc}{}}^^J
3740 \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{n}{<->ssub * #3/bx/n}{}}^^J
3741 \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{it}{<->ssub * #3/bx/it}{}}^^J
3742 \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{sl}{<->ssub * #3/bx/sl}{}}^^J
3743 \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{sc}{<->ssub * #3/bx/sc}{}}^^J
3744 }%
3745 \closeout15
3746 }
3747 \@onlypreamble\substitutefontfamily

```

## 9.4 Encoding and fonts

Because documents may use non-ASCII font encodings, we make sure that the logos of  $\TeX$  and  $\LaTeX$  always come out in the right encoding. There is a list of non-ASCII encodings. Requested encodings are currently stored in `\fontenc@load@list`. If a non-ASCII has been loaded, we define versions of `\TeX` and `\LaTeX` for them using `\ensureascii`. The default ASCII encoding is set, too (in reverse order): the “main” encoding (when the document begins), the last loaded, or OT1.

`\ensureascii`

```

3748 \bbl@trace{Encoding and fonts}
3749 \newcommand\BabelNonASCII{LGR,X2,OT2,OT3,OT6,LHE,LWN,LMA,LMC,LMS,LMU}
3750 \newcommand\BabelNonText{TS1,T3,TS3}
3751 \let\org@TeX\TeX
3752 \let\org@LaTeX\LaTeX
3753 \let\ensureascii@firstofone
3754 \AtBeginDocument{%
3755   \def\elt#1{,#1,}%
3756   \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@gobbletwo\fontenc@load@list}%
3757   \let\elt\relax
3758   \let\bbl@tempb\@empty
3759   \def\bbl@tempc{OT1}%
3760   \bbl@foreach\BabelNonASCII{% LGR loaded in a non-standard way
3761     \bbl@ifunset{T@#1}{\def\bbl@tempb{#1}}}%
3762   \bbl@foreach\bbl@tempa{%
3763     \bbl@xin@{#1}{\BabelNonASCII}%
3764     \ifin@
3765       \def\bbl@tempb{#1}% Store last non-ascii
3766     \else\bbl@xin@{#1}{\BabelNonText}% Pass
3767       \ifin@
3768         \def\bbl@tempc{#1}% Store last ascii
3769       \fi
3770     \fi}%
3771   \ifx\bbl@tempb\@empty\else
3772     \bbl@xin@{\cf@encoding,}{\BabelNonASCII,\BabelNonText,}%
3773     \ifin@
3774       \def\bbl@tempc{\cf@encoding}% The default if ascii wins
3775     \fi
3776     \edef\ensureascii#1{%
3777       {\noexpand\fontencoding{\bbl@tempc}\noexpand\selectfont#1}}%
3778     \DeclareTextCommandDefault{\TeX}{\ensureascii{\org@TeX}}%
3779     \DeclareTextCommandDefault{\LaTeX}{\ensureascii{\org@LaTeX}}%
3780   \fi}

```

Now comes the old deprecated stuff (with a little change in 3.9l, for `fontspec`). The first thing we need to do is to determine, at `\begin{document}`, which latin fontencoding to use.

`\latinencoding` When text is being typeset in an encoding other than ‘latin’ (OT1 or T1), it would be nice to still have Roman numerals come out in the Latin encoding. So we first assume that the current encoding at the end of processing the package is the Latin encoding.

```
3781 \AtEndOfPackage{\edef\latinencoding{\cf@encoding}}
```

But this might be overruled with a later loading of the package `fontenc`. Therefore we check at the execution of `\begin{document}` whether it was loaded with the T1 option. The normal way to do this (using `\ifpackageloaded`) is disabled for this package. Now we have to revert to parsing the internal macro `\@filelist` which contains all the filenames loaded.

```
3782 \AtBeginDocument{%
3783   \@ifpackageloaded{fontspec}%
3784     {\xdef\latinencoding{%
3785       \ifx\UTFencname\undefined
3786         EU\ifcase\bbl@engine\or2\or1\fi
3787       \else
3788         \UTFencname
3789       \fi}}%
3790   {\gdef\latinencoding{OT1}%
3791     \ifx\cf@encoding\bbl@t@one
3792       \xdef\latinencoding{\bbl@t@one}%
3793     \else
3794       \def\@elt#1{,#1,}%
3795       \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@gobbletwo\@fontenc@load@list}%
3796       \let\@elt\relax
3797       \bbl@xin@{,T1,}\bbl@tempa
3798       \ifin@
3799         \xdef\latinencoding{\bbl@t@one}%
3800       \fi
3801     \fi}}
```

`\latintext` Then we can define the command `\latintext` which is a declarative switch to a latin font-encoding. Usage of this macro is deprecated.

```
3802 \DeclareRobustCommand{\latintext}{%
3803   \fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
3804   \def\encodingdefault{\latinencoding}}
```

`\textlatin` This command takes an argument which is then typeset using the requested font encoding. In order to avoid many encoding switches it operates in a local scope.

```
3805 \ifx\@undefined\DeclareTextFontCommand
3806   \DeclareRobustCommand{\textlatin}[1]{\leavevmode{\latintext #1}}
3807 \else
3808   \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textlatin}{\latintext}
3809 \fi
```

For several functions, we need to execute some code with `\selectfont`. With  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2021-06-01, there is a hook for this purpose, but in older versions the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  command is patched (the latter solution will be eventually removed).

```
3810 \bbl@ifformatlater{2021-06-01}%
3811   {\def\bbl@patchfont#1{\AddToHook{selectfont}{#1}}}
3812   {\def\bbl@patchfont#1{%
3813     \expandafter\bbl@add\csname selectfont \endcsname{#1}%
3814     \expandafter\bbl@tglobal\csname selectfont \endcsname}}
```

## 9.5 Basic bidi support

**Work in progress.** This code is currently placed here for practical reasons. It will be moved to the correct place soon, I hope.

It is loosely based on `rlbabel.def`, but most of it has been developed from scratch. This `babel` module (by Johannes Braams and Boris Lavva) has served the purpose of typesetting R documents for two decades, and despite its flaws I think it is still a good starting point (some parts have been copied here almost verbatim), partly thanks to its simplicity. I've also looked at `ARAB` (by Youssef Jabri), which is compatible with `babel`.

There are two ways of modifying macros to make them “bidi”, namely, by patching the internal low-level macros (which is what I have done with lists, columns, counters, tocs, much like `rlbabel` did), and by introducing a “middle layer” just below the user interface (sectioning, footnotes).

- `pdfTeX` provides a minimal support for bidi text, and it must be done by hand. Vertical typesetting is not possible.
- `xetex` is somewhat better, thanks to its font engine (even if not always reliable) and a few additional tools. However, very little is done at the paragraph level. Another challenging problem is text direction does not honour  $\TeX$  grouping.
- `luatex` can provide the most complete solution, as we can manipulate almost freely the node list, the generated lines, and so on, but bidi text does not work out of the box and some development is necessary. It also provides tools to properly set left-to-right and right-to-left page layouts. As `Lua $\TeX$ -ja` shows, vertical typesetting is possible, too.

```

3815 \bbl@trace{Loading basic (internal) bidi support}
3816 \ifodd\bbl@engine
3817 \else % TODO. Move to txtbabel
3818   \ifnum\bbl@bidimode>100 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode<200
3819     \bbl@error
3820     {The bidi method 'basic' is available only in\\%
3821      luatex. I'll continue with 'bidi=default', so\\%
3822      expect wrong results}%
3823     {See the manual for further details.}%
3824   \let\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
3825   \AtEndOfPackage{%
3826     \EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}%
3827     \bbl@xebidipar}
3828 \fi\fi
3829 \def\bbl@loadxebidi#1{%
3830   \ifx\RTLfootnotetext\@undefined
3831     \AtEndOfPackage{%
3832       \EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}%
3833       \ifx\fontspec\@undefined
3834         \bbl@loadfontspec % bidi needs fontspec
3835       \fi
3836       \usepackage#1{bidi}}%
3837   \fi}
3838 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode>200
3839   \ifcase\expandafter\@gobbletwo\the\bbl@bidimode\or
3840     \bbl@tentative{bidi=bidi}
3841     \bbl@loadxebidi{}
3842   \or
3843     \bbl@loadxebidi{[rldocument]}
3844   \or
3845     \bbl@loadxebidi{}
3846   \fi
3847 \fi
3848 \fi
3849 % TODO? Separate:
3850 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode=\@ne
3851   \let\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
3852   \ifodd\bbl@engine
3853     \newattribute\bbl@attr@dir
3854     \directlua{ Babel.attr_dir = luatexbase.registernumber'bbl@attr@dir' }

```

```

3855 \bbl@exp{\output{\bodydir\pagedir\the\output}}
3856 \fi
3857 \AtEndOfPackage{%
3858 \EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}%
3859 \ifodd\bbl@engine\else
3860 \bbl@xebidipar
3861 \fi}
3862 \fi

```

Now come the macros used to set the direction when a language is switched. First the (mostly) common macros.

```

3863 \bbl@trace{Macros to switch the text direction}
3864 \def\bbl@alscripts{,Arabic,Syriac,Thaana,}
3865 \def\bbl@rscripts{% TODO. Base on codes ??
3866 ,Imperial Aramaic,Avestan,Cypriot,Hatran,Hebrew,%
3867 Old Hungarian,Old Hungarian,Lydian,Mandaean,Manichaeen,%
3868 Manichaeen,Meroitic Cursive,Meroitic,Old North Arabian,%
3869 Nabataean,N'Ko,Orkhon,Palmyrene,Inscriptional Pahlavi,%
3870 Psalter Pahlavi,Phoenician,Inscriptional Parthian,Samaritan,%
3871 Old South Arabian,}%
3872 \def\bbl@provide@dirs#1{%
3873 \bbl@xin@{\csname bbl@sname@#1\endcsname}{\bbl@alscripts\bbl@rscripts}%
3874 \ifin@
3875 \global\bbl@csarg\chardef{wdir@#1}\@ne
3876 \bbl@xin@{\csname bbl@sname@#1\endcsname}{\bbl@alscripts}%
3877 \ifin@
3878 \global\bbl@csarg\chardef{wdir@#1}\tw@ % useless in xetex
3879 \fi
3880 \else
3881 \global\bbl@csarg\chardef{wdir@#1}\z@
3882 \fi
3883 \ifodd\bbl@engine
3884 \bbl@csarg\ifcase{wdir@#1}%
3885 \directlua{ Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].texmdir = 'l' }%
3886 \or
3887 \directlua{ Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].texmdir = 'r' }%
3888 \or
3889 \directlua{ Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].texmdir = 'al' }%
3890 \fi
3891 \fi}
3892 \def\bbl@switchdir{%
3893 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@lsys@\languagename}{\bbl@provide@lsys{\languagename}}{}%
3894 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@wdir@\languagename}{\bbl@provide@dirs{\languagename}}{}%
3895 \bbl@exp{\bbl@setdirs\bbl@cl{wdir}}%
3896 \def\bbl@setdirs#1{% TODO - math
3897 \ifcase\bbl@select@type % TODO - strictly, not the right test
3898 \bbl@bodydir{#1}%
3899 \bbl@pdir{#1}%
3900 \fi
3901 \bbl@texmdir{#1}}
3902 % TODO. Only if \bbl@bidimode > 0?:
3903 \AddBabelHook{babel-bidi}{afterextras}{\bbl@switchdir}
3904 \DisableBabelHook{babel-bidi}

```

Now the engine-dependent macros. TODO. Must be moved to the engine files.

```

3905 \ifodd\bbl@engine % luatex=1
3906 \else % pdftex=0, xetex=2
3907 \newcount\bbl@dirlevel
3908 \chardef\bbl@thetextdir\z@

```



```

3909 \chardef\bbl@thepardir\z@
3910 \def\bbl@textdir#1{%
3911   \ifcase#1\relax
3912     \chardef\bbl@thetextdir\z@
3913     \bbl@textdir@i\beginL\endL
3914   \else
3915     \chardef\bbl@thetextdir\@ne
3916     \bbl@textdir@i\beginR\endR
3917   \fi}
3918 \def\bbl@textdir@i#1#2{%
3919   \ifhmode
3920     \ifnum\currentgrouplevel>\z@
3921       \ifnum\currentgrouplevel=\bbl@dirlevel
3922         \bbl@error{Multiple bidi settings inside a group}%
3923         {I'll insert a new group, but expect wrong results.}%
3924         \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup
3925       \else
3926         \ifcase\currentgrouptype\or % 0 bottom
3927           \aftergroup#2% 1 simple {}
3928         \or
3929           \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup % 2 hbox
3930         \or
3931           \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup % 3 adj hbox
3932         \or\or\or % vbox vtop align
3933         \or
3934           \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup % 7 noalign
3935         \or\or\or\or\or\or % output math disc insert vcent mathchoice
3936         \or
3937           \aftergroup#2% 14 \begingroup
3938         \else
3939           \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup % 15 adj
3940         \fi
3941       \fi
3942       \bbl@dirlevel\currentgrouplevel
3943     \fi
3944     #1%
3945   \fi}
3946 \def\bbl@pardir#1{\chardef\bbl@thepardir#1\relax}
3947 \let\bbl@bodydir\@gobble
3948 \let\bbl@pagedir\@gobble
3949 \def\bbl@dirparastext{\chardef\bbl@thepardir\bbl@thetextdir}

```

The following command is executed only if there is a right-to-left script (once). It activates the `\everypar` hack for xetex, to properly handle the par direction. Note text and par dirs are decoupled to some extent (although not completely).

```

3950 \def\bbl@xebidipar{%
3951   \let\bbl@xebidipar\relax
3952   \TeXeTstate\@ne
3953   \def\bbl@xeeverypar{%
3954     \ifcase\bbl@thepardir
3955       \ifcase\bbl@thetextdir\else\beginR\fi
3956     \else
3957       {\setbox\z@\lastbox\beginR\box\z@}%
3958     \fi}%
3959   \let\bbl@severypar\everypar
3960   \newtoks\everypar
3961   \everypar=\bbl@severypar
3962   \bbl@severypar{\bbl@xeeverypar\the\everypar}}
3963 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode>200

```

```

3964 \let\bbl@textdir@i@gobbletwo
3965 \let\bbl@xebidipar@empty
3966 \AddBabelHook{bidi}{foreign}{%
3967   \def\bbl@tempa{\def\BabelText####1}%
3968   \ifcase\bbl@thetextdir
3969     \expandafter\bbl@tempa\expandafter{\BabelText\LR{##1}}}%
3970   \else
3971     \expandafter\bbl@tempa\expandafter{\BabelText\RL{##1}}}%
3972   \fi}
3973 \def\bbl@pardir#1{\ifcase#1\relax\setLR\else\setRL\fi}
3974 \fi
3975 \fi

A tool for weak L (mainly digits). We also disable warnings with hyperref.

3976 \DeclareRobustCommand\babelsublr[1]{\leavevmode\bbl@textdir\z@#1}}
3977 \AtBeginDocument{%
3978   \ifx\pdfstringdefDisableCommands\undefined\else
3979     \ifx\pdfstringdefDisableCommands\relax\else
3980       \pdfstringdefDisableCommands{\let\babelsublr\@firstofone}%
3981     \fi
3982   \fi}

```

## 9.6 Local Language Configuration

`\loadlocalcfg` At some sites it may be necessary to add site-specific actions to a language definition file. This can be done by creating a file with the same name as the language definition file, but with the extension `.cfg`. For instance the file `norsk.cfg` will be loaded when the language definition file `norsk.ldf` is loaded.

For plain-based formats we don't want to override the definition of `\loadlocalcfg` from `plain.def`.

```

3983 \bbl@trace{Local Language Configuration}
3984 \ifx\loadlocalcfg\undefined
3985   \@ifpackagewith{babel}{noconfigs}%
3986   {\let\loadlocalcfg@gobble}%
3987   {\def\loadlocalcfg#1{%
3988     \InputIfFileExists{#1.cfg}%
3989     {\typeout{*****^J
3990               * Local config file #1.cfg used^^J
3991               *}}}%
3992   \@empty}}
3993 \fi

```

## 9.7 Language options

Languages are loaded when processing the corresponding option *except* if a main language has been set. In such a case, it is not loaded until all options has been processed. The following macro inputs the `ldf` file and does some additional checks (`\input` works, too, but possible errors are not caught).

```

3994 \bbl@trace{Language options}
3995 \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
3996 \let\BabelModifiers\relax
3997 \let\bbl@loaded@empty
3998 \def\bbl@load@language#1{%
3999   \InputIfFileExists{#1.ldf}%
4000   {\edef\bbl@loaded{\CurrentOption
4001     \ifx\bbl@loaded@empty\else,\bbl@loaded\fi}%
4002     \expandafter\let\expandafter\bbl@afterlang
4003       \csname\CurrentOption.ldf-h@k\endcsname
4004     \expandafter\let\expandafter\BabelModifiers
4005       \csname bbl@mod@\CurrentOption\endcsname}%

```

```

4006 {\bbl@error{%
4007     Unknown option '\CurrentOption'. Either you misspelled it\\%
4008     or the language definition file \CurrentOption.ldf was not found}%}
4009     Valid options are, among others: shorthands=, KeepShorthandsActive,\\%
4010     activeacute, activegrave, noconfigs, safe=, main=, math=\\%
4011     headfoot=, strings=, config=, hyphenmap=, or a language name.}}

```

Now, we set a few language options whose names are different from ldf files. These declarations are preserved for backwards compatibility, but they must be eventually removed. Use proxy files instead.

```

4012 \def\bbl@try@load@lang#1#2#3{%
4013     \IfFileExists{\CurrentOption.ldf}%
4014     {\bbl@load@language{\CurrentOption}}}%
4015     {#1\bbl@load@language{#2}#3}}
4016 %
4017 \DeclareOption{hebrew}{%
4018     \input{rlbabel.def}%
4019     \bbl@load@language{hebrew}}
4020 \DeclareOption{hungarian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{magyar}{}}
4021 \DeclareOption{lowersorbian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{lsorbian}{}}
4022 \DeclareOption{nynorsk}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{norsk}{}}
4023 \DeclareOption{polutonikogreek}{%
4024     \bbl@try@load@lang{}{greek}{\languageattribute{greek}{polutoniko}}}
4025 \DeclareOption{russian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{russianb}{}}
4026 \DeclareOption{ukrainian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{ukraineb}{}}
4027 \DeclareOption{uppersorbian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{usorbian}{}}

```

Another way to extend the list of ‘known’ options for babel was to create the file `bblopts.cfg` in which one can add option declarations. However, this mechanism is deprecated – if you want an alternative name for a language, just create a new `.ldf` file loading the actual one. You can also set the name of the file with the package option `config=<name>`, which will load `<name>.cfg` instead.

```

4028 \ifx\bbl@opt@config\@nnil
4029     \@ifpackagewith{babel}{noconfigs}{}%
4030     {\InputIfFileExists{bblopts.cfg}%
4031         {\typeout{*****^J%
4032             * Local config file bblopts.cfg used^^J%
4033             *}}}%
4034     }{}%
4035 \else
4036     \InputIfFileExists{\bbl@opt@config.cfg}%
4037     {\typeout{*****^J%
4038         * Local config file \bbl@opt@config.cfg used^^J%
4039         *}}}%
4040     {\bbl@error{%
4041         Local config file '\bbl@opt@config.cfg' not found}%}
4042     Perhaps you misspelled it.}}%
4043 \fi

```

Recognizing global options in packages not having a closed set of them is not trivial, as for them to be processed they must be defined explicitly. So, package options not yet taken into account and stored in `bbl@language@opts` are assumed to be languages. If not declared above, the names of the option and the file are the same. We first pre-process the class and package options to determine the main language, which is processed in the third ‘main’ pass, *except* if all files are ldf *and* there is no main key. In the latter case (`\bbl@opt@main` is still `\@nnil`), the traditional way to set the main language is kept — the last loaded is the main language.

```

4044 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil
4045     \ifnum\bbl@iniflag>\z@ % if all ldf's: set implicitly, no main pass
4046         \let\bbl@tempb\@empty
4047         \edef\bbl@tempa{\@classoptionslist,\bbl@language@opts}%

```

```

4048 \bbl@foreach\bbl@tempa{\edef\bbl@tempb{#1,\bbl@tempb}}%
4049 \bbl@foreach\bbl@tempb{% \bbl@tempb is a reversed list
4050 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil % ie, if not yet assigned
4051 \ifodd\bbl@iniflag % = *=
4052 \IfFileExists{babel-#1.tex}{\def\bbl@opt@main{#1}}{}%
4053 \else % n +=
4054 \IfFileExists{#1.ldf}{\def\bbl@opt@main{#1}}{}%
4055 \fi
4056 \fi}%
4057 \fi
4058 \fi

```

A few languages are still defined explicitly. They are stored in case they are needed in the ‘main’ pass (the value can be \relax).

```

4059 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil\else
4060 \bbl@csarg\let{loadmain\expandafter}\csname ds@\bbl@opt@main\endcsname
4061 \expandafter\let\csname ds@\bbl@opt@main\endcsname\relax
4062 \fi

```

Now define the corresponding loaders. With package options, assume the language exists. With class options, check if the option is a language by checking if the correspondin file exists.

```

4063 \bbl@foreach\bbl@language@opts{%
4064 \def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
4065 \ifx\bbl@tempa\bbl@opt@main\else
4066 \bbl@ifunset{ds@#1}%
4067 {\ifnum\bbl@iniflag<\tw@ % 0 0 (other = ldf)
4068 \DeclareOption{#1}{\bbl@load@language{#1}}%
4069 \else % + * (other = ini)
4070 \DeclareOption{#1}{%
4071 \bbl@ldfinit
4072 \babelprovide[import]{#1}%
4073 \bbl@afterldf{}}%
4074 \fi}%
4075 {}%
4076 \fi}
4077 \bbl@foreach\@classoptionslist{%
4078 \def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
4079 \ifx\bbl@tempa\bbl@opt@main\else
4080 \bbl@ifunset{ds@#1}%
4081 {\ifnum\bbl@iniflag<\tw@ % 0 0 (other = ldf)
4082 \IfFileExists{#1.ldf}%
4083 {\DeclareOption{#1}{\bbl@load@language{#1}}}%
4084 {}%
4085 \else % + * (other = ini)
4086 \IfFileExists{babel-#1.tex}%
4087 {\DeclareOption{#1}{%
4088 \bbl@ldfinit
4089 \babelprovide[import]{#1}%
4090 \bbl@afterldf{}}}%
4091 {}%
4092 \fi}%
4093 {}%
4094 \fi}

```

And we are done, because all options for this pass has been declared. Those already processed in the first pass are just ignored.

The options have to be processed in the order in which the user specified them (but remember class options are processes before):

```

4095 \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1{%

```

```

4096 \bbl@ifsamestring\CurrentOption{#1}{\global\bbl@add\bbl@afterlang}{}}
4097 \DeclareOption*{}
4098 \ProcessOptions*

```

This finished the second pass. Now the third one begins, which loads the main language set with the key main. A warning is raised if the main language is not the same as the last named one, or if the value of the key main is not a language. With some options in provide, the package luatexbase is loaded (and immediately used), and therefore \babelprovide can't go inside a \DeclareOption; this explains why it's executed directly, with a dummy declaration. Then all languages have been loaded, so we deactivate \AfterBabelLanguage.

```

4099 \bbl@trace{Option 'main'}
4100 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil
4101 \edef\bbl@tempa{\@classoptionslist,\bbl@language@opts}
4102 \let\bbl@tempc\@empty
4103 \bbl@for\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa{%
4104   \bbl@xin@{,\bbl@tempb,}{,\bbl@loaded,}%
4105   \ifin@{\edef\bbl@tempc{\bbl@tempb}\fi}
4106 \def\bbl@tempa#1,#2\@nnil{\def\bbl@tempb{#1}}
4107 \expandafter\bbl@tempa\bbl@loaded,\@nnil
4108 \ifx\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempc\else
4109   \bbl@warning{%
4110     Last declared language option is '\bbl@tempc',\%
4111     but the last processed one was '\bbl@tempb'.\%
4112     The main language can't be set as both a global\%
4113     and a package option. Use 'main=\bbl@tempc' as\%
4114     option. Reported}
4115 \fi
4116 \else
4117 \ifodd\bbl@iniflag % case 1,3 (main is ini)
4118   \bbl@ldfinit
4119   \let\CurrentOption\bbl@opt@main
4120   \bbl@exp{% \bbl@opt@provide = empty if *
4121     \\\babelprovide[\bbl@opt@provide,import,main]{\bbl@opt@main}}%
4122   \bbl@afterldf{}
4123   \DeclareOption{\bbl@opt@main}{}
4124 \else % case 0,2 (main is ldf)
4125   \ifx\bbl@loadmain\relax
4126     \DeclareOption{\bbl@opt@main}{\bbl@load@language{\bbl@opt@main}}
4127   \else
4128     \DeclareOption{\bbl@opt@main}{\bbl@loadmain}
4129   \fi
4130   \ExecuteOptions{\bbl@opt@main}
4131   \@namedef{ds@\bbl@opt@main}{}%
4132 \fi
4133 \DeclareOption*{}
4134 \ProcessOptions*
4135 \fi
4136 \def\AfterBabelLanguage{%
4137   \bbl@error
4138   {Too late for \string\AfterBabelLanguage}%
4139   {Languages have been loaded, so I can do nothing}}

```

In order to catch the case where the user didn't specify a language we check whether \bbl@main@language, has become defined. If not, the nil language is loaded.

```

4140 \ifx\bbl@main@language\@undefined
4141   \bbl@info{%
4142     You haven't specified a language. I'll use 'nil'\%
4143     as the main language. Reported}
4144   \bbl@load@language{nil}

```

```

4145 \fi
4146 \</package>

```

## 10 The kernel of Babel (babel.def, common)

The kernel of the babel system is currently stored in babel.def. The file babel.def contains most of the code. The file hyphen.cfg is a file that can be loaded into the format, which is necessary when you want to be able to switch hyphenation patterns.

Because plain T<sub>E</sub>X users might want to use some of the features of the babel system too, care has to be taken that plain T<sub>E</sub>X can process the files. For this reason the current format will have to be checked in a number of places. Some of the code below is common to plain T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, some of it is for the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X case only.

Plain formats based on etex (etex, xetex, luatex) don't load hyphen.cfg but etex.src, which follows a different naming convention, so we need to define the babel names. It presumes language.def exists and it is the same file used when formats were created.

A proxy file for switch.def

```

4147 <*kernel>
4148 \let\bbl@onlyswitch\@empty
4149 \input babel.def
4150 \let\bbl@onlyswitch\@undefined
4151 </kernel>
4152 <*patterns>

```

## 11 Loading hyphenation patterns

The following code is meant to be read by iniT<sub>E</sub>X because it should instruct T<sub>E</sub>X to read hyphenation patterns. To this end the docstrip option patterns is used to include this code in the file hyphen.cfg. Code is written with lower level macros.

```

4153 <<Make sure ProvidesFile is defined>>
4154 \ProvidesFile{hyphen.cfg}[<<date>> <<version>> Babel hyphens]
4155 \xdef\bbl@format{\jobname}
4156 \def\bbl@version{<<version>>}
4157 \def\bbl@date{<<date>>}
4158 \ifx\AtBeginDocument\@undefined
4159   \def\@empty{}
4160 \fi
4161 <<Define core switching macros>>

```

`\process@line` Each line in the file language.dat is processed by `\process@line` after it is read. The first thing this macro does is to check whether the line starts with =. When the first token of a line is an =, the macro `\process@synonym` is called; otherwise the macro `\process@language` will continue.

```

4162 \def\process@line#1#2 #3 #4 {%
4163   \ifx=#1%
4164     \process@synonym{#2}%
4165   \else
4166     \process@language{#1#2}{#3}{#4}%
4167   \fi
4168   \ignorespaces}

```

`\process@synonym` This macro takes care of the lines which start with an =. It needs an empty token register to begin with. `\bbl@languages` is also set to empty.

```

4169 \toks@{}
4170 \def\bbl@languages{}

```

When no languages have been loaded yet, the name following the = will be a synonym for hyphenation register 0. So, it is stored in a token register and executed when the first pattern file has been processed. (The `\relax` just helps to the `\if` below catching synonyms without a language.)

Otherwise the name will be a synonym for the language loaded last.  
We also need to copy the hyphenmin parameters for the synonym.

```

4171 \def\process@synonym#1{%
4172   \ifnum\last@language=\m@ne
4173     \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@\relax\process@synonym{#1}}%
4174   \else
4175     \expandafter\chardef\csname l@#1\endcsname\last@language
4176     \wlog{\string\l@#1=\string\language\the\last@language}%
4177     \expandafter\let\csname #1hyphenmins\expandafter\endcsname
4178       \csname\language\name hyphenmins\endcsname
4179     \let\bbl@elt\relax
4180     \edef\bbl@languages{\bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{\the\last@language}{}}}%
4181   \fi}

```

`\process@language` The macro `\process@language` is used to process a non-empty line from the ‘configuration file’. It has three arguments, each delimited by white space. The first argument is the ‘name’ of a language; the second is the name of the file that contains the patterns. The optional third argument is the name of a file containing hyphenation exceptions.

The first thing to do is call `\addlanguage` to allocate a pattern register and to make that register ‘active’. Then the pattern file is read.

For some hyphenation patterns it is needed to load them with a specific font encoding selected. This can be specified in the file `language.dat` by adding for instance ‘:T1’ to the name of the language.

The macro `\bbl@get@enc` extracts the font encoding from the language name and stores it in `\bbl@hyph@enc`. The latter can be used in hyphenation files if you need to set a behavior depending on the given encoding (it is set to empty if no encoding is given).

Pattern files may contain assignments to `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.  $\TeX$  does not keep track of these assignments. Therefore we try to detect such assignments and store them in the `\langle lang \rangle hyphenmins` macro. When no assignments were made we provide a default setting.

Some pattern files contain changes to the `\lccode` en `\uccode` arrays. Such changes should remain local to the language; therefore we process the pattern file in a group; the `\patterns` command acts globally so its effect will be remembered.

Then we globally store the settings of `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` and close the group. When the hyphenation patterns have been processed we need to see if a file with hyphenation exceptions needs to be read. This is the case when the third argument is not empty and when it does not contain a space token. (Note however there is no need to save hyphenation exceptions into the format.)

`\bbl@languages` saves a snapshot of the loaded languages in the form

`\bbl@elt{\langle language-name \rangle}{\langle number \rangle}{\langle patterns-file \rangle}{\langle exceptions-file \rangle}`. Note the last 2 arguments are empty in ‘dialects’ defined in `language.dat` with `=`. Note also the language name can have encoding info.

Finally, if the counter `\language` is equal to zero we execute the synonyms stored.

```

4182 \def\process@language#1#2#3{%
4183   \expandafter\addlanguage\csname l@#1\endcsname
4184   \expandafter\language\csname l@#1\endcsname
4185   \edef\language\name{#1}%
4186   \bbl@hook@everylanguage{#1}%
4187   % > luatex
4188   \bbl@get@enc#1::\@@@
4189   \begin{group}
4190     \lefthyphenmin\m@ne
4191     \bbl@hook@loadpatterns{#2}%
4192     % > luatex
4193     \ifnum\lefthyphenmin=\m@ne
4194     \else
4195       \expandafter\xdef\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname{%
4196         \the\lefthyphenmin\the\righthyphenmin}%
4197     \fi
4198   \end{group}

```

```

4199 \def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
4200 \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty\else
4201   \bbl@hook@loadexceptions{#3}%
4202   % > luatex
4203 \fi
4204 \let\bbl@elt\relax
4205 \edef\bbl@languages{%
4206   \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{\the\language}{#2}{\bbl@tempa}}%
4207 \ifnum\the\language=\z@
4208   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
4209     \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@@\relax
4210   \else
4211     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
4212     \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname
4213   \fi
4214   \the\toks@
4215   \toks@{}}%
4216 \fi}

```

\bbl@get@enc The macro \bbl@get@enc extracts the font encoding from the language name and stores it in  
\bbl@hyph@enc \bbl@hyph@enc. It uses delimited arguments to achieve this.

```

4217 \def\bbl@get@enc#1:#2:#3\@@{\def\bbl@hyph@enc{#2}}

```

Now, hooks are defined. For efficiency reasons, they are dealt here in a special way. Besides luatex, format-specific configuration files are taken into account. loadkernel currently loads nothing, but define some basic macros instead.

```

4218 \def\bbl@hook@everylanguage#1{}
4219 \def\bbl@hook@loadpatterns#1{\input #1\relax}
4220 \let\bbl@hook@loadexceptions\bbl@hook@loadpatterns
4221 \def\bbl@hook@loadkernel#1{%
4222   \def\addlanguage{\csname newlanguage\endcsname}%
4223   \def\adddialect##1##2{%
4224     \global\chardef##1##2\relax
4225     \wlog{\string##1 = a dialect from \string\language##2}}%
4226   \def\iflanguage##1{%
4227     \expandafter\ifx\csname l@##1\endcsname\relax
4228       \@nolanerr{##1}%
4229     \else
4230       \ifnum\csname l@##1\endcsname=\language
4231         \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\@firstoftwo
4232       \else
4233         \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\@secondoftwo
4234       \fi
4235     \fi}%
4236   \def\providehyphenmins##1##2{%
4237     \expandafter\ifx\csname ##1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
4238       \@namedef{##1hyphenmins}{##2}%
4239     \fi}%
4240   \def\set@hyphenmins##1##2{%
4241     \lefthyphenmin##1\relax
4242     \righthyphenmin##2\relax}%
4243   \def\selectlanguage{%
4244     \errhelp{Selecting a language requires a package supporting it}%
4245     \errmessage{Not loaded}}%
4246   \let\foreignlanguage\selectlanguage
4247   \let\otherlanguage\selectlanguage
4248   \expandafter\let\csname otherlanguage*\endcsname\selectlanguage
4249   \def\bbl@usehooks##1##2{% TODO. Temporary!!

```



```

4250 \def\setlocale{%
4251   \errhelp{Find an armchair, sit down and wait}%
4252   \errmessage{Not yet available}}%
4253 \let\uselocale\setlocale
4254 \let\locale\setlocale
4255 \let\selectlocale\setlocale
4256 \let\localename\setlocale
4257 \let\textlocale\setlocale
4258 \let\textlanguage\setlocale
4259 \let\language\setlocale}
4260 \begingroup
4261 \def\AddBabelHook#1#2{%
4262   \expandafter\ifx\csname bbl@hook@#2\endcsname\relax
4263     \def\next{\toks1}%
4264     \else
4265       \def\next{\expandafter\gdef\csname bbl@hook@#2\endcsname###1}%
4266       \fi
4267     \next}
4268 \ifx\directlua\undefined
4269   \ifx\XeTeXinputencoding\undefined\else
4270     \input xebabel.def
4271     \fi
4272   \else
4273     \input luababel.def
4274     \fi
4275   \openin1 = babel-\bbl@format.cfg
4276   \ifeof1
4277     \else
4278       \input babel-\bbl@format.cfg\relax
4279       \fi
4280   \closein1
4281 \endgroup
4282 \bbl@hook@loadkernel{switch.def}

```

`\readconfigfile` The configuration file can now be opened for reading.

```

4283 \openin1 = language.dat

```

See if the file exists, if not, use the default hyphenation file `hyphen.tex`. The user will be informed about this.

```

4284 \def\language{english}%
4285 \ifeof1
4286   \message{I couldn't find the file language.dat,\space
4287     I will try the file hyphen.tex}
4288   \input hyphen.tex\relax
4289   \chardef\l@english\z@
4290 \else

```

Pattern registers are allocated using count register `\last@language`. Its initial value is 0. The definition of the macro `\newlanguage` is such that it first increments the count register and then defines the language. In order to have the first patterns loaded in pattern register number 0 we initialize `\last@language` with the value  $-1$ .

```

4291 \last@language\m@ne

```

We now read lines from the file until the end is found. While reading from the input, it is useful to switch off recognition of the end-of-line character. This saves us stripping off spaces from the contents of the control sequence.

```

4292 \loop
4293   \endlinechar\m@ne
4294   \read1 to \bbl@line
4295   \endlinechar\^^M

```

If the file has reached its end, exit from the loop here. If not, empty lines are skipped. Add 3 space characters to the end of `\bbl@line`. This is needed to be able to recognize the arguments of `\process@line` later on. The default language should be the very first one.

```
4296 \if T\ifeof1F\fi T\relax
4297 \ifx\bbl@line\@empty\else
4298 \edef\bbl@line{\bbl@line\space\space\space}%
4299 \expandafter\process@line\bbl@line\relax
4300 \fi
4301 \repeat
```

Check for the end of the file. We must reverse the test for `\ifeof` without `\else`. Then reactivate the default patterns, and close the configuration file.

```
4302 \begingroup
4303 \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{%
4304 \global\language=#2\relax
4305 \gdef\language#1}%
4306 \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{}}%
4307 \bbl@languages
4308 \endgroup
4309 \fi
4310 \closein1
```

We add a message about the fact that babel is loaded in the format and with which language patterns to the `\everyjob` register.

```
4311 \if/\the\toks@/\else
4312 \errhelp{language.dat loads no language, only synonyms}
4313 \errmessage{Orphan language synonym}
4314 \fi
```

Also remove some macros from memory and raise an error if `\toks@` is not empty. Finally load `switch.def`, but the latter is not required and the line inputting it may be commented out.

```
4315 \let\bbl@line\@undefined
4316 \let\process@line\@undefined
4317 \let\process@synonym\@undefined
4318 \let\process@language\@undefined
4319 \let\bbl@get@enc\@undefined
4320 \let\bbl@hyph@enc\@undefined
4321 \let\bbl@tempa\@undefined
4322 \let\bbl@hook@loadkernel\@undefined
4323 \let\bbl@hook@everylanguage\@undefined
4324 \let\bbl@hook@loadpatterns\@undefined
4325 \let\bbl@hook@loadexceptions\@undefined
4326 \patterns)
```

Here the code for `iniTEX` ends.

## 12 Font handling with fontspec

Add the bidi handler just before `luaotfload`, which is loaded by default by LaTeX. Just in case, consider the possibility it has not been loaded. First, a couple of definitions related to bidi [misplaced].

```
4327 <<*More package options>> ≡
4328 \chardef\bbl@bidimode\z@
4329 \DeclareOption{bidi=default}{\chardef\bbl@bidimode=\@ne}
4330 \DeclareOption{bidi=basic}{\chardef\bbl@bidimode=101 }
4331 \DeclareOption{bidi=basic-r}{\chardef\bbl@bidimode=102 }
4332 \DeclareOption{bidi=bidi}{\chardef\bbl@bidimode=201 }
4333 \DeclareOption{bidi=bidi-r}{\chardef\bbl@bidimode=202 }
4334 \DeclareOption{bidi=bidi-l}{\chardef\bbl@bidimode=203 }
4335 <</More package options>>
```

With explicit languages, we could define the font at once, but we don't. Just wait and see if the language is actually activated. `bbl@font` replaces hardcoded font names inside `\..family` by the corresponding macro `\..default`.

At the time of this writing, `fontspec` shows a warning about there are languages not available, which some people think refers to `babel`, even if there is nothing wrong. Here is hack to patch `fontspec` to avoid the misleading message, which is replaced by a more explanatory one.

```

4336 <<*Font selection>> ≡
4337 \bbl@trace{Font handling with fontspec}
4338 \ifx\ExplSyntaxOn\undefined\else
4339   \ExplSyntaxOn
4340   \catcode`\ =10
4341   \def\bbl@loadfontspec{%
4342     \usepackage{fontspec}% TODO. Apply patch always
4343     \expandafter
4344     \def\csname msg-text->~fontspec/language-not-exist\endcsname##1##2##3##4{%
4345       Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' is using the\\%
4346       default features for language '##1'.\\%
4347       That's usually fine, because many languages\\%
4348       require no specific features, but if the output is\\%
4349       not as expected, consider selecting another font.}
4350     \expandafter
4351     \def\csname msg-text->~fontspec/no-script\endcsname##1##2##3##4{%
4352       Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' is using the\\%
4353       default features for script '##2'.\\%
4354       That's not always wrong, but if the output is\\%
4355       not as expected, consider selecting another font.}}
4356   \ExplSyntaxOff
4357 \fi
4358 \@onlypreamble\babelfont
4359 \newcommand\babelfont[2][{}]{% 1=langs/scripts 2=fam
4360   \bbl@foreach{#1}{%
4361     \expandafter\ifx\csname date##1\endcsname\relax
4362       \IfFileExists{babel-##1.tex}%
4363         {\babelprovide{##1}}%
4364         {}%
4365     \fi}%
4366   \edef\bbl@tempa{#1}%
4367   \def\bbl@tempb{#2}% Used by \bbl@bblfont
4368   \ifx\fontspec\undefined
4369     \bbl@loadfontspec
4370   \fi
4371   \EnableBabelHook{babel-fontspec}% Just calls \bbl@switchfont
4372   \bbl@bblfont}
4373 \newcommand\bbl@bblfont[2][{}]{% 1=features 2=fontname, @font=rm|sf|tt
4374   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@tempb family}%
4375     {\bbl@providfam{\bbl@tempb}}%
4376     {}%
4377   % For the default font, just in case:
4378   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@lsys@\languagename}{\bbl@provide@lsys{\languagename}}{%
4379     \expandafter\bbl@ifblank\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}%
4380     {\bbl@csarg\edef{\bbl@tempb dflt@}{<>{#1}{#2}}% save \bbl@rmdflt@
4381     \bbl@exp{%
4382       \let<\bbl@\bbl@tempb dflt@\languagename>\<\bbl@\bbl@tempb dflt@>%
4383       \\\bbl@font@set<\bbl@\bbl@tempb dflt@\languagename>%
4384       \<\bbl@tempb default>\<\bbl@tempb family>}}%
4385     {\bbl@foreach\bbl@tempa{% ie \bbl@rmdflt@lang / *scrt
4386       \bbl@csarg\def{\bbl@tempb dflt@##1}{<>{#1}{#2}}}}}%

```

If the family in the previous command does not exist, it must be defined. Here is how:

```

4387 \def\bbl@providefam#1{%
4388   \bbl@exp{%
4389     \\\newcommand\<#1default>{}% Just define it
4390     \\\bbl@add@list\\bbl@font@fams{#1}%
4391     \\\DeclareRobustCommand\<#1family>{%
4392       \\\not@math@alphabet\<#1family>\relax
4393       % \\\prepare@family@series@update{#1}\<#1default>% TODO. Fails
4394       \\\fontfamily\<#1default>%
4395       \<ifx>\\UseHooks\\@undefined\<else>\\UseHook{#1family}\<fi>%
4396       \\\selectfont}%
4397       \\\DeclareTextFontCommand{\<text#1>}{\<#1family>}}

```

The following macro is activated when the hook babel-fontspec is enabled. But before, we define a macro for a warning, which sets a flag to avoid duplicate them.

```

4398 \def\bbl@nostdfont#1{%
4399   \bbl@ifunset{bbl@WFF@f@family}%
4400   {\bbl@csarg\gdef{WFF@f@family}}{% Flag, to avoid dupl warns
4401     \bbl@infowarn{The current font is not a babel standard family:\%
4402       #1%
4403       \fontname\font\\%
4404       There is nothing intrinsically wrong with this warning, and\\%
4405       you can ignore it altogether if you do not need these\\%
4406       families. But if they are used in the document, you should be\\%
4407       aware 'babel' will no set Script and Language for them, so\\%
4408       you may consider defining a new family with \string\babelfont.\\%
4409       See the manual for further details about \string\babelfont.\\%
4410       Reported}}
4411   {}}%
4412 \gdef\bbl@switchfont{%
4413   \bbl@ifunset{bbl@lsys@language}{\bbl@provide@lsys{language}}{%
4414     \bbl@exp{% eg Arabic -> arabic
4415       \lowercase{\edef\\bbl@tempa{\bbl@cl{sname}}}}%
4416     \bbl@foreach\bbl@font@fams{%
4417       \bbl@ifunset{bbl@##1dflt@language}% (1) language?
4418       {\bbl@ifunset{bbl@##1dflt@*\bbl@tempa}% (2) from script?
4419         {\bbl@ifunset{bbl@##1dflt@}% 2=F - (3) from generic?
4420           {}% 123=F - nothing!
4421           {\bbl@exp{% 3=T - from generic
4422             \global\let\<bbl@##1dflt@language>%
4423             \<bbl@##1dflt@>}}}%
4424           {\bbl@exp{% 2=T - from script
4425             \global\let\<bbl@##1dflt@language>%
4426             \<bbl@##1dflt@*\bbl@tempa>}}}%
4427           {}}% 1=T - language, already defined
4428     \def\bbl@tempa{\bbl@nostdfont}}}%
4429     \bbl@foreach\bbl@font@fams{% don't gather with prev for
4430       \bbl@ifunset{bbl@##1dflt@language}%
4431       {\bbl@cs{famrst@##1}%
4432         \global\bbl@csarg\let{famrst@##1}\relax}%
4433       {\bbl@exp{% order is relevant. TODO: but sometimes wrong!
4434         \\\bbl@add\\originalTeX{%
4435           \\\bbl@font@rst{\bbl@cl{##1dflt}}%
4436           \<##1default>\<##1family>{##1}}%
4437           \\\bbl@font@set\<bbl@##1dflt@language>% the main part!
4438           \<##1default>\<##1family>}}}%
4439       \bbl@ifrestoring{{\bbl@tempa}}%

```

The following is executed at the beginning of the aux file or the document to warn about fonts not defined with \babelfont.

```

4440 \ifx\fbfamily\undefined\else % if latex
4441 \ifcase\bbl@engine % if pdftex
4442 \let\bbl@cckstdfonts\relax
4443 \else
4444 \def\bbl@cckstdfonts{%
4445 \begingroup
4446 \global\let\bbl@cckstdfonts\relax
4447 \let\bbl@tempa\@empty
4448 \bbl@foreach\bbl@font@fams{%
4449 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@##1dflt@}%
4450 {\nameuse{##1family}%
4451 \bbl@csarg\gdef{WFF@\fbfamily}}}% Flag
4452 \bbl@exp{\bbl@add\bbl@tempa{* \<##1family>= \fbfamily\\}%
4453 \space\space\fontname\font\\}%
4454 \bbl@csarg\xdef{##1dflt@}{\fbfamily}%
4455 \expandafter\xdef\csname ##1default\endcsname{\fbfamily}%
4456 {}}%
4457 \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty\else
4458 \bbl@infowarn{The following font families will use the default\\%
4459 settings for all or some languages:\\%
4460 \bbl@tempa
4461 There is nothing intrinsically wrong with it, but\\%
4462 'babel' will no set Script and Language, which could\\%
4463 be relevant in some languages. If your document uses\\%
4464 these families, consider redefining them with \string\babelfont.\\%
4465 Reported}%
4466 \fi
4467 \endgroup}
4468 \fi
4469 \fi

```

Now the macros defining the font with fontspec.

When there are repeated keys in fontspec, the last value wins. So, we just place the ini settings at the beginning, and user settings will take precedence. We must deactivate temporarily \bbl@mapselect because \selectfont is called internally when a font is defined.

```

4470 \def\bbl@font@set#1#2#3{% eg \bbl@rmdflt@lang \rmdefault \rmfamily
4471 \bbl@xin@{<>}{#1}%
4472 \ifin@
4473 \bbl@exp{\bbl@fontspec@set\#1\expandafter@gobbletwo#1\#3}%
4474 \fi
4475 \bbl@exp{%
4476 \def\#2#1% eg, \rmdefault{\bbl@rmdflt@lang}
4477 \bbl@ifsamestring{#2}{\fbfamily}%
4478 {\#3%
4479 \bbl@ifsamestring{\fbseries}{\bfdefault}{\bfseries}}}%
4480 \let\bbl@tempa\relax}%
4481 {}}}
4482 % TODO - next should be global?, but even local does its job. I'm
4483 % still not sure -- must investigate:
4484 \def\bbl@fontspec@set#1#2#3#4{% eg \bbl@rmdflt@lang fnt-opt fnt-nme \xxfamily
4485 \let\bbl@tempa\bbl@mapselect
4486 \let\bbl@mapselect\relax
4487 \let\bbl@tempa@fam#4% eg, '\rmfamily', to be restored below
4488 \let#4\@empty % Make sure \renewfontfamily is valid
4489 \bbl@exp{%
4490 \let\bbl@tempa@pfam\<\bbl@stripslash#4\space>% eg, '\rmfamily '
4491 \<keys_if_exist:nnF>{fontspec-opentype}{Script/\bbl@cl{sname}}}%
4492 {\newfontscript{\bbl@cl{sname}}{\bbl@cl{sotf}}}%
4493 \<keys_if_exist:nnF>{fontspec-opentype}{Language/\bbl@cl{lname}}}%

```

```

4494     {\newfontlanguage{\bbl@cl{lname}}{\bbl@cl{lotf}}}%
4495     \renewfontfamily\#4%
4496     [\bbl@cl{lsys},#2]{#3}% ie \bbl@exp{..}{#3}
4497 \begingroup
4498     #4%
4499     \xdef#1{\f@family}%      eg, \bbl@rmdflt@lang{FreeSerif(0)}
4500 \endgroup
4501 \let#4\bbl@temp@fam
4502 \bbl@exp{\let\<\bbl@stripslash#4\space>}\bbl@temp@pfam
4503 \let\bbl@mapselect\bbl@tempe}%

```

font@rst and famrst are only used when there is no global settings, to save and restore de previous families. Not really necessary, but done for optimization.

```

4504 \def\bbl@font@rst#1#2#3#4{%
4505   \bbl@csarg\def{famrst@#4}{\bbl@font@set{#1}#2#3}}

```

The default font families. They are eurocentric, but the list can be expanded easily with \babelfont.

```

4506 \def\bbl@font@fams{rm,sf,tt}

```

The old tentative way. Short and preverved for compatibility, but deprecated. Note there is no direct alternative for \babelFSfeatures. The reason in explained in the user guide, but essentially – that was not the way to go :-).

```

4507 \newcommand\babelFSstore[2][{%
4508   \bbl@ifblank{#1}%
4509   {\bbl@csarg\def{sname@#2}{Latin}}%
4510   {\bbl@csarg\def{sname@#2}{#1}}%
4511   \bbl@provide@dirs{#2}%
4512   \bbl@csarg\ifnum{wdir@#2}>\z@
4513     \let\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
4514     \EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}%
4515   \fi
4516   \bbl@foreach{#2}{%
4517     \bbl@FSstore{##1}{rm}\rmdefault\bbl@save@rmdefault
4518     \bbl@FSstore{##1}{sf}\sfdefault\bbl@save@sfdefault
4519     \bbl@FSstore{##1}{tt}\ttdefault\bbl@save@ttdefault}}
4520 \def\bbl@FSstore#1#2#3#4{%
4521   \bbl@csarg\edef{#2default#1}{#3}%
4522   \expandafter\addto\csname extras#1\endcsname{%
4523     \let#4#3%
4524     \ifx#3\f@family
4525       \edef#3{\csname bbl@#2default#1\endcsname}%
4526       \fontfamily{#3}\selectfont
4527     \else
4528       \edef#3{\csname bbl@#2default#1\endcsname}%
4529     \fi}%
4530   \expandafter\addto\csname noextras#1\endcsname{%
4531     \ifx#3\f@family
4532       \fontfamily{#4}\selectfont
4533     \fi
4534     \let#3#4}}
4535 \let\bbl@langfeatures\@empty
4536 \def\babelFSfeatures{% make sure \fontspec is redefined once
4537   \let\bbl@ori@fontspec\fontspec
4538   \renewcommand\fontspec[1][{%
4539     \bbl@ori@fontspec[\bbl@langfeatures##1]}
4540   \let\babelFSfeatures\bbl@FSfeatures
4541   \babelFSfeatures}
4542 \def\bbl@FSfeatures#1#2{%
4543   \expandafter\addto\csname extras#1\endcsname{%

```

```

4544 \babel@save\bbl@langfeatures
4545 \edef\bbl@langfeatures{#2,}}
4546 <</Font selection>>

```

## 13 Hooks for XeTeX and LuaTeX

### 13.1 XeTeX

Unfortunately, the current encoding cannot be retrieved and therefore it is reset always to utf8, which seems a sensible default.

```

4547 <<{*Footnote changes}>> ≡
4548 \bbl@trace{Bidi footnotes}
4549 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode>\z@
4550 \def\bbl@footnote#1#2#3{%
4551   \@ifnextchar[%
4552     {\bbl@footnote@o{#1}{#2}{#3}}%
4553     {\bbl@footnote@x{#1}{#2}{#3}}}
4554 \long\def\bbl@footnote@x#1#2#3#4{%
4555   \bgroup
4556   \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
4557   \bbl@fn@footnote{#2#1{\ignorespaces#4}#3}%
4558   \egroup}
4559 \long\def\bbl@footnote@o#1#2#3[#4]#5{%
4560   \bgroup
4561   \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
4562   \bbl@fn@footnote[#4]{#2#1{\ignorespaces#5}#3}%
4563   \egroup}
4564 \def\bbl@footnotetext#1#2#3{%
4565   \@ifnextchar[%
4566     {\bbl@footnotetext@o{#1}{#2}{#3}}%
4567     {\bbl@footnotetext@x{#1}{#2}{#3}}}
4568 \long\def\bbl@footnotetext@x#1#2#3#4{%
4569   \bgroup
4570   \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
4571   \bbl@fn@footnotetext{#2#1{\ignorespaces#4}#3}%
4572   \egroup}
4573 \long\def\bbl@footnotetext@o#1#2#3[#4]#5{%
4574   \bgroup
4575   \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
4576   \bbl@fn@footnotetext[#4]{#2#1{\ignorespaces#5}#3}%
4577   \egroup}
4578 \def\BabelFootnote#1#2#3#4{%
4579   \ifx\bbl@fn@footnote\@undefined
4580     \let\bbl@fn@footnote\footnote
4581   \fi
4582   \ifx\bbl@fn@footnotetext\@undefined
4583     \let\bbl@fn@footnotetext\footnotetext
4584   \fi
4585   \bbl@ifblank{#2}%
4586     {\def#1{\bbl@footnote{\@firstofone}{#3}{#4}}
4587     \@namedef{\bbl@stripslash#1text}%
4588     {\bbl@footnotetext{\@firstofone}{#3}{#4}}}%
4589     {\def#1{\bbl@exp{\bbl@footnote{\foreignlanguage{#2}}}{#3}{#4}}%
4590     \@namedef{\bbl@stripslash#1text}%
4591     {\bbl@exp{\bbl@footnotetext{\foreignlanguage{#2}}}{#3}{#4}}}%
4592 \fi
4593 <</Footnote changes>>

```

Now, the code.

```
4594 (*xetex)
4595 \def\BabelStringsDefault{unicode}
4596 \let\xebbl@stop\relax
4597 \AddBabelHook{xetex}{encodedcommands}{%
4598   \def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
4599   \ifx\bbl@tempa@empty
4600     \XeTeXinputencoding"bytes"%
4601   \else
4602     \XeTeXinputencoding"#1"%
4603   \fi
4604   \def\xebbl@stop{\XeTeXinputencoding"utf8"}}
4605 \AddBabelHook{xetex}{stopcommands}{%
4606   \xebbl@stop
4607   \let\xebbl@stop\relax}
4608 \def\bbl@intraspace#1 #2 #3\@@{%
4609   \bbl@csarg\gdef{xeisp@\language}%
4610     {\XeTeXlinebreakskip #1em plus #2em minus #3em\relax}}
4611 \def\bbl@intrapenalty#1\@@{%
4612   \bbl@csarg\gdef{xeipn@\language}%
4613     {\XeTeXlinebreakpenalty #1\relax}}
4614 \def\bbl@provide@intraspace{%
4615   \bbl@xin{/s}{/\bbl@cl{lnbrk}}%
4616   \ifin@else\bbl@xin{/c}{/\bbl@cl{lnbrk}}\fi
4617   \ifin@
4618     \bbl@ifunset{bbl@intsp@\language}{}%
4619     {\expandafter\ifx\csname bbl@intsp@\language\endcsname\@empty\else
4620       \ifx\bbl@KVP@intraspace\@nil
4621         \bbl@exp{%
4622           \bbl@intraspace\bbl@cl{intsp}\@@}%
4623         \fi
4624         \ifx\bbl@KVP@intrapenalty\@nil
4625           \bbl@intrapenalty0\@@
4626         \fi
4627       \fi
4628       \ifx\bbl@KVP@intraspace\@nil\else % We may override the ini
4629         \expandafter\bbl@intraspace\bbl@KVP@intraspace\@@
4630       \fi
4631       \ifx\bbl@KVP@intrapenalty\@nil\else
4632         \expandafter\bbl@intrapenalty\bbl@KVP@intrapenalty\@@
4633       \fi
4634       \bbl@exp{%
4635         % TODO. Execute only once (but redundant):
4636         \bbl@add\<extras\language>{%
4637           \XeTeXlinebreaklocale "\bbl@cl{tbcpr}"%
4638           \<bbl@xeisp@\language>%
4639           \<bbl@xeipn@\language>%
4640           \bbl@toglobal\<extras\language>%
4641           \bbl@add\<noextras\language>{%
4642             \XeTeXlinebreaklocale "en"%
4643             \bbl@toglobal\<noextras\language>%
4644           \ifx\bbl@ispace\@undefined
4645             \gdef\bbl@ispace{\bbl@cl{xeisp}}%
4646             \ifx\AtBeginDocument\@notprerr
4647               \expandafter\@secondoftwo % to execute right now
4648             \fi
4649             \AtBeginDocument{\bbl@patchfont{\bbl@ispace}}%
4650           \fi}%
```



```

4651 \fi}
4652 \ifx\DisableBabelHook\undefined\endinput\fi
4653 \AddBabelHook{babel-fontspec}{afterextras}{\bbl@switchfont}
4654 \AddBabelHook{babel-fontspec}{beforestart}{\bbl@ckeckstdfonts}
4655 \DisableBabelHook{babel-fontspec}
4656 <<Font selection>>
4657 \input txtbabel.def
4658 </xetex>

```

## 13.2 Layout

*In progress.*

Note elements like headlines and margins can be modified easily with packages like fancyhdr, typearea or titleps, and geometry.

\bbl@startskip and \bbl@endskip are available to package authors. Thanks to the T<sub>E</sub>X expansion mechanism the following constructs are valid: \adim\bbl@startskip, \advance\bbl@startskip\adim, \bbl@startskip\adim.

Consider txtbabel as a shorthand for *tex-xet babel*, which is the bidi model in both pdftex and xetex.

```

4659 (*texxet)
4660 \providecommand\bbl@provide@intraspace{}
4661 \bbl@trace{Redefinitions for bidi layout}
4662 \def\bbl@sspre@caption{%
4663   \bbl@exp{\everyhbox{\bbl@textdir\bbl@cs{wdir@\bbl@main@language}}}}
4664 \ifx\bbl@opt@layout\@nnil\endinput\fi % No layout
4665 \def\bbl@startskip{\ifcase\bbl@thepardir\leftskip\else\rightskip\fi}
4666 \def\bbl@endskip{\ifcase\bbl@thepardir\rightskip\else\leftskip\fi}
4667 \ifx\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode % A poor test for bidi=
4668   \def\hangfrom#1{%
4669     \setbox\@tempboxa\hbox{#1}%
4670     \hangindent\ifcase\bbl@thepardir\wd\@tempboxa\else-\wd\@tempboxa\fi
4671     \noindent\box\@tempboxa}
4672 \def\raggedright{%
4673   \let\@centercr
4674   \bbl@startskip\z@skip
4675   \@rightskip\@flushglue
4676   \bbl@endskip\@rightskip
4677   \parindent\z@
4678   \parfillskip\bbl@startskip}
4679 \def\raggedleft{%
4680   \let\@centercr
4681   \bbl@startskip\@flushglue
4682   \bbl@endskip\z@skip
4683   \parindent\z@
4684   \parfillskip\bbl@endskip}
4685 \fi
4686 \IfBabelLayout{lists}
4687 {\bbl@sreplace\list
4688   {\@totalleftmargin\leftmargin}{\@totalleftmargin\bbl@listleftmargin}%
4689   \def\bbl@listleftmargin{%
4690     \ifcase\bbl@thepardir\leftmargin\else\rightmargin\fi}%
4691   \ifcase\bbl@engine
4692     \def\labelenumii{}\theenumii{}\% pdfTeX doesn't reverse ()
4693     \def\p@enumiii{\p@enumii}\theenumii{}\%
4694   \fi
4695   \bbl@sreplace\@verbatim
4696   {\leftskip\@totalleftmargin}%
4697   {\bbl@startskip\textwidth
4698     \advance\bbl@startskip-\linewidth}%

```

```

4699 \bbl@sreplace\@verbatim
4700 {\rightskip\z@skip}%
4701 {\bbl@endskip\z@skip}}%
4702 {}
4703 \IfBabelLayout{contents}
4704 {\bbl@sreplace\@dottedtocline{\leftskip}{\bbl@startskip}%
4705 \bbl@sreplace\@dottedtocline{\rightskip}{\bbl@endskip}}
4706 {}
4707 \IfBabelLayout{columns}
4708 {\bbl@sreplace\@outputdblcol{\hb@xt@\textwidth}{\bbl@outputbox}%
4709 \def\bbl@outputbox#1{%
4710 \hb@xt@\textwidth{%
4711 \hskip\columnwidth
4712 \hfil
4713 {\normalcolor\vrule \@width\columnseprule}%
4714 \hfil
4715 \hb@xt@\columnwidth{\box\@leftcolumn \hss}%
4716 \hskip-\textwidth
4717 \hb@xt@\columnwidth{\box\@outputbox \hss}%
4718 \hskip\columnsep
4719 \hskip\columnwidth}}}%
4720 {}
4721 <<Footnote changes>>
4722 \IfBabelLayout{footnotes}%
4723 {\BabelFootnote\footnote\language\language{}{}}%
4724 \BabelFootnote\localfootnote\language\language{}{}}%
4725 \BabelFootnote\mainfootnote{}{}}{}
4726 {}

```

Implicitly reverses sectioning labels in bidi=basic, because the full stop is not in contact with L numbers any more. I think there must be a better way.

```

4727 \IfBabelLayout{counters}%
4728 {\let\bbl@latinarabic=\@arabic
4729 \def\@arabic#1{\babelsublr{\bbl@latinarabic#1}}%
4730 \let\bbl@asciroman=\@roman
4731 \def\@roman#1{\babelsublr{\ensureascii{\bbl@asciroman#1}}}%
4732 \let\bbl@asciiRoman=\@Roman
4733 \def\@Roman#1{\babelsublr{\ensureascii{\bbl@asciiRoman#1}}}{}}
4734 </texxet>

```

### 13.3 LuaTeX

The loader for luatex is based solely on language.dat, which is read on the fly. The code shouldn't be executed when the format is build, so we check if \AddBabelHook is defined. Then comes a modified version of the loader in hyphen.cfg (without the hyphenmins stuff, which is under the direct control of babel).

The names \l@<language> are defined and take some value from the beginning because all ldf files assume this for the corresponding language to be considered valid, but patterns are not loaded (except the first one). This is done later, when the language is first selected (which usually means when the ldf finishes). If a language has been loaded, \bbl@hyphendata@<num> exists (with the names of the files read).

The default setup preloads the first language into the format. This is intended mainly for 'english', so that it's available without further intervention from the user. To avoid duplicating it, the following rule applies: if the "0th" language and the first language in language.dat have the same name then just ignore the latter. If there are new synonymous, they are added, but note if the language patterns have not been preloaded they won't at run time.

Other preloaded languages could be read twice, if they have been preloaded into the format. This is not optimal, but it shouldn't happen very often – with luatex patterns are best loaded when the document is typeset, and the "0th" language is preloaded just for backwards compatibility.

As of 1.1b, lua(e)tex is taken into account. Formerly, loading of patterns on the fly didn't work in this format, but with the new loader it does. Unfortunately, the format is not based on babel, and data could be duplicated, because languages are reassigned above those in the format (nothing serious, anyway). Note even with this format language.dat is used (under the principle of a single source), instead of language.def.

Of course, there is room for improvements, like tools to read and reassign languages, which would require modifying the language list, and better error handling.

We need catcode tables, but no format (targeted by babel) provide a command to allocate them (although there are packages like ctablestack). FIX - This isn't true anymore. For the moment, a dangerous approach is used - just allocate a high random number and cross the fingers. To complicate things, etex.sty changes the way languages are allocated.

This files is read at three places: (1) when plain.def, babel.sty starts, to read the list of available languages from language.dat (for the base option); (2) at hyphen.cfg, to modify some macros; (3) in the middle of plain.def and babel.sty, by babel.def, with the commands and other definitions for luatex (eg, \babelpatterns).

```

4735 (*luatex)
4736 \ifx\AddBabelHook\undefined % When plain.def, babel.sty starts
4737 \bbl@trace{Read language.dat}
4738 \ifx\bbl@readstream\undefined
4739   \csname newread\endcsname\bbl@readstream
4740 \fi
4741 \begingroup
4742   \toks@{}
4743   \count@ \z@ % 0=start, 1=0th, 2=normal
4744   \def\bbl@process@line#1#2 #3 #4 {%
4745     \ifx=#1%
4746       \bbl@process@synonym{#2}%
4747     \else
4748       \bbl@process@language{#1#2}{#3}{#4}%
4749     \fi
4750     \ignorespaces}
4751   \def\bbl@manylang{%
4752     \ifnum\bbl@last>\@ne
4753       \bbl@info{Non-standard hyphenation setup}%
4754     \fi
4755     \let\bbl@manylang\relax}
4756   \def\bbl@process@language#1#2#3{%
4757     \ifcase\count@
4758       \ifundefined{zth#1}{\count@\tw@}{\count@\@ne}%
4759     \or
4760       \count@\tw@
4761     \fi
4762     \ifnum\count@=\tw@
4763       \expandafter\addlanguage\csname l@#1\endcsname
4764       \language\allocationnumber
4765       \chardef\bbl@last\allocationnumber
4766       \bbl@manylang
4767       \let\bbl@elt\relax
4768       \xdef\bbl@languages{%
4769         \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{\the\language}{#2}{#3}}%
4770     \fi
4771     \the\toks@
4772     \toks@{}}
4773   \def\bbl@process@synonym@aux#1#2{%
4774     \global\expandafter\chardef\csname l@#1\endcsname#2\relax
4775     \let\bbl@elt\relax
4776     \xdef\bbl@languages{%
4777       \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{#2}{}}}%

```

```

4778 \def\bbl@process@synonym#1{%
4779   \ifcase\count@
4780     \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@\relax\bbl@process@synonym{#1}}%
4781     \or
4782     \@ifundefined{zth@#1}{\bbl@process@synonym@aux{#1}{0}}{}%
4783     \else
4784       \bbl@process@synonym@aux{#1}{\the\bbl@last}%
4785     \fi}
4786 \ifx\bbl@languages\@undefined % Just a (sensible?) guess
4787   \chardef\l@english\z@
4788   \chardef\l@USenglish\z@
4789   \chardef\bbl@last\z@
4790   \global\@namedef{\bbl@hyphendata@0}{\hyphen.tex}{}
4791   \gdef\bbl@languages{%
4792     \bbl@elt{english}{0}{\hyphen.tex}{}%
4793     \bbl@elt{USenglish}{0}{}}
4794 \else
4795   \global\let\bbl@languages@format\bbl@languages
4796   \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{% Remove all except language 0
4797     \ifnum#2>\z@\else
4798       \noexpand\bbl@elt{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}%
4799     \fi}%
4800   \xdef\bbl@languages{\bbl@languages}%
4801   \fi
4802   \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{\@namedef{zth@#1}} % Define flags
4803   \bbl@languages
4804   \openin\bbl@readstream=language.dat
4805   \ifeof\bbl@readstream
4806     \bbl@warning{I couldn't find language.dat. No additional\\%
4807       patterns loaded. Reported}%
4808   \else
4809     \loop
4810       \endlinechar\m@ne
4811       \read\bbl@readstream to \bbl@line
4812       \endlinechar\^^M
4813       \if T\ifeof\bbl@readstream F\fi T\relax
4814       \ifx\bbl@line\@empty\else
4815         \edef\bbl@line{\bbl@line\space\space\space}%
4816         \expandafter\bbl@process@line\bbl@line\relax
4817       \fi
4818     \repeat
4819   \fi
4820 \endgroup
4821 \bbl@trace{Macros for reading patterns files}
4822 \def\bbl@get@enc#1:#2:#3\@@{\def\bbl@hyph@enc{#2}}
4823 \ifx\babelcatcodetablenum\@undefined
4824   \ifx\newcatcodetable\@undefined
4825     \def\babelcatcodetablenum{5211}
4826     \def\bbl@pattcodes{\numexpr\babelcatcodetablenum+1\relax}
4827   \else
4828     \newcatcodetable\babelcatcodetablenum
4829     \newcatcodetable\bbl@pattcodes
4830   \fi
4831 \else
4832   \def\bbl@pattcodes{\numexpr\babelcatcodetablenum+1\relax}
4833 \fi
4834 \def\bbl@luapatterns#1#2{%
4835   \bbl@get@enc#1::\@@
4836   \setbox\z@\hbox\bgroup

```

```

4837 \begingroup
4838 \savecatcodetable\babelcatcodetablenum\relax
4839 \initcatcodetable\bbl@pattcodes\relax
4840 \catcodetable\bbl@pattcodes\relax
4841 \catcode\#=6 \catcode\$_=3 \catcode\&=4 \catcode\^=7
4842 \catcode\_ =8 \catcode\{=1 \catcode\}=2 \catcode\~=13
4843 \catcode\@=11 \catcode\^^I=10 \catcode\^^J=12
4844 \catcode\<=12 \catcode\>=12 \catcode\*=12 \catcode\.=12
4845 \catcode\-=12 \catcode\/=12 \catcode\[=12 \catcode\]=12
4846 \catcode\`=12 \catcode\`=12 \catcode\"=12
4847 \input #1\relax
4848 \catcodetable\babelcatcodetablenum\relax
4849 \endgroup
4850 \def\bbl@tempa{#2}%
4851 \ifx\bbl@tempa@empty\else
4852 \input #2\relax
4853 \fi
4854 \egroup}%
4855 \def\bbl@patterns@lua#1{%
4856 \language=\expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname\relax
4857 \csname l@#1\endcsname
4858 \edef\bbl@tempa{#1}%
4859 \else
4860 \csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname
4861 \edef\bbl@tempa{#1:\f@encoding}%
4862 \fi\relax
4863 \@namedef{lu@texhyphen@loaded@the\language}{}% Temp
4864 \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@the\language}%
4865 {\def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{%
4866 \ifnum##2=\csname l@bbl@tempa\endcsname % #2=spanish, dutch:OT1...
4867 \def\bbl@tempb{##3}%
4868 \ifx\bbl@tempb@empty\else % if not a synonymous
4869 \def\bbl@tempc{##3}{##4}%
4870 \fi
4871 \bbl@csarg\xdef{hyphendata@##2}{\bbl@tempc}%
4872 \fi}%
4873 \bbl@languages
4874 \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@the\language}%
4875 {\bbl@info{No hyphenation patterns were set for\the
4876 language '\bbl@tempa'. Reported}}%
4877 {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\bbl@luapatterns
4878 \csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname}}}%
4879 \endinput\fi
4880 % Here ends \ifx\AddBabelHook\@undefined
4881 % A few lines are only read by hyphen.cfg
4882 \ifx\DisableBabelHook\@undefined
4883 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{everylanguage}{%
4884 \def\process@language##1##2##3{%
4885 \def\process@line####1####2 ####3 ####4 {}}}
4886 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{loadpatterns}{%
4887 \input #1\relax
4888 \expandafter\gdef\csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname
4889 {#1}{}}
4890 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{loadexceptions}{%
4891 \input #1\relax
4892 \def\bbl@tempb##1##2{##1}{##1}%
4893 \expandafter\xdef\csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname
4894 {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\bbl@tempb
4895 \csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname}}

```

```

4896 \endinput\fi
4897 % Here stops reading code for hyphen.cfg
4898 % The following is read the 2nd time it's loaded
4899 \begingroup % TODO - to a lua file
4900 \catcode`\%=12
4901 \catcode`\'=12
4902 \catcode`\|=12
4903 \catcode`\:=12
4904 \directlua{
4905   Babel = Babel or {}
4906   function Babel.bytes(line)
4907     return line:gsub(".",
4908       function (chr) return unicode.utf8.char(string.byte(chr)) end)
4909   end
4910   function Babel.begin_process_input()
4911     if luatexbase and luatexbase.add_to_callback then
4912       luatexbase.add_to_callback('process_input_buffer',
4913         Babel.bytes, 'Babel.bytes')
4914     else
4915       Babel.callback = callback.find('process_input_buffer')
4916       callback.register('process_input_buffer', Babel.bytes)
4917     end
4918   end
4919   function Babel.end_process_input ()
4920     if luatexbase and luatexbase.remove_from_callback then
4921       luatexbase.remove_from_callback('process_input_buffer', 'Babel.bytes')
4922     else
4923       callback.register('process_input_buffer', Babel.callback)
4924     end
4925   end
4926   function Babel.addpatterns(pp, lg)
4927     local lg = lang.new(lg)
4928     local pats = lang.patterns(lg) or ''
4929     lang.clear_patterns(lg)
4930     for p in pp:gmatch('[^%s]+') do
4931       ss = ''
4932       for i in string.utfcharacters(p:gsub('%d', '')) do
4933         ss = ss .. '%d?' .. i
4934       end
4935       ss = ss:gsub('^%%d%?%', '%%.') .. '%d?'
4936       ss = ss:gsub('%.%%d%?$', '%%.')
4937       pats, n = pats:gsub('%s' .. ss .. '%s', ' ' .. p .. ' ')
4938       if n == 0 then
4939         tex.sprint(
4940           [[\string\csname\space bbl@info\endcsname{New pattern: }]]
4941           .. p .. [[{}]])
4942         pats = pats .. ' ' .. p
4943       else
4944         tex.sprint(
4945           [[\string\csname\space bbl@info\endcsname{Renew pattern: }]]
4946           .. p .. [[{}]])
4947       end
4948     end
4949     lang.patterns(lg, pats)
4950   end
4951 }
4952 \endgroup
4953 \ifx\newattribute\@undefined\else
4954   \newattribute\bbl@attr@locale

```

```

4955 \directlua{ Babel.attr_locale = luatexbase.registernumber'bbl@attr@locale' }
4956 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{beforeextras}{%
4957   \setattribute\bbl@attr@locale\localeid}
4958 \fi
4959 \def\BabelStringsDefault{unicode}
4960 \let\luabbbl@stop\relax
4961 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{encodedcommands}{%
4962   \def\bbl@tempa{utf8}\def\bbl@tempb{#1}%
4963   \ifx\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb\else
4964     \directlua{Babel.begin_process_input()}%
4965     \def\luabbbl@stop{%
4966       \directlua{Babel.end_process_input()}}%
4967   \fi}%
4968 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{stopcommands}{%
4969   \luabbbl@stop
4970   \let\luabbbl@stop\relax}
4971 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{patterns}{%
4972   \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@the\language}%
4973     {\def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{%
4974       \ifnum##2=\csname l@##2\endcsname % #2=spanish, dutch:OT1...
4975       \def\bbl@tempb{##3}%
4976       \ifx\bbl@tempb\empty\else % if not a synonymous
4977         \def\bbl@tempc{##3}{##4}}%
4978       \fi
4979       \bbl@csarg\xdef{hyphendata@##2}{\bbl@tempc}%
4980     \fi}%
4981   \bbl@languages
4982   \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@the\language}%
4983     {\bbl@info{No hyphenation patterns were set for\%
4984       language '#2'. Reported}}%
4985     {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\bbl@luapatterns
4986       \csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname}}}%
4987   \@ifundefined{bbl@patterns@}{}%
4988   \begingroup
4989   \bbl@xin@{,\number\language,}{,\bbl@pttnlist}%
4990   \ifin@else
4991     \ifx\bbl@patterns@\empty\else
4992       \directlua{ Babel.addpatterns(
4993         [[\bbl@patterns@]], \number\language) }%
4994     \fi
4995     \@ifundefined{bbl@patterns@#1}%
4996     \empty
4997     {\directlua{ Babel.addpatterns(
4998       [[\space\csname bbl@patterns@#1\endcsname]],
4999       \number\language) }}%
5000     \xdef\bbl@pttnlist{\bbl@pttnlist\number\language,}%
5001   \fi
5002 \endgroup}%
5003 \bbl@exp{%
5004   \bbl@ifunset{bbl@prehc@\languagename}{}%
5005   {\bbl@ifblank{\bbl@cs{prehc@\languagename}}}%
5006   {\prehyphenchar=\bbl@c1{prehc}\relax}}}%

```

`\babelpatterns` This macro adds patterns. Two macros are used to store them: `\bbl@patterns@` for the global ones and `\bbl@patterns@<lang>` for language ones. We make sure there is a space between words when multiple commands are used.

```

5007 \onlypreamble\babelpatterns
5008 \AtEndOfPackage{%
5009   \newcommand\babelpatterns[2][\empty]{%

```

```

5010 \ifx\bbbl@patterns@\relax
5011 \let\bbbl@patterns@\@empty
5012 \fi
5013 \ifx\bbbl@pttnlist\@empty\else
5014 \bbbl@warning{%
5015     You must not intermingle \string\selectlanguage\space and\\%
5016     \string\babelpatterns\space or some patterns will not\\%
5017     be taken into account. Reported}%
5018 \fi
5019 \ifx\@empty#1%
5020 \protected@edef\bbbl@patterns@{\bbbl@patterns@\space#2}%
5021 \else
5022 \edef\bbbl@tempb{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
5023 \bbbl@for\bbbl@tempa\bbbl@tempb{%
5024     \bbbl@fixname\bbbl@tempa
5025     \bbbl@iflanguage\bbbl@tempa{%
5026         \bbbl@csarg\protected@edef{patterns@\bbbl@tempa}{%
5027             \@ifundefined{bbbl@patterns@\bbbl@tempa}%
5028             \@empty
5029             {\csname bbl@patterns@\bbbl@tempa\endcsname\space}%
5030             #2}}}%
5031 \fi}}

```

### 13.4 Southeast Asian scripts

First, some general code for line breaking, used by `\babelposthyphenation`. Replace regular (ie, implicit) discretionaries by spaceskips, based on the previous glyph (which I think makes sense, because the hyphen and the previous char go always together). Other discretionaries are not touched. See Unicode UAX 14.

```

5032 % TODO - to a lua file
5033 \directlua{
5034     Babel = Babel or {}
5035     Babel.linebreaking = Babel.linebreaking or {}
5036     Babel.linebreaking.before = {}
5037     Babel.linebreaking.after = {}
5038     Babel.locale = {} % Free to use, indexed by \localeid
5039     function Babel.linebreaking.add_before(func)
5040         tex.print([[noexpand\csname bbl@luahyphenate\endcsname]])
5041         table.insert(Babel.linebreaking.before, func)
5042     end
5043     function Babel.linebreaking.add_after(func)
5044         tex.print([[noexpand\csname bbl@luahyphenate\endcsname]])
5045         table.insert(Babel.linebreaking.after, func)
5046     end
5047 }
5048 \def\bbbl@intraspace#1 #2 #3\@{#1%
5049 \directlua{
5050     Babel = Babel or {}
5051     Babel.intraspaces = Babel.intraspaces or {}
5052     Babel.intraspaces['\csname bbl@sbcpr@\language\endcsname'] = %
5053         {b = #1, p = #2, m = #3}
5054     Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].intraspace = %
5055         {b = #1, p = #2, m = #3}
5056 }}
5057 \def\bbbl@intrapenalty#1\@{#1%
5058 \directlua{
5059     Babel = Babel or {}
5060     Babel.intrapenalties = Babel.intrapenalties or {}

```



```

5061   Babel.intrapenalties['\csname bbl@sbcpr@\language\endcsname'] = #1
5062   Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].intrapenalty = #1
5063   }}
5064 \begingroup
5065 \catcode`\%=12
5066 \catcode`\^=14
5067 \catcode`\'=12
5068 \catcode`\~=12
5069 \gdef\bbl@seaintraspace{^
5070   \let\bbl@seaintraspace\relax
5071   \directlua{
5072     Babel = Babel or {}
5073     Babel.sea_enabled = true
5074     Babel.sea_ranges = Babel.sea_ranges or {}
5075     function Babel.set_chranges (script, chrng)
5076       local c = 0
5077       for s, e in string.gmatch(chrng..' ', '(.)%.%.(.)%s') do
5078         Babel.sea_ranges[script..c]={tonumber(s,16), tonumber(e,16)}
5079         c = c + 1
5080       end
5081     end
5082     function Babel.sea_disc_to_space (head)
5083       local sea_ranges = Babel.sea_ranges
5084       local last_char = nil
5085       local quad = 655360      ^% 10 pt = 655360 = 10 * 65536
5086       for item in node.traverse(head) do
5087         local i = item.id
5088         if i == node.id'glyph' then
5089           last_char = item
5090         elseif i == 7 and item.subtype == 3 and last_char
5091           and last_char.char > 0x0C99 then
5092           quad = font.getfont(last_char.font).size
5093           for lg, rg in pairs(sea_ranges) do
5094             if last_char.char > rg[1] and last_char.char < rg[2] then
5095               lg = lg:sub(1, 4)  ^% Remove trailing number of, eg, Cyril1
5096               local intraspace = Babel.intraspaces[lg]
5097               local intrapenalty = Babel.intrapenalties[lg]
5098               local n
5099               if intrapenalty ~= 0 then
5100                 n = node.new(14, 0)    ^% penalty
5101                 n.penalty = intrapenalty
5102                 node.insert_before(head, item, n)
5103               end
5104               n = node.new(12, 13)    ^% (glue, spaceskip)
5105               node.setglue(n, intraspace.b * quad,
5106                           intraspace.p * quad,
5107                           intraspace.m * quad)
5108               node.insert_before(head, item, n)
5109               node.remove(head, item)
5110             end
5111           end
5112         end
5113       end
5114     end
5115   }^^
5116   \bbl@luahyphenate}

```

## 13.5 CJK line breaking

Minimal line breaking for CJK scripts, mainly intended for simple documents and short texts as a secondary language. Only line breaking, with a little stretching for justification, without any attempt to adjust the spacing. It is based on (but does not strictly follow) the Unicode algorithm.

We first need a little table with the corresponding line breaking properties. A few characters have an additional key for the width (fullwidth vs. halfwidth), not yet used. There is a separate file, defined below.

```
5117 \catcode`\%=14
5118 \gdef\bbl@cjkintraspacespace{%
5119   \let\bbl@cjkintraspacespace\relax
5120   \directlua{
5121     Babel = Babel or {}
5122     require('babel-data-cjk.lua')
5123     Babel.cjk_enabled = true
5124     function Babel.cjk_linebreak(head)
5125       local GLYPH = node.id'glyph'
5126       local last_char = nil
5127       local quad = 655360      % 10 pt = 655360 = 10 * 65536
5128       local last_class = nil
5129       local last_lang = nil
5130
5131       for item in node.traverse(head) do
5132         if item.id == GLYPH then
5133
5134           local lang = item.lang
5135
5136           local LOCALE = node.get_attribute(item,
5137             Babel.attr_locale)
5138           local props = Babel.locale_props[LOCALE]
5139
5140           local class = Babel.cjk_class[item.char].c
5141
5142           if props.cjk_quotes and props.cjk_quotes[item.char] then
5143             class = props.cjk_quotes[item.char]
5144           end
5145
5146           if class == 'cp' then class = 'cl' end % ]] as CL
5147           if class == 'id' then class = 'I' end
5148
5149           local br = 0
5150           if class and last_class and Babel.cjk_breaks[last_class][class] then
5151             br = Babel.cjk_breaks[last_class][class]
5152           end
5153
5154           if br == 1 and props.linebreak == 'c' and
5155             lang ~= \the\l@nohyphenation\space and
5156             last_lang ~= \the\l@nohyphenation then
5157             local intrapenalty = props.intrapenalty
5158             if intrapenalty ~= 0 then
5159               local n = node.new(14, 0)      % penalty
5160               n.penalty = intrapenalty
5161               node.insert_before(head, item, n)
5162             end
5163             local intraspacespace = props.intraspacespace
5164             local n = node.new(12, 13)      % (glue, spaceskip)
5165             node.setglue(n, intraspacespace.b * quad,
5166               intraspacespace.p * quad,
5167               intraspacespace.m * quad)
```

```

5168         node.insert_before(head, item, n)
5169     end
5170
5171     if font.getfont(item.font) then
5172         quad = font.getfont(item.font).size
5173     end
5174     last_class = class
5175     last_lang = lang
5176     else % if penalty, glue or anything else
5177         last_class = nil
5178     end
5179 end
5180 lang.hyphenate(head)
5181 end
5182 }%
5183 \bbl@luahyphenate}
5184 \gdef\bbl@luahyphenate{%
5185 \let\bbl@luahyphenate\relax
5186 \directlua{
5187     luatexbase.add_to_callback('hyphenate',
5188     function (head, tail)
5189         if Babel.linebreaking.before then
5190             for k, func in ipairs(Babel.linebreaking.before) do
5191                 func(head)
5192             end
5193         end
5194         if Babel.cjk_enabled then
5195             Babel.cjk_linebreak(head)
5196         end
5197         lang.hyphenate(head)
5198         if Babel.linebreaking.after then
5199             for k, func in ipairs(Babel.linebreaking.after) do
5200                 func(head)
5201             end
5202         end
5203         if Babel.sea_enabled then
5204             Babel.sea_disc_to_space(head)
5205         end
5206     end,
5207     'Babel.hyphenate')
5208 }
5209 }
5210 \endgroup
5211 \def\bbl@provide@intraspace{%
5212 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@intsp@language}{}%
5213 {\expandafter\ifx\csname bbl@intsp@language\endcsname\@empty\else
5214 \bbl@xin{/c}{\bbl@cl{lnbrk}}%
5215 \ifin@ % cjk
5216 \bbl@cjkintraspace
5217 \directlua{
5218     Babel = Babel or {}
5219     Babel.locale_props = Babel.locale_props or {}
5220     Babel.locale_props[\the\localeid].linebreak = 'c'
5221 }%
5222 \bbl@exp{\bbl@intraspace\bbl@cl{intsp}\bbl@cl{intsp}}%
5223 \ifx\bbl@KVP@intrapenalty\@nil
5224 \bbl@intrapenalty0\@
5225 \fi
5226 \else % sea

```

```

5227         \bbl@seaintraspace
5228         \bbl@exp{\bbl@intraspace\bbl@c1{intsp}\bbl@@}%
5229         \directlua{
5230             Babel = Babel or {}
5231             Babel.sea_ranges = Babel.sea_ranges or {}
5232             Babel.set_chranges('\bbl@c1{sbcpr}',
5233                               '\bbl@c1{chrng}')
5234         }%
5235         \ifx\bbl@KVP@intrapenalty\@nil
5236             \bbl@intrapenalty0\@@
5237         \fi
5238     \fi
5239 \fi
5240 \ifx\bbl@KVP@intrapenalty\@nil\else
5241     \expandafter\bbl@intrapenalty\bbl@KVP@intrapenalty\@@
5242 \fi}}

```

### 13.6 Arabic justification

```

5243 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode>100 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode<200
5244 \def\bblar@chars{%
5245     0628,0629,062A,062B,062C,062D,062E,062F,0630,0631,0632,0633,%
5246     0634,0635,0636,0637,0638,0639,063A,063B,063C,063D,063E,063F,%
5247     0640,0641,0642,0643,0644,0645,0646,0647,0649}
5248 \def\bblar@elongated{%
5249     0626,0628,062A,062B,0633,0634,0635,0636,063B,%
5250     063C,063D,063E,063F,0641,0642,0643,0644,0646,%
5251     0649,064A}
5252 \begingroup
5253     \catcode\_ =11 \catcode\` =11
5254     \gdef\bblar@nofswarn{\gdef\msg_warning:nx##1##2##3{}}
5255 \endgroup
5256 \gdef\bbl@arabicjust{%
5257     \let\bbl@arabicjust\relax
5258     \newattribute\bblar@kashida
5259     \directlua{ Babel.attr_kashida = luatexbase.registernumber'bblar@kashida' }%
5260     \bblar@kashida=\z@
5261     \bbl@patchfont{\bbl@parsejalt}}%
5262 \directlua{
5263     Babel.arabic.elong_map = Babel.arabic.elong_map or {}
5264     Babel.arabic.elong_map[\the\localeid] = {}
5265     luatexbase.add_to_callback('post_linebreak_filter',
5266                               Babel.arabic.justify, 'Babel.arabic.justify')
5267     luatexbase.add_to_callback('hpack_filter',
5268                               Babel.arabic.justify_hbox, 'Babel.arabic.justify_hbox')
5269 }}%
5270 % Save both node lists to make replacement. TODO. Save also widths to
5271 % make computations
5272 \def\bblar@fetchjalt#1#2#3#4{%
5273     \bbl@exp{\bbl@foreach{#1}}{%
5274         \bbl@ifunset\bblar@JE@##1}%
5275         {\setbox\z@\hbox{^^^200d\char"##1#2}}%
5276         {\setbox\z@\hbox{^^^200d\char"\@nameuse\bblar@JE@##1#2}}}%
5277     \directlua{%
5278         local last = nil
5279         for item in node.traverse(tex.box[0].head) do
5280             if item.id == node.id'glyph' and item.char > 0x600 and
5281                not (item.char == 0x200D) then
5282                 last = item

```

```

5283         end
5284     end
5285     Babel.arabic.#3['##1#4'] = last.char
5286 }}}}
5287 % Brute force. No rules at all, yet. The ideal: look at jalt table. And
5288 % perhaps other tables (falt?, cswht?). What about kaf? And diacritic
5289 % positioning?
5290 \gdef\bbl@parsejalt{%
5291     \ifx\addfontfeature\undefined\else
5292         \bbl@xin@{/e}{/\bbl@cl{lbrk}}}%
5293     \ifin@
5294         \directlua{%
5295             if Babel.arabic.elong_map[\the\localeid][\fontid\font] == nil then
5296                 Babel.arabic.elong_map[\the\localeid][\fontid\font] = {}
5297                 tex.print([[string\csname\space bbl@parsejalti\endcsname]])
5298             end
5299         }%
5300     \fi
5301 \fi}
5302 \gdef\bbl@parsejalti{%
5303     \begingroup
5304         \let\bbl@parsejalt\relax    % To avoid infinite loop
5305         \edef\bbl@tempb{\fontid\font}%
5306         \bblar@nofswarn
5307         \bblar@fetchjalt\bblar@elongated{}{from}{}%
5308         \bblar@fetchjalt\bblar@chars{^^^^064a}{from}{a}% Alef maksura
5309         \bblar@fetchjalt\bblar@chars{^^^^0649}{from}{y}% Yeh
5310         \addfontfeature{RawFeature+=jalt}%
5311         % \@namedef{bblar@JE@0643}{06AA}% todo: catch medial kaf
5312         \bblar@fetchjalt\bblar@elongated{}{dest}{}%
5313         \bblar@fetchjalt\bblar@chars{^^^^064a}{dest}{a}%
5314         \bblar@fetchjalt\bblar@chars{^^^^0649}{dest}{y}%
5315         \directlua{%
5316             for k, v in pairs(Babel.arabic.from) do
5317                 if Babel.arabic.dest[k] and
5318                     not (Babel.arabic.from[k] == Babel.arabic.dest[k]) then
5319                     Babel.arabic.elong_map[\the\localeid][\bbl@tempb]
5320                     [Babel.arabic.from[k]] = Babel.arabic.dest[k]
5321                 end
5322             end
5323         }%
5324     \endgroup}
5325 %
5326 \begingroup
5327 \catcode`#=11
5328 \catcode`~=11
5329 \directlua{
5330
5331 Babel.arabic = Babel.arabic or {}
5332 Babel.arabic.from = {}
5333 Babel.arabic.dest = {}
5334 Babel.arabic.justify_factor = 0.95
5335 Babel.arabic.justify_enabled = true
5336
5337 function Babel.arabic.justify(head)
5338     if not Babel.arabic.justify_enabled then return head end
5339     for line in node.traverse_id(node.id'hlist', head) do
5340         Babel.arabic.justify_hlist(head, line)
5341     end

```

```

5342 return head
5343 end
5344
5345 function Babel.arabic.justify_hbox(head, gc, size, pack)
5346   local has_inf = false
5347   if Babel.arabic.justify_enabled and pack == 'exactly' then
5348     for n in node.traverse_id(12, head) do
5349       if n.stretch_order > 0 then has_inf = true end
5350     end
5351     if not has_inf then
5352       Babel.arabic.justify_hlist(head, nil, gc, size, pack)
5353     end
5354   end
5355   return head
5356 end
5357
5358 function Babel.arabic.justify_hlist(head, line, gc, size, pack)
5359   local d, new
5360   local k_list, k_item, pos_inline
5361   local width, width_new, full, k_curr, wt_pos, goal, shift
5362   local subst_done = false
5363   local elong_map = Babel.arabic.elong_map
5364   local last_line
5365   local GLYPH = node.id'glyph'
5366   local KASHIDA = Babel.attr_kashida
5367   local LOCALE = Babel.attr_locale
5368
5369   if line == nil then
5370     line = {}
5371     line.glue_sign = 1
5372     line.glue_order = 0
5373     line.head = head
5374     line.shift = 0
5375     line.width = size
5376   end
5377
5378   % Exclude last line. todo. But-- it discards one-word lines, too!
5379   % ? Look for glue = 12:15
5380   if (line.glue_sign == 1 and line.glue_order == 0) then
5381     elongs = {} % Stores elongated candidates of each line
5382     k_list = {} % And all letters with kashida
5383     pos_inline = 0 % Not yet used
5384
5385     for n in node.traverse_id(GLYPH, line.head) do
5386       pos_inline = pos_inline + 1 % To find where it is. Not used.
5387
5388       % Elongated glyphs
5389       if elong_map then
5390         local locale = node.get_attribute(n, LOCALE)
5391         if elong_map[locale] and elong_map[locale][n.font] and
5392           elong_map[locale][n.font][n.char] then
5393           table.insert(elongs, {node = n, locale = locale} )
5394           node.set_attribute(n.prev, KASHIDA, 0)
5395         end
5396       end
5397
5398       % Tatwil
5399       if Babel.kashida_wts then
5400         local k_wt = node.get_attribute(n, KASHIDA)

```

```

5401         if k_wt > 0 then % todo. parameter for multi inserts
5402             table.insert(k_list, {node = n, weight = k_wt, pos = pos_inline})
5403         end
5404     end
5405
5406 end % of node.traverse_id
5407
5408 if #elongs == 0 and #k_list == 0 then goto next_line end
5409 full = line.width
5410 shift = line.shift
5411 goal = full * Babel.arabic.justify_factor % A bit crude
5412 width = node.dimensions(line.head) % The 'natural' width
5413
5414 % == Elongated ==
5415 % Original idea taken from 'chickenize'
5416 while (#elongs > 0 and width < goal) do
5417     subst_done = true
5418     local x = #elongs
5419     local curr = elongs[x].node
5420     local oldchar = curr.char
5421     curr.char = elong_map[elongs[x].locale][curr.font][curr.char]
5422     width = node.dimensions(line.head) % Check if the line is too wide
5423     % Substitute back if the line would be too wide and break:
5424     if width > goal then
5425         curr.char = oldchar
5426         break
5427     end
5428     % If continue, pop the just substituted node from the list:
5429     table.remove(elongs, x)
5430 end
5431
5432 % == Tatwil ==
5433 if #k_list == 0 then goto next_line end
5434
5435 width = node.dimensions(line.head) % The 'natural' width
5436 k_curr = #k_list
5437 wt_pos = 1
5438
5439 while width < goal do
5440     subst_done = true
5441     k_item = k_list[k_curr].node
5442     if k_list[k_curr].weight == Babel.kashida_wts[wt_pos] then
5443         d = node.copy(k_item)
5444         d.char = 0x0640
5445         line.head, new = node.insert_after(line.head, k_item, d)
5446         width_new = node.dimensions(line.head)
5447         if width > goal or width == width_new then
5448             node.remove(line.head, new) % Better compute before
5449             break
5450         end
5451         width = width_new
5452     end
5453     if k_curr == 1 then
5454         k_curr = #k_list
5455         wt_pos = (wt_pos >= table.getn(Babel.kashida_wts)) and 1 or wt_pos+1
5456     else
5457         k_curr = k_curr - 1
5458     end
5459 end

```

```

5460
5461 ::next_line::
5462
5463 % Must take into account marks and ins, see luatex manual.
5464 % Have to be executed only if there are changes. Investigate
5465 % what's going on exactly.
5466 if subst_done and not gc then
5467     d = node.hpack(line.head, full, 'exactly')
5468     d.shift = shift
5469     node.insert_before(head, line, d)
5470     node.remove(head, line)
5471 end
5472 end % if process line
5473 end
5474 }
5475 \endgroup
5476 \fi\fi % Arabic just block

```

### 13.7 Common stuff

```

5477 \AddBabelHook{babel-fontspec}{afterextras}{\bbl@switchfont}
5478 \AddBabelHook{babel-fontspec}{beforestart}{\bbl@cckstdfonts}
5479 \DisableBabelHook{babel-fontspec}
5480 <<Font selection>>

```

### 13.8 Automatic fonts and ids switching

After defining the blocks for a number of scripts (must be extended and very likely fine tuned), we define a short function which just traverse the node list to carry out the replacements. The table `loc_to_scr` gets the locale form a script range (note the locale is the key, and that there is an intermediate table built on the fly for optimization). This locale is then used to get the `\language` and the `\localeid` as stored in `locale_props`, as well as the font (as requested). In the latter table a key starting with `/` maps the font from the global one (the key) to the local one (the value). Maths are skipped and discretionaries are handled in a special way.

```

5481 % TODO - to a lua file
5482 \directlua{
5483 Babel.script_blocks = {
5484     ['dflt'] = {},
5485     ['Arab'] = {{0x0600, 0x06FF}, {0x08A0, 0x08FF}, {0x0750, 0x077F},
5486                {0xFE70, 0xFEFF}, {0xFB50, 0xFDFF}, {0x1EE00, 0x1EEFF}},
5487     ['Armn'] = {{0x0530, 0x058F}},
5488     ['Beng'] = {{0x0980, 0x09FF}},
5489     ['Cher'] = {{0x13A0, 0x13FF}, {0xAB70, 0xABBF}},
5490     ['Copt'] = {{0x03E2, 0x03EF}, {0x2C80, 0x2CFF}, {0x102E0, 0x102FF}},
5491     ['Cyr1'] = {{0x0400, 0x04FF}, {0x0500, 0x052F}, {0x1C80, 0x1C8F},
5492                {0x2DE0, 0x2DFF}, {0xA640, 0xA69F}},
5493     ['Deva'] = {{0x0900, 0x097F}, {0xA8E0, 0xA8FF}},
5494     ['Ethi'] = {{0x1200, 0x137F}, {0x1380, 0x139F}, {0x2D80, 0x2DDF},
5495                {0xAB00, 0xAB2F}},
5496     ['Geor'] = {{0x10A0, 0x10FF}, {0x2D00, 0x2D2F}},
5497     % Don't follow strictly Unicode, which places some Coptic letters in
5498     % the 'Greek and Coptic' block
5499     ['Grek'] = {{0x0370, 0x03E1}, {0x03F0, 0x03FF}, {0x1F00, 0x1FFF}},
5500     ['Hans'] = {{0x2E80, 0x2EFF}, {0x3000, 0x303F}, {0x31C0, 0x31EF},
5501                {0x3300, 0x33FF}, {0x3400, 0x4DBF}, {0x4E00, 0x9FFF},
5502                {0xF900, 0xFAFF}, {0xFE30, 0xFE4F}, {0xFF00, 0xFFEF},
5503                {0x20000, 0x2A6DF}, {0x2A700, 0x2B73F},
5504                {0x2B740, 0x2B81F}, {0x2B820, 0x2CEAF},
5505                {0x2CEB0, 0x2EBEF}, {0x2F800, 0x2FA1F}},
5506     ['Hebr'] = {{0x0590, 0x05FF}},

```



```

5507 ['Jpan'] = {{0x3000, 0x303F}, {0x3040, 0x309F}, {0x30A0, 0x30FF},
5508             {0x4E00, 0x9FAF}, {0xFF00, 0xFFEF}},
5509 ['Khmr'] = {{0x1780, 0x17FF}, {0x19E0, 0x19FF}},
5510 ['Knda'] = {{0x0C80, 0x0CFF}},
5511 ['Kore'] = {{0x1100, 0x11FF}, {0x3000, 0x303F}, {0x3130, 0x318F},
5512             {0x4E00, 0x9FAF}, {0xA960, 0xA97F}, {0xAC00, 0xD7AF},
5513             {0xD7B0, 0xD7FF}, {0xFF00, 0xFFEF}},
5514 ['Lao'] = {{0x0E80, 0x0EFF}},
5515 ['Latn'] = {{0x0000, 0x007F}, {0x0080, 0x00FF}, {0x0100, 0x017F},
5516             {0x0180, 0x024F}, {0x1E00, 0x1EFF}, {0x2C60, 0x2C7F},
5517             {0xA720, 0xA7FF}, {0xAB30, 0xAB6F}},
5518 ['Mahj'] = {{0x11150, 0x1117F}},
5519 ['Mlym'] = {{0x0D00, 0x0D7F}},
5520 ['Mymr'] = {{0x1000, 0x109F}, {0xAA60, 0xAA7F}, {0xA9E0, 0xA9FF}},
5521 ['Orya'] = {{0x0B00, 0x0B7F}},
5522 ['Sinh'] = {{0x0D80, 0x0DFF}, {0x111E0, 0x111FF}},
5523 ['Syrc'] = {{0x0700, 0x074F}, {0x0860, 0x086F}},
5524 ['Taml'] = {{0x0B80, 0x0BFF}},
5525 ['Telu'] = {{0x0C00, 0x0C7F}},
5526 ['Tfng'] = {{0x2D30, 0x2D7F}},
5527 ['Thai'] = {{0x0E00, 0x0E7F}},
5528 ['Tibt'] = {{0x0F00, 0x0FFF}},
5529 ['Vaii'] = {{0xA500, 0xA63F}},
5530 ['Yiii'] = {{0xA000, 0xA48F}, {0xA490, 0xA4CF}}
5531 }
5532
5533 Babel.script_blocks.Cyrs = Babel.script_blocks.Cyrl
5534 Babel.script_blocks.Hant = Babel.script_blocks.Hans
5535 Babel.script_blocks.Kana = Babel.script_blocks.Jpan
5536
5537 function Babel.locale_map(head)
5538   if not Babel.locale_mapped then return head end
5539
5540   local LOCALE = Babel.attr_locale
5541   local GLYPH = node.id('glyph')
5542   local inmath = false
5543   local toloc_save
5544   for item in node.traverse(head) do
5545     local toloc
5546     if not inmath and item.id == GLYPH then
5547       % Optimization: build a table with the chars found
5548       if Babel.chr_to_loc[item.char] then
5549         toloc = Babel.chr_to_loc[item.char]
5550       else
5551         for lc, maps in pairs(Babel.loc_to_scr) do
5552           for _, rg in pairs(maps) do
5553             if item.char >= rg[1] and item.char <= rg[2] then
5554               Babel.chr_to_loc[item.char] = lc
5555               toloc = lc
5556               break
5557             end
5558           end
5559         end
5560       end
5561       % Now, take action, but treat composite chars in a different
5562       % fashion, because they 'inherit' the previous locale. Not yet
5563       % optimized.
5564       if not toloc and
5565         (item.char >= 0x0300 and item.char <= 0x036F) or

```

```

5566         (item.char >= 0x1AB0 and item.char <= 0x1AFF) or
5567         (item.char >= 0x1DC0 and item.char <= 0x1DFF) then
5568         toloc = toloc_save
5569     end
5570     if toloc and toloc > -1 then
5571         if Babel.locale_props[toloc].lg then
5572             item.lang = Babel.locale_props[toloc].lg
5573             node.set_attribute(item, LOCALE, toloc)
5574         end
5575         if Babel.locale_props[toloc]['/'..item.font] then
5576             item.font = Babel.locale_props[toloc]['/'..item.font]
5577         end
5578         toloc_save = toloc
5579     end
5580     elseif not inmath and item.id == 7 then
5581         item.replace = item.replace and Babel.locale_map(item.replace)
5582         item.pre      = item.pre and Babel.locale_map(item.pre)
5583         item.post      = item.post and Babel.locale_map(item.post)
5584     elseif item.id == node.id'math' then
5585         inmath = (item.subtype == 0)
5586     end
5587 end
5588 return head
5589 end
5590 }

```

The code for `\babelcharproperty` is straightforward. Just note the modified lua table can be different.

```

5591 \newcommand\babelcharproperty[1]{%
5592   \count@=#1\relax
5593   \ifvmode
5594     \expandafter\bbl@chprop
5595   \else
5596     \bbl@error{\string\babelcharproperty\space can be used only in\\%
5597               vertical mode (preamble or between paragraphs)}%
5598     {See the manual for futher info}%
5599   \fi}
5600 \newcommand\bbl@chprop[3][\the\count@]{%
5601   \@tempcnta=#1\relax
5602   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@chprop@#2}%
5603   {\bbl@error{No property named '#2'. Allowed values are\\%
5604             direction (bc), mirror (bmg), and linebreak (lb)}%
5605    {See the manual for futher info}}%
5606   {}%
5607   \loop
5608     \bbl@cs{chprop@#2}{#3}%
5609     \ifnum\count@<\@tempcnta
5610       \advance\count@\@ne
5611     \repeat}
5612 \def\bbl@chprop@direction#1{%
5613   \directlua{
5614     Babel.characters[\the\count@] = Babel.characters[\the\count@] or {}
5615     Babel.characters[\the\count@]['d'] = '#1'
5616   }}
5617 \let\bbl@chprop@bc\bbl@chprop@direction
5618 \def\bbl@chprop@mirror#1{%
5619   \directlua{
5620     Babel.characters[\the\count@] = Babel.characters[\the\count@] or {}
5621     Babel.characters[\the\count@]['m'] = '\number#1'

```

```

5622 }}
5623 \let\bbl@chprop@bmg\bbl@chprop@mirror
5624 \def\bbl@chprop@linebreak#1{%
5625   \directlua{
5626     Babel.cjk_characters[\the\count@] = Babel.cjk_characters[\the\count@] or {}
5627     Babel.cjk_characters[\the\count@]['c'] = '#1'
5628   }}
5629 \let\bbl@chprop@lb\bbl@chprop@linebreak
5630 \def\bbl@chprop@locale#1{%
5631   \directlua{
5632     Babel.chr_to_loc = Babel.chr_to_loc or {}
5633     Babel.chr_to_loc[\the\count@] =
5634       \bbl@ifblank{#1}{-1000}{\the\bbl@cs{id@#1}}\space
5635   }}

```

Post-handling hyphenation patterns for non-standard rules, like ff to ff-f. There are still some issues with speed (not very slow, but still slow). The Lua code is below.

```

5636 \directlua{
5637   Babel.nohyphenation = \the\l@nohyphenation
5638 }

```

Now the T<sub>E</sub>X high level interface, which requires the function defined above for converting strings to functions returning a string. These functions handle the  $\{n\}$  syntax. For example,  $\text{pre}=\{1\}\{1\}$ - becomes  $\text{function}(m) \text{ return } m[1]..m[1]..'-' \text{ end}$ , where  $m$  are the matches returned after applying the pattern. With a mapped capture the functions are similar to  $\text{function}(m) \text{ return } \text{Babel.capt\_map}(m[1],1) \text{ end}$ , where the last argument identifies the mapping to be applied to  $m[1]$ . The way it is carried out is somewhat tricky, but the effect is not dissimilar to lua load – save the code as string in a TeX macro, and expand this macro at the appropriate place. As  $\text{\directlua}$  does not take into account the current catcode of  $\text{\@}$ , we just avoid this character in macro names (which explains the internal group, too).

```

5639 \begingroup
5640 \catcode`\~ = 12
5641 \catcode`\% = 12
5642 \catcode`\& = 14
5643 \gdef\babelprehyphenation{%&
5644   \@ifnextchar[{\bbl@settransform{0}}{\bbl@settransform{0}}[]]}
5645 \gdef\babelposthyphenation{%&
5646   \@ifnextchar[{\bbl@settransform{1}}{\bbl@settransform{1}}[]]}
5647 \gdef\bbl@settransform#1[#2]#3#4#5{%&
5648   \ifcase#1
5649     \bbl@activateprehyphen
5650   \else
5651     \bbl@activateposthyphen
5652   \fi
5653 \begingroup
5654   \def\babeltempa{\bbl@add@list\babeltempb}%&
5655   \let\babeltempb\@empty
5656   \def\bbl@tempa{#5}%&
5657   \bbl@replace\bbl@tempa{,}{ ,}%& TODO. Ugly trick to preserve {}
5658   \expandafter\bbl@foreach\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}{%&
5659     \bbl@ifsamestring{##1}{remove}%&
5660     {\bbl@add@list\babeltempb{nil}}}%&
5661     {\directlua{
5662       local rep = [= [#1]=]
5663       rep = rep:gsub('^%s*(remove)%s*$', 'remove = true')
5664       rep = rep:gsub('^%s*(insert)%s*', 'insert = true, ')
5665       rep = rep:gsub('(string)%s*=%s*([^\s,]*)', Babel.capture_func)
5666       if #1 == 0 then
5667         rep = rep:gsub('(space)%s*=%s*([%d%.]+)%s+([%d%.]+)%s+([%d%.]+)',

```

```

5668         'space = {' .. '%2, %3, %4' .. '}'
5669         rep = rep:gsub(' (spacefactor)%s*=%s*([%d%.]+)%s+([%d%.]+)%s+([%d%.]+)',
5670         'spacefactor = {' .. '%2, %3, %4' .. '}'
5671         rep = rep:gsub('(kashida)%s*=%s*([^\s,]*)', Babel.capture_kashida)
5672     else
5673         rep = rep:gsub(' (no)%s*=%s*([^\s,]*)', Babel.capture_func)
5674         rep = rep:gsub(' (pre)%s*=%s*([^\s,]*)', Babel.capture_func)
5675         rep = rep:gsub(' (post)%s*=%s*([^\s,]*)', Babel.capture_func)
5676     end
5677     tex.print([[\\string\\babeltempa{[]] .. rep .. [[]]]])
5678 }}&%
5679 \\let\\bbl@kv@attribute\\relax
5680 \\let\\bbl@kv@label\\relax
5681 \\bbl@forkv{#2}{\\bbl@csarg\\edef{kv@##1}{##2}}&%
5682 \\ifx\\bbl@kv@attribute\\relax\\else
5683     \\edef\\bbl@kv@attribute{\\expandafter\\bbl@stripslash\\bbl@kv@attribute}&%
5684 \\fi
5685 \\directlua{
5686     local lbkr = Babel.linebreaking.replacements[#1]
5687     local u = unicode.utf8
5688     local id, attr, label
5689     if #1 == 0 then
5690         id = \\the\\csname bbl@id@#3\\endcsname\\space
5691     else
5692         id = \\the\\csname l@#3\\endcsname\\space
5693     end
5694     \\ifx\\bbl@kv@attribute\\relax
5695         attr = -1
5696     \\else
5697         attr = luatexbase.registernumber'\\bbl@kv@attribute'
5698     \\fi
5699     \\ifx\\bbl@kv@label\\relax\\else &% Same refs:
5700         label = [==[\\bbl@kv@label]==]
5701     \\fi
5702     &% Convert pattern:
5703     local patt = string.gsub([==[#4]==], '%s', '')
5704     if #1 == 0 then
5705         patt = string.gsub(patt, '|', ' ')
5706     end
5707     if not u.find(patt, '()', nil, true) then
5708         patt = '()' .. patt .. '()'
5709     end
5710     if #1 == 1 then
5711         patt = string.gsub(patt, '%(%)^', '^()')
5712         patt = string.gsub(patt, '%$$(%)', '()$')
5713     end
5714     patt = u.gsub(patt, '{(.)}',
5715         function (n)
5716             return '%' .. (tonumber(n) and (tonumber(n)+1) or n)
5717         end)
5718     patt = u.gsub(patt, '{(%x%x%x%x+)}',
5719         function (n)
5720             return u.gsub(u.char(tonumber(n, 16)), '(%p)', '%%%1')
5721         end)
5722     lbkr[id] = lbkr[id] or {}
5723     table.insert(lbkr[id],
5724         { label=label, attr=attr, pattern=patt, replace={\\babeltempb} })
5725 }&%
5726 \\endgroup}

```

```

5727 \endgroup
5728 \def\bbl@activateposthyphen{%
5729   \let\bbl@activateposthyphen\relax
5730   \directlua{
5731     require('babel-transforms.lua')
5732     Babel.linebreaking.add_after(Babel.post_hyphenate_replace)
5733   }}
5734 \def\bbl@activateprehyphen{%
5735   \let\bbl@activateprehyphen\relax
5736   \directlua{
5737     require('babel-transforms.lua')
5738     Babel.linebreaking.add_before(Babel.pre_hyphenate_replace)
5739   }}

```

### 13.9 Bidi

As a first step, add a handler for bidi and digits (and potentially other processes) just before luaotfload is applied, which is loaded by default by  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . Just in case, consider the possibility it has not been loaded.

```

5740 \def\bbl@activate@preotf{%
5741   \let\bbl@activate@preotf\relax % only once
5742   \directlua{
5743     Babel = Babel or {}
5744     %
5745     function Babel.pre_otfload_v(head)
5746       if Babel.numbers and Babel.digits_mapped then
5747         head = Babel.numbers(head)
5748       end
5749       if Babel.bidi_enabled then
5750         head = Babel.bidi(head, false, dir)
5751       end
5752       return head
5753     end
5754     %
5755     function Babel.pre_otfload_h(head, gc, sz, pt, dir)
5756       if Babel.numbers and Babel.digits_mapped then
5757         head = Babel.numbers(head)
5758       end
5759       if Babel.bidi_enabled then
5760         head = Babel.bidi(head, false, dir)
5761       end
5762       return head
5763     end
5764     %
5765     luatexbase.add_to_callback('pre_linebreak_filter',
5766       Babel.pre_otfload_v,
5767       'Babel.pre_otfload_v',
5768     luatexbase.priority_in_callback('pre_linebreak_filter',
5769       'luaotfload.node_processor') or nil)
5770     %
5771     luatexbase.add_to_callback('hpack_filter',
5772       Babel.pre_otfload_h,
5773       'Babel.pre_otfload_h',
5774     luatexbase.priority_in_callback('hpack_filter',
5775       'luaotfload.node_processor') or nil)
5776   }}

```

The basic setup. The output is modified at a very low level to set the `\bodydir` to the `\pagedir`. Sadly, we have to deal with boxes in math with basic, so the `\bbl@mathboxdir` hack is activated every math

with the package option bidi=.

```

5777 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode>100 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode<200
5778 \let\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
5779 \AtEndOfPackage{\EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}}
5780 \RequirePackage{luatexbase}
5781 \bbl@activate@preotf
5782 \directlua{
5783   require('babel-data-bidi.lua')
5784   \ifcase\expandafter\@gobbletwo\the\bbl@bidimode\or
5785     require('babel-bidi-basic.lua')
5786   \or
5787     require('babel-bidi-basic-r.lua')
5788   \fi}
5789 % TODO - to locale_props, not as separate attribute
5790 \newattribute\bbl@attr@dir
5791 \directlua{ Babel.attr_dir = luatexbase.registernumber'bbl@attr@dir' }
5792 % TODO. I don't like it, hackish:
5793 \bbl@exp{\output{\bodydir\pagedir\the\output}}
5794 \AtEndOfPackage{\EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}}
5795 \fi\fi
5796 \chardef\bbl@thetextdir\z@
5797 \chardef\bbl@thepardir\z@
5798 \def\bbl@getluadir#1{%
5799   \directlua{
5800     if tex.#1dir == 'TLT' then
5801       tex.sprint('0')
5802     elseif tex.#1dir == 'TRT' then
5803       tex.sprint('1')
5804     end}}
5805 \def\bbl@setluadir#1#2#3{% 1=text/par.. 2=\textdir.. 3=0 lr/1 rl
5806   \ifcase#3\relax
5807     \ifcase\bbl@getluadir{#1}\relax\else
5808       #2 TLT\relax
5809     \fi
5810   \else
5811     \ifcase\bbl@getluadir{#1}\relax
5812       #2 TRT\relax
5813     \fi
5814   \fi}
5815 \def\bbl@textdir#1{%
5816   \bbl@setluadir{text}\textdir{#1}%
5817   \chardef\bbl@thetextdir#1\relax
5818   \setattribute\bbl@attr@dir{\numexpr\bbl@thepardir*3+#1}}
5819 \def\bbl@pardir#1{%
5820   \bbl@setluadir{par}\pardir{#1}%
5821   \chardef\bbl@thepardir#1\relax}
5822 \def\bbl@bodydir{\bbl@setluadir{body}\bodydir}
5823 \def\bbl@pagedir{\bbl@setluadir{page}\pagedir}
5824 \def\bbl@dirparastext{\pardir\the\textdir\relax}% %%%
5825 %
5826 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode>\z@
5827   \def\bbl@mathboxdir{%
5828     \ifcase\bbl@thetextdir\relax
5829       \everyhbox{\bbl@mathboxdir@aux L}%
5830     \else
5831       \everyhbox{\bbl@mathboxdir@aux R}%
5832     \fi}
5833   \def\bbl@mathboxdir@aux#1{%

```

```

5834 \ifnextchar\egroup{}\textdir T#1T\relax}
5835 \frozen@everymath\expandafter{%
5836 \expandafter\bbl@mathboxdir\the\frozen@everymath}
5837 \frozen@everydisplay\expandafter{%
5838 \expandafter\bbl@mathboxdir\the\frozen@everydisplay}
5839 \fi
5840 \def\bbl@trueellap{%s
5841 \ifcase\bbl@attr@dir\expandafter\llap\else\expandafter\rlap\fi}
5842 \def\bbl@truerlap{%
5843 \ifcase\bbl@attr@dir\expandafter\rlap\else\expandafter\llap\fi}

```

## 13.10 Layout

Unlike xetex, luatex requires only minimal changes for right-to-left layouts, particularly in monolingual documents (the engine itself reverses boxes – including column order or headings –, margins, etc.) with `bidi=basic`, without having to patch almost any macro where text direction is relevant.

`\@hangfrom` is useful in many contexts and it is redefined always with the `layout` option.

There are, however, a number of issues when the text direction is not the same as the box direction (as set by `\bodydir`), and when `\parbox` and `\hangindent` are involved. Fortunately, latest releases of luatex simplify a lot the solution with `\shapemode`.

With the issue #15 I realized commands are best patched, instead of redefined. With a few lines, a modification could be applied to several classes and packages. Now, `tabular` seems to work (at least in simple cases) with `array`, `tabularx`, `hhline`, `colortbl`, `longtable`, `booktabs`, etc. However, `dcolumn` still fails.

```

5844 \bbl@trace{Redefinitions for bidi layout}
5845 \ifnum\bbl@bidimode>\z@
5846 \let\bbl@eqnodir\relax
5847 \AtBeginDocument{%
5848 \ifx\maketag@@@\undefined % Normal equation, eqnarray
5849 \AddToHook{env/eqnarray/begin}{%
5850 \ifnum\bbl@thetextdir>\z@
5851 \edef\bbl@eqnodir{\noexpand\bbl@textdir\the\bbl@thetextdir}}%
5852 \chardef\bbl@thetextdir\z@
5853 \bbl@add\normalfont{\bbl@eqnodir}%
5854 \fi}%
5855 \AddToHook{env/equation/begin}{%
5856 \ifnum\bbl@thetextdir>\z@
5857 \edef\bbl@eqnodir{\noexpand\bbl@textdir\the\bbl@thetextdir}}%
5858 \chardef\bbl@thetextdir\z@
5859 \bbl@add\normalfont{\bbl@eqnodir}%
5860 \pdir TLT % dir for \eqno is \pdir!
5861 \fi}%
5862 \bbl@xin@{\,leqno,}\{,\@classoptionslist,}%
5863 \ifin@
5864 \def\@eqnnum{%
5865 \setbox\z@\hbox{\normalfont\normalcolor(\theequation)}%
5866 \hbox to0.01pt{\hss\hbox to\displaywidth{\box\z@\hss}}}%
5867 \fi
5868 \else % amstex
5869 \bbl@sreplace\intertext@{\normalbaselines}%
5870 {\normalbaselines
5871 \ifx\bbl@eqnodir\relax\else\bbl@pdir\@ne\bbl@textdir\@ne\fi}
5872 \def\bbl@ams@tagbox#1#2{#1{\bbl@eqnodir#2}}% #1=\hbox|ams@lap
5873 \def\bbl@ams@eqtagbox#1{%
5874 \setbox\z@\hbox{\bbl@eqnodir#1}%
5875 \hbox to\wd\z@{%
5876 \ifx\bbl@ams@lap\hbox

```

```

5877         \hss\hbox to\displaywidth{\box\z@\hss}%
5878     \else
5879         \hbox to\displaywidth{\hss\box\z@}\hss
5880     \fi}}
5881 \def\bb1@ams@preset#1{%
5882     \ifnum\bb1@thetextdir>\z@
5883         \edef\bb1@eqnodir{\noexpand\bb1@textdir{\the\bb1@thetextdir}}%
5884         \chardef\bb1@thetextdir\z@
5885         \bb1@sreplace\textdef@{\hbox}{\bb1@ams@tagbox\hbox}%
5886         \bb1@sreplace\maketag@@@{\hbox}{\bb1@ams@tagbox#1}%
5887     \fi}
5888 \@ifpackagewith{amsmath}{leqno}%
5889     {\let\bb1@ams@lap\hbox}% = leqno
5890     {\let\bb1@ams@lap\llap}% = default
5891 % Not required?: split, alignat
5892 \AddToHook{env/cases/begin}{\bb1@ams@preset\bb1@ams@lap}%
5893 \AddToHook{env/multline/begin}{\bb1@ams@preset\hbox}%
5894 \AddToHook{env/gather/begin}{\bb1@ams@preset\bb1@ams@lap}%
5895 \AddToHook{env/gather*/begin}{\bb1@ams@preset\bb1@ams@lap}%
5896 \AddToHook{env/align/begin}{\bb1@ams@preset\bb1@ams@lap}%
5897 \AddToHook{env/align*/begin}{\bb1@ams@preset\bb1@ams@lap}%
5898 % Hackish, for proper alignment-don't ask me why it works! :-)
5899 \bb1@exp{%
5900     \\\AddToHook{env/align*/end}{\<iftag@>\<else>\\tag*{\<fi>}}%
5901 \AddToHook{env/flalign/begin}{\bb1@ams@preset\hbox}%
5902 \AddToHook{env/split/before}{%
5903     \def\bb1@tempa{equation}%
5904     \ifx\@currenvir\bb1@tempa
5905         \def\bb1@ams@eqtagbox#1{%
5906             \setbox\z@\hbox{\bb1@eqnodir#1}%
5907             \hbox to\wd\z@{\box\z@}}%
5908     \fi}
5909 \AddToHook{env/equation/begin}{%
5910     \bb1@add\ignorespacesafterend{\hrule\@height\z@}%
5911     \ifnum\bb1@thetextdir>\z@
5912         \ifx\bb1@ams@lap\llap\hrule\@height\z@\fi
5913         \def\bb1@eqnodir{\bb1@textdir\@ne}%
5914         \bb1@textdir\z@
5915         \bb1@sreplace\maketag@@@{\hbox}{\bb1@ams@eqtagbox}%
5916     \fi}%
5917 \AddToHook{env/equation*/begin}{%
5918     \bb1@add\ignorespacesafterend{\hrule\@height\z@}%
5919     \ifnum\bb1@thetextdir>\z@
5920         \def\bb1@eqnodir{\bb1@textdir\@ne}%
5921         \bb1@textdir\z@
5922         \bb1@sreplace\maketag@@@{\hbox}{\bb1@ams@eqtagbox}%
5923     \fi}%
5924 \fi}
5925 \fi
5926 \ifx\bb1@opt@layout\@nnil\endinput\fi % if no layout
5927 \ifnum\bb1@bidimode>\z@
5928     \def\bb1@nextfake#1{% non-local changes, use always inside a group!
5929         \bb1@exp{%
5930             \mathdir\the\bodydir
5931             #1%           Once entered in math, set boxes to restore values
5932             \<ifmmode>%
5933             \everyvbox{%
5934                 \the\everyvbox
5935                 \bodydir\the\bodydir

```



```

5936         \mathdir\the\mathdir
5937         \everyhbox{\the\everyhbox}%
5938         \everyvbox{\the\everyvbox}}%
5939     \everyhbox{%
5940         \the\everyhbox
5941         \bodydir\the\bodydir
5942         \mathdir\the\mathdir
5943         \everyhbox{\the\everyhbox}%
5944         \everyvbox{\the\everyvbox}}%
5945     \<fi>}}%
5946 \def\@hangfrom#1{%
5947     \setbox\@tempboxa\hbox{\{#1\}}%
5948     \hangindent\wd\@tempboxa
5949     \ifnum\bbbl@getluadir{page}=\bbbl@getluadir{par}\else
5950         \shapemode\@ne
5951     \fi
5952     \noindent\box\@tempboxa}
5953 \fi
5954 \IfBabelLayout{tabular}
5955 {\let\bbbl@OL@tabular\@tabular
5956  \bbbl@replace\@tabular{\$}\bbbl@nextfake$}%
5957 \let\bbbl@NL@tabular\@tabular
5958 \AtBeginDocument{%
5959     \ifx\bbbl@NL@tabular\@tabular\else
5960         \bbbl@replace\@tabular{\$}\bbbl@nextfake$}%
5961     \let\bbbl@NL@tabular\@tabular
5962     \fi}}
5963 {}
5964 \IfBabelLayout{lists}
5965 {\let\bbbl@OL@list\list
5966  \bbbl@sreplace\list{\parshape}\bbbl@listparshape}%
5967 \let\bbbl@NL@list\list
5968 \def\bbbl@listparshape#1#2#3{%
5969     \parshape #1 #2 #3 %
5970     \ifnum\bbbl@getluadir{page}=\bbbl@getluadir{par}\else
5971         \shapemode\tw@
5972     \fi}}
5973 {}
5974 \IfBabelLayout{graphics}
5975 {\let\bbbl@pictresetdir\relax
5976  \def\bbbl@pictsetdir#1{%
5977      \ifcase\bbbl@thetextdir
5978          \let\bbbl@pictresetdir\relax
5979      \else
5980          \ifcase#1\bodydir TLT % Remember this sets the inner boxes
5981              \or\textdir TLT
5982              \else\bodydir TLT \textdir TLT
5983          \fi
5984          % \ (text|par)dir required in pgf:
5985          \def\bbbl@pictresetdir{\bodydir TRT\pardir TRT\textdir TRT\relax}%
5986      \fi}%
5987 \ifx\AddToHook\@undefined\else
5988     \AddToHook{env/picture/begin}{\bbbl@pictsetdir\tw@}%
5989     \directlua{
5990         Babel.get_picture_dir = true
5991         Babel.picture_has_bidi = 0
5992         function Babel.picture_dir (head)
5993             if not Babel.get_picture_dir then return head end
5994             for item in node.traverse(head) do

```

```

5995         if item.id == node.id'glyph' then
5996             local itemchar = item.char
5997             % TODO. Copypaste pattern from Babel.bidi (-r)
5998             local chardata = Babel.characters[itemchar]
5999             local dir = chardata and chardata.d or nil
6000             if not dir then
6001                 for nn, et in ipairs(Babel.ranges) do
6002                     if itemchar < et[1] then
6003                         break
6004                     elseif itemchar <= et[2] then
6005                         dir = et[3]
6006                         break
6007                     end
6008                 end
6009             end
6010             if dir and (dir == 'al' or dir == 'r') then
6011                 Babel.picture_has_bidi = 1
6012             end
6013         end
6014     end
6015     return head
6016 end
6017 luatexbase.add_to_callback("hpack_filter", Babel.picture_dir,
6018     "Babel.picture_dir")
6019 }%
6020 \AtBeginDocument{%
6021     \long\def\put(#1,#2)#3{%
6022         \@killglue
6023         % Try:
6024         \ifx\bbl@pictresetdir\relax
6025             \def\bbl@tempc{0}%
6026         \else
6027             \directlua{
6028                 Babel.get_picture_dir = true
6029                 Babel.picture_has_bidi = 0
6030             }%
6031             \setbox\z@\hb@xt@\z@{%
6032                 \@defaultunitsset\@tempdimc{#1}\unitlength
6033                 \kern\@tempdimc
6034                 #3\hss}%
6035             \edef\bbl@tempc{\directlua{tex.print(Babel.picture_has_bidi)}}%
6036         \fi
6037         % Do:
6038         \@defaultunitsset\@tempdimc{#2}\unitlength
6039         \raise\@tempdimc\hb@xt@\z@{%
6040             \@defaultunitsset\@tempdimc{#1}\unitlength
6041             \kern\@tempdimc
6042             {\ifnum\bbl@tempc>\z@\bbl@pictresetdir\fi#3}\hss}%
6043         \ignorespaces}%
6044         \MakeRobust\put}%
6045     \fi
6046 \AtBeginDocument
6047     {\ifx\pgfpicture\undefined\else % TODO. Allow deactivate?
6048         \ifx\AddToHook\undefined
6049             \bbl@sreplace\pgfpicture{\pgfpicturetrue}%
6050             {\bbl@pictsetdir\z@\pgfpicturetrue}%
6051         \else
6052             \AddToHook{env/pgfpicture/begin}{\bbl@pictsetdir\@ne}%
6053         \fi

```



```

6106 \if b\expandafter\@car\f@series\@nil\boldmath\fi
6107 \babelsublr{%
6108 \LaTeX\kern.15em2\bbl@nextfake$_{\textstyle\varepsilon}$}}}}
6109 {}
6110 \end{luatex}

```

### 13.11 Lua: transforms

After declaring the table containing the patterns with their replacements, we define some auxiliary functions: `str_to_nodes` converts the string returned by a function to a node list, taking the node at base as a model (font, language, etc.); `fetch_word` fetches a series of glyphs and discretionaries, which pattern is matched against (if there is a match, it is called again before trying other patterns, and this is very likely the main bottleneck).

`post_hyphenate_replace` is the callback applied after `lang.hyphenate`. This means the automatic hyphenation points are known. As empty captures return a byte position (as explained in the `luatex` manual), we must convert it to a utf8 position. With `first`, the last byte can be the leading byte in a utf8 sequence, so we just remove it and add 1 to the resulting length. With `last` we must take into account the capture position points to the next character. Here `word_head` points to the starting node of the text to be matched.

```

6111 (*transforms)
6112 Babel.linebreaking.replacements = {}
6113 Babel.linebreaking.replacements[0] = {} -- pre
6114 Babel.linebreaking.replacements[1] = {} -- post
6115
6116 -- Discretionaries contain strings as nodes
6117 function Babel.str_to_nodes(fn, matches, base)
6118   local n, head, last
6119   if fn == nil then return nil end
6120   for s in string.utfvalues(fn(matches)) do
6121     if base.id == 7 then
6122       base = base.replace
6123     end
6124     n = node.copy(base)
6125     n.char = s
6126     if not head then
6127       head = n
6128     else
6129       last.next = n
6130     end
6131     last = n
6132   end
6133   return head
6134 end
6135
6136 Babel.fetch_subtext = {}
6137
6138 Babel.ignore_pre_char = function(node)
6139   return (node.lang == Babel.nohyphenation)
6140 end
6141
6142 -- Merging both functions doesn't seem feasible, because there are too
6143 -- many differences.
6144 Babel.fetch_subtext[0] = function(head)
6145   local word_string = ''
6146   local word_nodes = {}
6147   local lang
6148   local item = head
6149   local inmath = false

```

```

6150
6151 while item do
6152
6153     if item.id == 11 then
6154         inmath = (item.subtype == 0)
6155     end
6156
6157     if inmath then
6158         -- pass
6159
6160     elseif item.id == 29 then
6161         local locale = node.get_attribute(item, Babel.attr_locale)
6162
6163         if lang == locale or lang == nil then
6164             lang = lang or locale
6165             if Babel.ignore_pre_char(item) then
6166                 word_string = word_string .. Babel.us_char
6167             else
6168                 word_string = word_string .. unicode.utf8.char(item.char)
6169             end
6170             word_nodes[#word_nodes+1] = item
6171         else
6172             break
6173         end
6174
6175     elseif item.id == 12 and item.subtype == 13 then
6176         word_string = word_string .. ' '
6177         word_nodes[#word_nodes+1] = item
6178
6179         -- Ignore leading unrecognized nodes, too.
6180     elseif word_string ~= '' then
6181         word_string = word_string .. Babel.us_char
6182         word_nodes[#word_nodes+1] = item -- Will be ignored
6183     end
6184
6185     item = item.next
6186 end
6187
6188 -- Here and above we remove some trailing chars but not the
6189 -- corresponding nodes. But they aren't accessed.
6190 if word_string:sub(-1) == ' ' then
6191     word_string = word_string:sub(1,-2)
6192 end
6193 word_string = unicode.utf8.gsub(word_string, Babel.us_char .. '+$', '')
6194 return word_string, word_nodes, item, lang
6195 end
6196
6197 Babel.fetch_subtext[1] = function(head)
6198     local word_string = ''
6199     local word_nodes = {}
6200     local lang
6201     local item = head
6202     local inmath = false
6203
6204     while item do
6205
6206         if item.id == 11 then
6207             inmath = (item.subtype == 0)
6208         end

```

```

6209
6210     if inmath then
6211         -- pass
6212
6213     elseif item.id == 29 then
6214         if item.lang == lang or lang == nil then
6215             if (item.char ~= 124) and (item.char ~= 61) then -- not =, not |
6216                 lang = lang or item.lang
6217                 word_string = word_string .. unicode.utf8.char(item.char)
6218                 word_nodes[#word_nodes+1] = item
6219             end
6220         else
6221             break
6222         end
6223
6224     elseif item.id == 7 and item.subtype == 2 then
6225         word_string = word_string .. '='
6226         word_nodes[#word_nodes+1] = item
6227
6228     elseif item.id == 7 and item.subtype == 3 then
6229         word_string = word_string .. '|'
6230         word_nodes[#word_nodes+1] = item
6231
6232     -- (1) Go to next word if nothing was found, and (2) implicitly
6233     -- remove leading USs.
6234     elseif word_string == '' then
6235         -- pass
6236
6237     -- This is the responsible for splitting by words.
6238     elseif (item.id == 12 and item.subtype == 13) then
6239         break
6240
6241     else
6242         word_string = word_string .. Babel.us_char
6243         word_nodes[#word_nodes+1] = item -- Will be ignored
6244     end
6245
6246     item = item.next
6247 end
6248
6249 word_string = unicode.utf8.gsub(word_string, Babel.us_char .. '+$', '')
6250 return word_string, word_nodes, item, lang
6251 end
6252
6253 function Babel.pre_hyphenate_replace(head)
6254     Babel.hyphenate_replace(head, 0)
6255 end
6256
6257 function Babel.post_hyphenate_replace(head)
6258     Babel.hyphenate_replace(head, 1)
6259 end
6260
6261 Babel.us_char = string.char(31)
6262
6263 function Babel.hyphenate_replace(head, mode)
6264     local u = unicode.utf8
6265     local lbkr = Babel.linebreaking.replacements[mode]
6266
6267     local word_head = head

```

```

6268
6269 while true do -- for each subtext block
6270
6271     local w, w_nodes, nw, lang = Babel.fetch_subtext[mode](word_head)
6272
6273     if Babel.debug then
6274         print()
6275         print((mode == 0) and '@@@<' or '@@@>', w)
6276     end
6277
6278     if nw == nil and w == '' then break end
6279
6280     if not lang then goto next end
6281     if not lbkr[lang] then goto next end
6282
6283     -- For each saved (pre|post)hyphenation. TODO. Reconsider how
6284     -- loops are nested.
6285     for k=1, #lbkr[lang] do
6286         local p = lbkr[lang][k].pattern
6287         local r = lbkr[lang][k].replace
6288         local attr = lbkr[lang][k].attr or -1
6289
6290         if Babel.debug then
6291             print('*****', p, mode)
6292         end
6293
6294         -- This variable is set in some cases below to the first *byte*
6295         -- after the match, either as found by u.match (faster) or the
6296         -- computed position based on sc if w has changed.
6297         local last_match = 0
6298         local step = 0
6299
6300         -- For every match.
6301         while true do
6302             if Babel.debug then
6303                 print('====')
6304             end
6305             local new -- used when inserting and removing nodes
6306
6307             local matches = { u.match(w, p, last_match) }
6308
6309             if #matches < 2 then break end
6310
6311             -- Get and remove empty captures (with ()'s, which return a
6312             -- number with the position), and keep actual captures
6313             -- (from (...)), if any, in matches.
6314             local first = table.remove(matches, 1)
6315             local last = table.remove(matches, #matches)
6316             -- Non re-fetched substrings may contain \31, which separates
6317             -- subsubstrings.
6318             if string.find(w:sub(first, last-1), Babel.us_char) then break end
6319
6320             local save_last = last -- with A()BC()D, points to D
6321
6322             -- Fix offsets, from bytes to unicode. Explained above.
6323             first = u.len(w:sub(1, first-1)) + 1
6324             last = u.len(w:sub(1, last-1)) -- now last points to C
6325
6326             -- This loop stores in a small table the nodes

```

```

6327 -- corresponding to the pattern. Used by 'data' to provide a
6328 -- predictable behavior with 'insert' (w_nodes is modified on
6329 -- the fly), and also access to 'remove'd nodes.
6330 local sc = first-1 -- Used below, too
6331 local data_nodes = {}
6332
6333 local enabled = true
6334 for q = 1, last-first+1 do
6335     data_nodes[q] = w_nodes[sc+q]
6336     if enabled
6337         and attr > -1
6338         and not node.has_attribute(data_nodes[q], attr)
6339     then
6340         enabled = false
6341     end
6342 end
6343
6344 -- This loop traverses the matched substring and takes the
6345 -- corresponding action stored in the replacement list.
6346 -- sc = the position in substr nodes / string
6347 -- rc = the replacement table index
6348 local rc = 0
6349
6350 while rc < last-first+1 do -- for each replacement
6351     if Babel.debug then
6352         print('.....', rc + 1)
6353     end
6354     sc = sc + 1
6355     rc = rc + 1
6356
6357     if Babel.debug then
6358         Babel.debug_hyph(w, w_nodes, sc, first, last, last_match)
6359         local ss = ''
6360         for itt in node.traverse(head) do
6361             if itt.id == 29 then
6362                 ss = ss .. unicode.utf8.char(itt.char)
6363             else
6364                 ss = ss .. '{' .. itt.id .. '}'
6365             end
6366         end
6367         print('*****', ss)
6368     end
6369
6370     local crep = r[rc]
6371     local item = w_nodes[sc]
6372     local item_base = item
6373     local placeholder = Babel.us_char
6374     local d
6375
6376     if crep and crep.data then
6377         item_base = data_nodes[crep.data]
6378     end
6379
6380     if crep then
6381         step = crep.step or 0
6382     end
6383
6384     if (not enabled) or (crep and next(crep) == nil) then -- = {}
6385

```



```

6386         last_match = save_last    -- Optimization
6387         goto next
6388
6389     elseif crep == nil or crep.remove then
6390         node.remove(head, item)
6391         table.remove(w_nodes, sc)
6392         w = u.sub(w, 1, sc-1) .. u.sub(w, sc+1)
6393         sc = sc - 1 -- Nothing has been inserted.
6394         last_match = utf8.offset(w, sc+1+step)
6395         goto next
6396
6397     elseif crep and crep.kashida then -- Experimental
6398         node.set_attribute(item,
6399             Babel.attr_kashida,
6400             crep.kashida)
6401         last_match = utf8.offset(w, sc+1+step)
6402         goto next
6403
6404     elseif crep and crep.string then
6405         local str = crep.string(matches)
6406         if str == '' then -- Gather with nil
6407             node.remove(head, item)
6408             table.remove(w_nodes, sc)
6409             w = u.sub(w, 1, sc-1) .. u.sub(w, sc+1)
6410             sc = sc - 1 -- Nothing has been inserted.
6411         else
6412             local loop_first = true
6413             for s in string.utfvalues(str) do
6414                 d = node.copy(item_base)
6415                 d.char = s
6416                 if loop_first then
6417                     loop_first = false
6418                     head, new = node.insert_before(head, item, d)
6419                     if sc == 1 then
6420                         word_head = head
6421                     end
6422                     w_nodes[sc] = d
6423                     w = u.sub(w, 1, sc-1) .. u.char(s) .. u.sub(w, sc+1)
6424                 else
6425                     sc = sc + 1
6426                     head, new = node.insert_before(head, item, d)
6427                     table.insert(w_nodes, sc, new)
6428                     w = u.sub(w, 1, sc-1) .. u.char(s) .. u.sub(w, sc)
6429                 end
6430                 if Babel.debug then
6431                     print('.....', 'str')
6432                     Babel.debug_hyph(w, w_nodes, sc, first, last, last_match)
6433                 end
6434             end -- for
6435             node.remove(head, item)
6436         end -- if ''
6437         last_match = utf8.offset(w, sc+1+step)
6438         goto next
6439
6440     elseif mode == 1 and crep and (crep.pre or crep.no or crep.post) then
6441         d = node.new(7, 0) -- (disc, discretionary)
6442         d.pre = Babel.str_to_nodes(crep.pre, matches, item_base)
6443         d.post = Babel.str_to_nodes(crep.post, matches, item_base)
6444         d.replace = Babel.str_to_nodes(crep.no, matches, item_base)

```

```

6445         d.attr = item_base.attr
6446         if crep.pre == nil then -- TeXbook p96
6447             d.penalty = crep.penalty or tex.hyphenpenalty
6448         else
6449             d.penalty = crep.penalty or tex.exhyphenpenalty
6450         end
6451         placeholder = '|'
6452         head, new = node.insert_before(head, item, d)
6453
6454     elseif mode == 0 and crep and (crep.pre or crep.no or crep.post) then
6455         -- ERROR
6456
6457     elseif crep and crep.penalty then
6458         d = node.new(14, 0) -- (penalty, userpenalty)
6459         d.attr = item_base.attr
6460         d.penalty = crep.penalty
6461         head, new = node.insert_before(head, item, d)
6462
6463     elseif crep and crep.space then
6464         -- 655360 = 10 pt = 10 * 65536 sp
6465         d = node.new(12, 13) -- (glue, spaceskip)
6466         local quad = font.getfont(item_base.font).size or 655360
6467         node.setglue(d, crep.space[1] * quad,
6468                       crep.space[2] * quad,
6469                       crep.space[3] * quad)
6470         if mode == 0 then
6471             placeholder = ' '
6472         end
6473         head, new = node.insert_before(head, item, d)
6474
6475     elseif crep and crep.spacefactor then
6476         d = node.new(12, 13) -- (glue, spaceskip)
6477         local base_font = font.getfont(item_base.font)
6478         node.setglue(d,
6479                     crep.spacefactor[1] * base_font.parameters['space'],
6480                     crep.spacefactor[2] * base_font.parameters['space_stretch'],
6481                     crep.spacefactor[3] * base_font.parameters['space_shrink'])
6482         if mode == 0 then
6483             placeholder = ' '
6484         end
6485         head, new = node.insert_before(head, item, d)
6486
6487     elseif mode == 0 and crep and crep.space then
6488         -- ERROR
6489
6490     end -- ie replacement cases
6491
6492     -- Shared by disc, space and penalty.
6493     if sc == 1 then
6494         word_head = head
6495     end
6496     if crep.insert then
6497         w = u.sub(w, 1, sc-1) .. placeholder .. u.sub(w, sc)
6498         table.insert(w_nodes, sc, new)
6499         last = last + 1
6500     else
6501         w_nodes[sc] = d
6502         node.remove(head, item)
6503         w = u.sub(w, 1, sc-1) .. placeholder .. u.sub(w, sc+1)

```

```

6504         end
6505
6506         last_match = utf8.offset(w, sc+1+step)
6507
6508         ::next::
6509
6510     end -- for each replacement
6511
6512     if Babel.debug then
6513         print('.....', '/')
6514         Babel.debug_hyph(w, w_nodes, sc, first, last, last_match)
6515     end
6516
6517     end -- for match
6518
6519     end -- for patterns
6520
6521     ::next::
6522     word_head = nw
6523 end -- for substring
6524 return head
6525 end
6526
6527 -- This table stores capture maps, numbered consecutively
6528 Babel.capture_maps = {}
6529
6530 -- The following functions belong to the next macro
6531 function Babel.capture_func(key, cap)
6532     local ret = "[" .. cap:gsub('{{[0-9]}}', "]]..m[%1]..[" .. "]"
6533     local cnt
6534     local u = unicode.utf8
6535     ret, cnt = ret:gsub('{{[0-9]}|([^\]]+)|(.-)}', Babel.capture_func_map)
6536     if cnt == 0 then
6537         ret = u.gsub(ret, '{{(%x%x%x%x+)}',
6538             function (n)
6539                 return u.char(tonumber(n, 16))
6540             end)
6541     end
6542     ret = ret:gsub("%[%[%]]%.%", '')
6543     ret = ret:gsub("%.%.%[%[%]]%", '')
6544     return key .. [[=function(m) return ]] .. ret .. [[ end]]
6545 end
6546
6547 function Babel.capt_map(from, mapno)
6548     return Babel.capture_maps[mapno][from] or from
6549 end
6550
6551 -- Handle the {n|abc|ABC} syntax in captures
6552 function Babel.capture_func_map(capno, from, to)
6553     local u = unicode.utf8
6554     from = u.gsub(from, '{{(%x%x%x%x+)}',
6555         function (n)
6556             return u.char(tonumber(n, 16))
6557         end)
6558     to = u.gsub(to, '{{(%x%x%x%x+)}',
6559         function (n)
6560             return u.char(tonumber(n, 16))
6561         end)
6562     local froms = {}

```

```

6563 for s in string.utfcharacters(from) do
6564     table.insert(froms, s)
6565 end
6566 local cnt = 1
6567 table.insert(Babel.capture_maps, {})
6568 local mlen = table.getn(Babel.capture_maps)
6569 for s in string.utfcharacters(to) do
6570     Babel.capture_maps[mlen][froms[cnt]] = s
6571     cnt = cnt + 1
6572 end
6573 return "]]..Babel.capt_map(m[" .. capno .. "]," ..
6574     (mlen) .. ").." .. "[["
6575 end
6576
6577 -- Create/Extend reversed sorted list of kashida weights:
6578 function Babel.capture_kashida(key, wt)
6579     wt = tonumber(wt)
6580     if Babel.kashida_wts then
6581         for p, q in ipairs(Babel.kashida_wts) do
6582             if wt == q then
6583                 break
6584             elseif wt > q then
6585                 table.insert(Babel.kashida_wts, p, wt)
6586                 break
6587             elseif table.getn(Babel.kashida_wts) == p then
6588                 table.insert(Babel.kashida_wts, wt)
6589             end
6590         end
6591     else
6592         Babel.kashida_wts = { wt }
6593     end
6594     return 'kashida = ' .. wt
6595 end
6596 </transforms>

```

## 13.12 Lua: Auto bidi with basic and basic-r

The file `babel-data-bidi.lua` currently only contains data. It is a large and boring file and it is not shown here (see the generated file), but here is a sample:

```

[0x25]={d='et'},
[0x26]={d='on'},
[0x27]={d='on'},
[0x28]={d='on', m=0x29},
[0x29]={d='on', m=0x28},
[0x2A]={d='on'},
[0x2B]={d='es'},
[0x2C]={d='cs'},

```

For the meaning of these codes, see the Unicode standard.

Now the `basic-r` bidi mode. One of the aims is to implement a fast and simple bidi algorithm, with a single loop. I managed to do it for R texts, with a second smaller loop for a special case. The code is still somewhat chaotic, but its behavior is essentially correct. I cannot resist copying the following text from Emacs `bidi.c` (which also attempts to implement the bidi algorithm with a single loop):

Arrrgh!! The UAX#9 algorithm is too deeply entrenched in the assumption of batch-style processing [...]. May the fleas of a thousand camels infest the armpits of those who design supposedly general-purpose algorithms by looking at their own implementations, and fail to consider other possible implementations!

Well, it took me some time to guess what the batch rules in UAX#9 actually mean (in other word, *what* they do and *why*, and not only *how*), but I think (or I hope) I've managed to understand them. In some sense, there are two bidi modes, one for numbers, and the other for text. Furthermore, setting just the direction in R text is not enough, because there are actually *two* R modes (set explicitly in Unicode with RLM and ALM). In babel the dir is set by a higher protocol based on the language/script, which in turn sets the correct dir (<l>, <r> or <al>).

From UAX#9: "Where available, markup should be used instead of the explicit formatting characters". So, this simple version just ignores formatting characters. Actually, most of that annex is devoted to how to handle them.

BD14-BD16 are not implemented. Unicode (and the W3C) are making a great effort to deal with some special problematic cases in "streamed" plain text. I don't think this is the way to go – particular issues should be fixed by a high level interface taking into account the needs of the document. And here is where luatex excels, because everything related to bidi writing is under our control.

```

6597 (*basic-r)
6598 Babel = Babel or {}
6599
6600 Babel.bidi_enabled = true
6601
6602 require('babel-data-bidi.lua')
6603
6604 local characters = Babel.characters
6605 local ranges = Babel.ranges
6606
6607 local DIR = node.id("dir")
6608
6609 local function dir_mark(head, from, to, outer)
6610   dir = (outer == 'r') and 'TLT' or 'TRT' -- ie, reverse
6611   local d = node.new(DIR)
6612   d.dir = '+' .. dir
6613   node.insert_before(head, from, d)
6614   d = node.new(DIR)
6615   d.dir = '-' .. dir
6616   node.insert_after(head, to, d)
6617 end
6618
6619 function Babel.bidi(head, ispar)
6620   local first_n, last_n      -- first and last char with nums
6621   local last_es              -- an auxiliary 'last' used with nums
6622   local first_d, last_d      -- first and last char in L/R block
6623   local dir, dir_real

```

Next also depends on script/lang (<al>/<r>). To be set by babel. tex.pardir is dangerous, could be (re)set but it should be changed only in vmode. There are two strong's – strong = l/al/r and strong\_lr = l/r (there must be a better way):

```

6624   local strong = ('TRT' == tex.pardir) and 'r' or 'l'
6625   local strong_lr = (strong == 'l') and 'l' or 'r'
6626   local outer = strong
6627
6628   local new_dir = false
6629   local first_dir = false
6630   local inmath = false
6631
6632   local last_lr
6633
6634   local type_n = ''
6635
6636   for item in node.traverse(head) do
6637
6638     -- three cases: glyph, dir, otherwise

```

```

6639   if item.id == node.id'glyph'
6640     or (item.id == 7 and item.subtype == 2) then
6641
6642     local itemchar
6643     if item.id == 7 and item.subtype == 2 then
6644       itemchar = item.replace.char
6645     else
6646       itemchar = item.char
6647     end
6648     local chardata = characters[itemchar]
6649     dir = chardata and chardata.d or nil
6650     if not dir then
6651       for nn, et in ipairs(ranges) do
6652         if itemchar < et[1] then
6653           break
6654         elseif itemchar <= et[2] then
6655           dir = et[3]
6656           break
6657         end
6658       end
6659     end
6660     dir = dir or 'l'
6661     if inmath then dir = ('TRT' == tex.mathdir) and 'r' or 'l' end

```

Next is based on the assumption babel sets the language AND switches the script with its dir. We treat a language block as a separate Unicode sequence. The following piece of code is executed at the first glyph after a 'dir' node. We don't know the current language until then. This is not exactly true, as the math mode may insert explicit dirs in the node list, so, for the moment there is a hack by brute force (just above).

```

6662   if new_dir then
6663     attr_dir = 0
6664     for at in node.traverse(item.attr) do
6665       if at.number == Babel.attr_dir then
6666         attr_dir = at.value % 3
6667       end
6668     end
6669     if attr_dir == 1 then
6670       strong = 'r'
6671     elseif attr_dir == 2 then
6672       strong = 'al'
6673     else
6674       strong = 'l'
6675     end
6676     strong_lr = (strong == 'l') and 'l' or 'r'
6677     outer = strong_lr
6678     new_dir = false
6679   end
6680
6681   if dir == 'nsm' then dir = strong end -- W1

```

**Numbers.** The dual <al>/<r> system for R is somewhat cumbersome.

```

6682   dir_real = dir -- We need dir_real to set strong below
6683   if dir == 'al' then dir = 'r' end -- W3

```

By W2, there are no <en> <et> <es> if strong == <al>, only <an>. Therefore, there are not <et en> nor <en et>, W5 can be ignored, and W6 applied:

```

6684   if strong == 'al' then
6685     if dir == 'en' then dir = 'an' end -- W2
6686     if dir == 'et' or dir == 'es' then dir = 'on' end -- W6

```

```

6687         strong_lr = 'r'                                -- W3
6688     end

```

Once finished the basic setup for glyphs, consider the two other cases: dir node and the rest.

```

6689     elseif item.id == node.id'dir' and not inmath then
6690         new_dir = true
6691         dir = nil
6692     elseif item.id == node.id'math' then
6693         inmath = (item.subtype == 0)
6694     else
6695         dir = nil          -- Not a char
6696     end

```

Numbers in R mode. A sequence of <en>, <et>, <an>, <es> and <cs> is typeset (with some rules) in L mode. We store the starting and ending points, and only when anything different is found (including nil, ie, a non-char), the textdir is set. This means you cannot insert, say, a whatsit, but this is what I would expect (with luacolor you may colorize some digits). Anyway, this behavior could be changed with a switch in the future. Note in the first branch only <an> is relevant if <al>.

```

6697     if dir == 'en' or dir == 'an' or dir == 'et' then
6698         if dir ~= 'et' then
6699             type_n = dir
6700         end
6701         first_n = first_n or item
6702         last_n = last_n or item
6703         last_es = nil
6704     elseif dir == 'es' and last_n then -- W3+W6
6705         last_es = item
6706     elseif dir == 'cs' then          -- it's right - do nothing
6707     elseif first_n then -- & if dir = any but en, et, an, es, cs, inc nil
6708         if strong_lr == 'r' and type_n ~= '' then
6709             dir_mark(head, first_n, last_n, 'r')
6710         elseif strong_lr == 'l' and first_d and type_n == 'an' then
6711             dir_mark(head, first_n, last_n, 'r')
6712             dir_mark(head, first_d, last_d, outer)
6713             first_d, last_d = nil, nil
6714         elseif strong_lr == 'l' and type_n ~= '' then
6715             last_d = last_n
6716         end
6717         type_n = ''
6718         first_n, last_n = nil, nil
6719     end

```

R text in L, or L text in R. Order of dir\_ mark's are relevant: d goes outside n, and therefore it's emitted after. See dir\_mark to understand why (but is the nesting actually necessary or is a flat dir structure enough?). Only L, R (and AL) chars are taken into account – everything else, including spaces, whatsits, etc., are ignored:

```

6720     if dir == 'l' or dir == 'r' then
6721         if dir ~= outer then
6722             first_d = first_d or item
6723             last_d = item
6724         elseif first_d and dir ~= strong_lr then
6725             dir_mark(head, first_d, last_d, outer)
6726             first_d, last_d = nil, nil
6727         end
6728     end

```

**Mirroring.** Each chunk of text in a certain language is considered a “closed” sequence. If <r on r> and <l on l>, it's clearly <r> and <l>, resptly, but with other combinations depends on outer. From all these, we select only those resolving <on> → <r>. At the beginning (when last\_lr is nil) of an R text, they are mirrored directly.

TODO - numbers in R mode are processed. It doesn't hurt, but should not be done.

```
6729   if dir and not last_lr and dir ~= 'l' and outer == 'r' then
6730       item.char = characters[item.char] and
6731           characters[item.char].m or item.char
6732   elseif (dir or new_dir) and last_lr ~= item then
6733       local mir = outer .. strong_lr .. (dir or outer)
6734       if mir == 'rrr' or mir == 'lrr' or mir == 'rrl' or mir == 'rlr' then
6735           for ch in node.traverse(node.next(last_lr)) do
6736               if ch == item then break end
6737               if ch.id == node.id'glyph' and characters[ch.char] then
6738                   ch.char = characters[ch.char].m or ch.char
6739               end
6740           end
6741       end
6742   end
```

Save some values for the next iteration. If the current node is 'dir', open a new sequence. Since dir could be changed, strong is set with its real value (dir\_real).

```
6743   if dir == 'l' or dir == 'r' then
6744       last_lr = item
6745       strong = dir_real           -- Don't search back - best save now
6746       strong_lr = (strong == 'l') and 'l' or 'r'
6747   elseif new_dir then
6748       last_lr = nil
6749   end
6750 end
```

Mirror the last chars if they are no directed. And make sure any open block is closed, too.

```
6751   if last_lr and outer == 'r' then
6752       for ch in node.traverse_id(node.id'glyph', node.next(last_lr)) do
6753           if characters[ch.char] then
6754               ch.char = characters[ch.char].m or ch.char
6755           end
6756       end
6757   end
6758   if first_n then
6759       dir_mark(head, first_n, last_n, outer)
6760   end
6761   if first_d then
6762       dir_mark(head, first_d, last_d, outer)
6763   end
```

In boxes, the dir node could be added before the original head, so the actual head is the previous node.

```
6764   return node.prev(head) or head
6765 end
6766 </basic-r>
```

And here the Lua code for bidi=basic:

```
6767 <(*basic)
6768 Babel = Babel or {}
6769
6770 -- eg, Babel.fontmap[1][<prefontid>]=<dirfontid>
6771
6772 Babel.fontmap = Babel.fontmap or {}
6773 Babel.fontmap[0] = {}      -- l
6774 Babel.fontmap[1] = {}      -- r
6775 Babel.fontmap[2] = {}      -- al/an
6776
```



```

6777 Babel.bidi_enabled = true
6778 Babel.mirroring_enabled = true
6779
6780 require('babel-data-bidi.lua')
6781
6782 local characters = Babel.characters
6783 local ranges = Babel.ranges
6784
6785 local DIR = node.id('dir')
6786 local GLYPH = node.id('glyph')
6787
6788 local function insert_implicit(head, state, outer)
6789   local new_state = state
6790   if state.sim and state.eim and state.sim ~= state.eim then
6791     dir = ((outer == 'r') and 'TLT' or 'TRT') -- ie, reverse
6792     local d = node.new(DIR)
6793     d.dir = '+' .. dir
6794     node.insert_before(head, state.sim, d)
6795     local d = node.new(DIR)
6796     d.dir = '-' .. dir
6797     node.insert_after(head, state.eim, d)
6798   end
6799   new_state.sim, new_state.eim = nil, nil
6800   return head, new_state
6801 end
6802
6803 local function insert_numeric(head, state)
6804   local new
6805   local new_state = state
6806   if state.san and state.ean and state.san ~= state.ean then
6807     local d = node.new(DIR)
6808     d.dir = '+TLT'
6809     _, new = node.insert_before(head, state.san, d)
6810     if state.san == state.sim then state.sim = new end
6811     local d = node.new(DIR)
6812     d.dir = '-TLT'
6813     _, new = node.insert_after(head, state.ean, d)
6814     if state.ean == state.eim then state.eim = new end
6815   end
6816   new_state.san, new_state.ean = nil, nil
6817   return head, new_state
6818 end
6819
6820 -- TODO - \hbox with an explicit dir can lead to wrong results
6821 -- <R \hbox dir TLT{<R>}> and <L \hbox dir TRT{<L>}>. A small attempt
6822 -- was s made to improve the situation, but the problem is the 3-dir
6823 -- model in babel/Unicode and the 2-dir model in LuaTeX don't fit
6824 -- well.
6825
6826 function Babel.bidi(head, ispar, hdir)
6827   local d -- d is used mainly for computations in a loop
6828   local prev_d = ''
6829   local new_d = false
6830
6831   local nodes = {}
6832   local outer_first = nil
6833   local inmath = false
6834
6835   local glue_d = nil

```

```

6836 local glue_i = nil
6837
6838 local has_en = false
6839 local first_et = nil
6840
6841 local ATDIR = Babel.attr_dir
6842
6843 local save_outer
6844 local temp = node.get_attribute(head, ATDIR)
6845 if temp then
6846     temp = temp % 3
6847     save_outer = (temp == 0 and 'l') or
6848                  (temp == 1 and 'r') or
6849                  (temp == 2 and 'al')
6850 elseif ispar then -- Or error? Shouldn't happen
6851     save_outer = ('TRT' == tex.pardir) and 'r' or 'l'
6852 else -- Or error? Shouldn't happen
6853     save_outer = ('TRT' == hdir) and 'r' or 'l'
6854 end
6855 -- when the callback is called, we are just _after_ the box,
6856 -- and the textdir is that of the surrounding text
6857 -- if not ispar and hdir ~= tex.textdir then
6858 --     save_outer = ('TRT' == hdir) and 'r' or 'l'
6859 -- end
6860 local outer = save_outer
6861 local last = outer
6862 -- 'al' is only taken into account in the first, current loop
6863 if save_outer == 'al' then save_outer = 'r' end
6864
6865 local fontmap = Babel.fontmap
6866
6867 for item in node.traverse(head) do
6868
6869     -- In what follows, #node is the last (previous) node, because the
6870     -- current one is not added until we start processing the neutrals.
6871
6872     -- three cases: glyph, dir, otherwise
6873     if item.id == GLYPH
6874         or (item.id == 7 and item.subtype == 2) then
6875
6876         local d_font = nil
6877         local item_r
6878         if item.id == 7 and item.subtype == 2 then
6879             item_r = item.replace -- automatic discs have just 1 glyph
6880         else
6881             item_r = item
6882         end
6883         local chardata = characters[item_r.char]
6884         d = chardata and chardata.d or nil
6885         if not d or d == 'nsm' then
6886             for nn, et in ipairs(ranges) do
6887                 if item_r.char < et[1] then
6888                     break
6889                 elseif item_r.char <= et[2] then
6890                     if not d then d = et[3]
6891                     elseif d == 'nsm' then d_font = et[3]
6892                     end
6893                     break
6894                 end
6895             end
6896         end
6897     end
6898 end

```

```

6895         end
6896     end
6897     d = d or 'l'
6898
6899     -- A short 'pause' in bidi for mapfont
6900     d_font = d_font or d
6901     d_font = (d_font == 'l' and 0) or
6902             (d_font == 'nsm' and 0) or
6903             (d_font == 'r' and 1) or
6904             (d_font == 'al' and 2) or
6905             (d_font == 'an' and 2) or nil
6906     if d_font and fontmap and fontmap[d_font][item_r.font] then
6907         item_r.font = fontmap[d_font][item_r.font]
6908     end
6909
6910     if new_d then
6911         table.insert(nodes, {nil, (outer == 'l') and 'l' or 'r', nil})
6912         if inmath then
6913             attr_d = 0
6914         else
6915             attr_d = node.get_attribute(item, ATDIR)
6916             attr_d = attr_d % 3
6917         end
6918         if attr_d == 1 then
6919             outer_first = 'r'
6920             last = 'r'
6921         elseif attr_d == 2 then
6922             outer_first = 'r'
6923             last = 'al'
6924         else
6925             outer_first = 'l'
6926             last = 'l'
6927         end
6928         outer = last
6929         has_en = false
6930         first_et = nil
6931         new_d = false
6932     end
6933
6934     if glue_d then
6935         if (d == 'l' and 'l' or 'r') ~= glue_d then
6936             table.insert(nodes, {glue_i, 'on', nil})
6937         end
6938         glue_d = nil
6939         glue_i = nil
6940     end
6941
6942     elseif item.id == DIR then
6943         d = nil
6944         if head ~= item then new_d = true end
6945
6946     elseif item.id == node.id'glue' and item.subtype == 13 then
6947         glue_d = d
6948         glue_i = item
6949         d = nil
6950
6951     elseif item.id == node.id'math' then
6952         inmath = (item.subtype == 0)
6953

```

```

6954     else
6955         d = nil
6956     end
6957
6958     -- AL <= EN/ET/ES      -- W2 + W3 + W6
6959     if last == 'al' and d == 'en' then
6960         d = 'an'          -- W3
6961     elseif last == 'al' and (d == 'et' or d == 'es') then
6962         d = 'on'          -- W6
6963     end
6964
6965     -- EN + CS/ES + EN      -- W4
6966     if d == 'en' and #nodes >= 2 then
6967         if (nodes[#nodes][2] == 'es' or nodes[#nodes][2] == 'cs')
6968             and nodes[#nodes-1][2] == 'en' then
6969             nodes[#nodes][2] = 'en'
6970         end
6971     end
6972
6973     -- AN + CS + AN          -- W4 too, because uax9 mixes both cases
6974     if d == 'an' and #nodes >= 2 then
6975         if (nodes[#nodes][2] == 'cs')
6976             and nodes[#nodes-1][2] == 'an' then
6977             nodes[#nodes][2] = 'an'
6978         end
6979     end
6980
6981     -- ET/EN                  -- W5 + W7->l / W6->on
6982     if d == 'et' then
6983         first_et = first_et or (#nodes + 1)
6984     elseif d == 'en' then
6985         has_en = true
6986         first_et = first_et or (#nodes + 1)
6987     elseif first_et then      -- d may be nil here !
6988         if has_en then
6989             if last == 'l' then
6990                 temp = 'l'    -- W7
6991             else
6992                 temp = 'en'   -- W5
6993             end
6994         else
6995             temp = 'on'       -- W6
6996         end
6997         for e = first_et, #nodes do
6998             if nodes[e][1].id == GLYPH then nodes[e][2] = temp end
6999         end
7000         first_et = nil
7001         has_en = false
7002     end
7003
7004     -- Force mathdir in math if ON (currently works as expected only
7005     -- with 'l')
7006     if inmath and d == 'on' then
7007         d = ('TRT' == tex.mathdir) and 'r' or 'l'
7008     end
7009
7010     if d then
7011         if d == 'al' then
7012             d = 'r'

```

```

7013         last = 'al'
7014     elseif d == 'l' or d == 'r' then
7015         last = d
7016     end
7017     prev_d = d
7018     table.insert(nodes, {item, d, outer_first})
7019 end
7020
7021 outer_first = nil
7022
7023 end
7024
7025 -- TODO -- repeated here in case EN/ET is the last node. Find a
7026 -- better way of doing things:
7027 if first_et then      -- dir may be nil here !
7028     if has_en then
7029         if last == 'l' then
7030             temp = 'l'    -- W7
7031         else
7032             temp = 'en'   -- W5
7033         end
7034     else
7035         temp = 'on'      -- W6
7036     end
7037     for e = first_et, #nodes do
7038         if nodes[e][1].id == GLYPH then nodes[e][2] = temp end
7039     end
7040 end
7041
7042 -- dummy node, to close things
7043 table.insert(nodes, {nil, (outer == 'l') and 'l' or 'r', nil})
7044
7045 ----- NEUTRAL -----
7046
7047 outer = save_outer
7048 last = outer
7049
7050 local first_on = nil
7051
7052 for q = 1, #nodes do
7053     local item
7054
7055     local outer_first = nodes[q][3]
7056     outer = outer_first or outer
7057     last = outer_first or last
7058
7059     local d = nodes[q][2]
7060     if d == 'an' or d == 'en' then d = 'r' end
7061     if d == 'cs' or d == 'et' or d == 'es' then d = 'on' end --- W6
7062
7063     if d == 'on' then
7064         first_on = first_on or q
7065     elseif first_on then
7066         if last == d then
7067             temp = d
7068         else
7069             temp = outer
7070         end
7071         for r = first_on, q - 1 do

```

```

7072     nodes[r][2] = temp
7073     item = nodes[r][1]    -- MIRRORING
7074     if Babel.mirroring_enabled and item.id == GLYPH
7075         and temp == 'r' and characters[item.char] then
7076         local font_mode = font.fonts[item.font].properties.mode
7077         if font_mode ~= 'harf' and font_mode ~= 'plug' then
7078             item.char = characters[item.char].m or item.char
7079         end
7080     end
7081 end
7082 first_on = nil
7083 end
7084
7085     if d == 'r' or d == 'l' then last = d end
7086 end
7087
7088 ----- IMPLICIT, REORDER -----
7089
7090 outer = save_outer
7091 last = outer
7092
7093 local state = {}
7094 state.has_r = false
7095
7096 for q = 1, #nodes do
7097
7098     local item = nodes[q][1]
7099
7100     outer = nodes[q][3] or outer
7101
7102     local d = nodes[q][2]
7103
7104     if d == 'nsm' then d = last end          -- W1
7105     if d == 'en' then d = 'an' end
7106     local isdir = (d == 'r' or d == 'l')
7107
7108     if outer == 'l' and d == 'an' then
7109         state.san = state.san or item
7110         state.ean = item
7111     elseif state.san then
7112         head, state = insert_numeric(head, state)
7113     end
7114
7115     if outer == 'l' then
7116         if d == 'an' or d == 'r' then      -- im -> implicit
7117             if d == 'r' then state.has_r = true end
7118             state.sim = state.sim or item
7119             state.eim = item
7120         elseif d == 'l' and state.sim and state.has_r then
7121             head, state = insert_implicit(head, state, outer)
7122         elseif d == 'l' then
7123             state.sim, state.eim, state.has_r = nil, nil, false
7124         end
7125     else
7126         if d == 'an' or d == 'l' then
7127             if nodes[q][3] then -- nil except after an explicit dir
7128                 state.sim = item -- so we move sim 'inside' the group
7129             else
7130                 state.sim = state.sim or item

```

```

7131     end
7132     state.eim = item
7133     elseif d == 'r' and state.sim then
7134         head, state = insert_implicit(head, state, outer)
7135     elseif d == 'r' then
7136         state.sim, state.eim = nil, nil
7137     end
7138 end
7139
7140 if isdir then
7141     last = d          -- Don't search back - best save now
7142 elseif d == 'on' and state.san then
7143     state.san = state.san or item
7144     state.ean = item
7145 end
7146
7147 end
7148
7149 return node.prev(head) or head
7150 end
7151 </basic>

```

## 14 Data for CJK

It is a boring file and it is not shown here (see the generated file), but here is a sample:

```

[0x0021]={c='ex'},
[0x0024]={c='pr'},
[0x0025]={c='po'},
[0x0028]={c='op'},
[0x0029]={c='cp'},
[0x002B]={c='pr'},

```

For the meaning of these codes, see the Unicode standard.

## 15 The ‘nil’ language

This ‘language’ does nothing, except setting the hyphenation patterns to nohyphenation.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```

7152 <nil>
7153 \ProvidesLanguage{nil}[<<date>> <<version>> Nil language]
7154 \LdfInit{nil}{datenil}

```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `nil` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known.

```

7155 \ifx\l@nil\undefined
7156   \newlanguage\l@nil
7157   \@namedef{bbl@hyphendata@the\l@nil}{}{}% Remove warning
7158   \let\bbl@elt\relax
7159   \edef\bbl@languages{% Add it to the list of languages
7160     \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{nil}{the\l@nil}{}{}
7161 \fi

```

This macro is used to store the values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

```
7162 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\m@ne\m@ne}
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the ‘nil’ language.

```
\captionnil
\datenil
7163 \let\captionnil\@empty
7164 \let\datenil\@empty
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
7165 \ldf@finish{nil}
7166 \</nil>
```

## 16 Support for Plain T<sub>E</sub>X (plain.def)

### 16.1 Not renaming hyphen.tex

As Don Knuth has declared that the filename `hyphen.tex` may only be used to designate *his* version of the american English hyphenation patterns, a new solution has to be found in order to be able to load hyphenation patterns for other languages in a plain-based T<sub>E</sub>X-format. When asked he responded:

That file name is “sacred”, and if anybody changes it they will cause severe upward/downward compatibility headaches.

People can have a file `localhyphen.tex` or whatever they like, but they mustn’t diddle with `hyphen.tex` (or `plain.tex` except to preload additional fonts).

The files `bplain.tex` and `blplain.tex` can be used as replacement wrappers around `plain.tex` and `lplain.tex` to achieve the desired effect, based on the `babel` package. If you load each of them with `iniTEX`, you will get a file called either `bplain.fmt` or `blplain.fmt`, which you can use as replacements for `plain.fmt` and `lplain.fmt`.

As these files are going to be read as the first thing `iniTEX` sees, we need to set some category codes just to be able to change the definition of `\input`.

```
7167 (*bplain | blplain)
7168 \catcode`\{=1 % left brace is begin-group character
7169 \catcode`\}=2 % right brace is end-group character
7170 \catcode`\#=6 % hash mark is macro parameter character
```

If a file called `hyphen.cfg` can be found, we make sure that *it* will be read instead of the file `hyphen.tex`. We do this by first saving the original meaning of `\input` (and I use a one letter control sequence for that so as not to waste multi-letter control sequence on this in the format).

```
7171 \openin 0 hyphen.cfg
7172 \ifeof0
7173 \else
7174 \let\input
```

Then `\input` is defined to forget about its argument and load `hyphen.cfg` instead. Once that’s done the original meaning of `\input` can be restored and the definition of `\a` can be forgotten.

```
7175 \def\input #1 {%
7176 \let\input\input
7177 \a hyphen.cfg
7178 \let\input\undefined
7179 }
7180 \fi
7181 \</bplain | blplain>
```



Now that we have made sure that `hyphen.cfg` will be loaded at the right moment it is time to load `plain.tex`.

```
7182 \bplain\la plain.tex
7183 \bplain\la lplain.tex
```

Finally we change the contents of `\fmtname` to indicate that this is *not* the plain format, but a format based on plain with the `babel` package preloaded.

```
7184 \bplain\def\fmtname{babel-plain}
7185 \bplain\def\fmtname{babel-lplain}
```

When you are using a different format, based on `plain.tex` you can make a copy of `blplain.tex`, rename it and replace `plain.tex` with the name of your format file.

## 16.2 Emulating some $\text{\LaTeX}$ features

The file `babel.def` expects some definitions made in the  $\text{\LaTeX}_{2\epsilon}$  style file. So, in Plain we must provide at least some predefined values as well some tools to set them (even if not all options are available). There are no package options, and therefore an alternative mechanism is provided. For the moment, only `\babeloptionstrings` and `\babeloptionmath` are provided, which can be defined before loading `babel`. `\BabelModifiers` can be set too (but not sure it works).

```
7186 \langle\langle *Emulate LaTeX \rangle\rangle \equiv
7187 \def\@empty{}
7188 \def\loadlocalcfg#1{%
7189   \openin0#1.cfg
7190   \ifeof0
7191     \closein0
7192   \else
7193     \closein0
7194     {\immediate\write16{*****}%
7195      \immediate\write16{* Local config file #1.cfg used}%
7196      \immediate\write16{*}%
7197     }
7198     \input #1.cfg\relax
7199   \fi
7200 \endofldef}
```

## 16.3 General tools

A number of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macro's that are needed later on.

```
7201 \long\def\@firstofone#1{#1}
7202 \long\def\@firstoftwo#1#2{#1}
7203 \long\def\@secondoftwo#1#2{#2}
7204 \def\@nnil{\@nil}
7205 \def\@gobbletwo#1#2{}
7206 \def\@ifstar#1{\@ifnextchar *{\@firstoftwo{#1}}}
7207 \def\@star@or@long#1{%
7208   \@ifstar
7209   {\let\l@ngrel@x\relax#1}%
7210   {\let\l@ngrel@x\long#1}}
7211 \let\l@ngrel@x\relax
7212 \def\@car#1#2\@nil{#1}
7213 \def\@cdr#1#2\@nil{#2}
7214 \let\@typeset@protect\relax
7215 \let\protected@edef\edef
7216 \long\def\@gobble#1{}
7217 \edef\@backslashchar{\expandafter\@gobble\string\}
7218 \def\strip@prefix#1>{}
7219 \def\g@addto@macro#1#2{%
```

```

7220 \toks@\expandafter{#1#2}%
7221 \xdef#1{\the\toks@}}
7222 \def\@namedef#1{\expandafter\def\csname #1\endcsname}
7223 \def\@nameuse#1{\csname #1\endcsname}
7224 \def\@ifundefined#1{%
7225 \expandafter\ifx\csname#1\endcsname\relax
7226 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
7227 \else
7228 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
7229 \fi}
7230 \def\@expandtwoargs#1#2#3{%
7231 \edef\reserved@a{\noexpand#1{#2}{#3}}\reserved@a}
7232 \def\zap@space#1 #2{%
7233 #1%
7234 \ifx#2\@empty\else\expandafter\zap@space\fi
7235 #2}
7236 \let\bbl@trace\@gobble
7237 \def\bbl@error#1#2{%
7238 \begingroup
7239 \newlinechar=`^^J
7240 \def\{^^J(babel) }%
7241 \errhelp{#2}\errmessage{\#1}%
7242 \endgroup}
7243 \def\bbl@warning#1{%
7244 \begingroup
7245 \newlinechar=`^^J
7246 \def\{^^J(babel) }%
7247 \message{\#1}%
7248 \endgroup}
7249 \let\bbl@infowarn\bbl@warning
7250 \def\bbl@info#1{%
7251 \begingroup
7252 \newlinechar=`^^J
7253 \def\{^^J}%
7254 \wlog{#1}%
7255 \endgroup}

```

$\text{\LaTeX 2}_\epsilon$  has the command `\@onlypreamble` which adds commands to a list of commands that are no longer needed after `\begin{document}`.

```

7256 \ifx\@preamblecmds\@undefined
7257 \def\@preamblecmds{}
7258 \fi
7259 \def\@onlypreamble#1{%
7260 \expandafter\gdef\expandafter\@preamblecmds\expandafter{%
7261 \@preamblecmds\do#1}}
7262 \@onlypreamble\@onlypreamble

```

Mimick  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's `\AtBeginDocument`; for this to work the user needs to add `\begindocument` to his file.

```

7263 \def\begindocument{%
7264 \@begindocumenthook
7265 \global\let\@begindocumenthook\@undefined
7266 \def\do##1{\global\let##1\@undefined}%
7267 \@preamblecmds
7268 \global\let\do\noexpand}
7269 \ifx\@begindocumenthook\@undefined
7270 \def\@begindocumenthook{}
7271 \fi
7272 \@onlypreamble\@begindocumenthook
7273 \def\AtBeginDocument{\g@addto@macro\@begindocumenthook}

```

We also have to mimick  $\LaTeX$ 's `\AtEndOfPackage`. Our replacement macro is much simpler; it stores its argument in `\@endofldf`.

```
7274 \def\AtEndOfPackage#1{\g@addto@macro\@endofldf{#1}}
7275 \@onlypreamble\AtEndOfPackage
7276 \def\@endofldf{}
7277 \@onlypreamble\@endofldf
7278 \let\bbl@afterlang\@empty
7279 \chardef\bbl@opt@hyphenmap\z@
```

$\LaTeX$  needs to be able to switch off writing to its auxiliary files; plain doesn't have them by default. There is a trick to hide some conditional commands from the outer `\ifx`. The same trick is applied below.

```
7280 \catcode`\&=\z@
7281 \ifx&\if@files\@undefined
7282   \expandafter\let\csname if@files\expandafter\endcsname
7283     \csname iffalse\endcsname
7284 \fi
7285 \catcode`\&=4
```

Mimick  $\LaTeX$ 's commands to define control sequences.

```
7286 \def\newcommand{\@star@or@long\new@command}
7287 \def\new@command#1{%
7288   \@testopt{\@newcommand#1}0}
7289 \def\@newcommand#1[#2]{%
7290   \@ifnextchar [{\@xargdef#1[#2]}%
7291     {\@argdef#1[#2]}}
7292 \long\def\@argdef#1[#2]#3{%
7293   \@yargdef#1\@ne{#2}{#3}}
7294 \long\def\@xargdef#1[#2][#3]#4{%
7295   \expandafter\def\expandafter#1\expandafter{%
7296     \expandafter\@protected@testopt\expandafter #1%
7297     \csname\string#1\expandafter\endcsname{#3}}%
7298   \expandafter\@yargdef \csname\string#1\endcsname
7299   \tw@{#2}{#4}}
7300 \long\def\@yargdef#1#2#3{%
7301   \@tempcnta#3\relax
7302   \advance \@tempcnta \@ne
7303   \let\@hash@\relax
7304   \edef\reserved@a{\ifx#2\tw@ [\@hash@1]\fi}%
7305   \@tempcntb #2%
7306   \@whilenum \@tempcntb < \@tempcnta
7307   \do{%
7308     \edef\reserved@a{\reserved@a\@hash@\the\@tempcntb}%
7309     \advance\@tempcntb \@ne}%
7310   \let\@hash@###
7311   \l@ngrel@x\expandafter\def\expandafter#1\reserved@a}
7312 \def\providecommand{\@star@or@long\provide@command}
7313 \def\provide@command#1{%
7314   \begingroup
7315     \escapechar\m@ne\xdef\@gtempa{\string#1}%
7316   \endgroup
7317   \expandafter\ifundefined\@gtempa
7318     {\def\reserved@a{\newcommand#1}}%
7319     {\let\reserved@a\relax
7320     \def\reserved@a{\newcommand\reserved@a}%
7321     \reserved@a}%
7322 \def\DeclareRobustCommand{\@star@or@long\declare@robustcommand}
7323 \def\declare@robustcommand#1{%
```

```

7324 \edef\reserved@a{\string#1}%
7325 \def\reserved@b{#1}%
7326 \edef\reserved@b{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\reserved@b}%
7327 \edef#1{%
7328     \ifx\reserved@a\reserved@b
7329         \noexpand\x@protect
7330         \noexpand#1%
7331     \fi
7332     \noexpand\protect
7333     \expandafter\noexpand\csname
7334         \expandafter\@gobble\string#1 \endcsname
7335 }%
7336 \expandafter\new@command\csname
7337     \expandafter\@gobble\string#1 \endcsname
7338 }
7339 \def\x@protect#1{%
7340     \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect\else
7341         \@x@protect#1%
7342     \fi
7343 }
7344 \catcode`\&=\z@ % Trick to hide conditionals
7345 \def\@x@protect#1&fi#2#3{&fi\protect#1}

```

The following little macro `\in@` is taken from `latex.ltx`; it checks whether its first argument is part of its second argument. It uses the boolean `\in@`; allocating a new boolean inside conditionally executed code is not possible, hence the construct with the temporary definition of `\bbl@tempa`.

```

7346 \def\bbl@tempa{\csname newif\endcsname&ifin@}
7347 \catcode`\&=4
7348 \ifx\in@\@undefined
7349     \def\in@#1#2{%
7350         \def\in@@##1#1##2##3\in@@{%
7351             \ifx\in@##2\in@false\else\in@true\fi}%
7352         \in@@#2#1\in@\in@@}
7353 \else
7354     \let\bbl@tempa\@empty
7355 \fi
7356 \bbl@tempa

```

$\text{\LaTeX}$  has a macro to check whether a certain package was loaded with specific options. The command has two extra arguments which are code to be executed in either the true or false case. This is used to detect whether the document needs one of the accents to be activated (activegrave and activeacute). For plain  $\text{\TeX}$  we assume that the user wants them to be active by default. Therefore the only thing we do is execute the third argument (the code for the true case).

```

7357 \def\@ifpackagewith#1#2#3#4{#3}

```

The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macro `\@ifl@aded` checks whether a file was loaded. This functionality is not needed for plain  $\text{\TeX}$  but we need the macro to be defined as a no-op.

```

7358 \def\@ifl@aded#1#2#3#4{}

```

For the following code we need to make sure that the commands `\newcommand` and `\providecommand` exist with some sensible definition. They are not fully equivalent to their  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_\epsilon$  versions; just enough to make things work in plain  $\text{\TeX}$  environments.

```

7359 \ifx\@tempcnta\@undefined
7360     \csname newcount\endcsname\@tempcnta\relax
7361 \fi
7362 \ifx\@tempcntb\@undefined
7363     \csname newcount\endcsname\@tempcntb\relax
7364 \fi

```

To prevent wasting two counters in  $\TeX$  (because counters with the same name are allocated later by it) we reset the counter that holds the next free counter (`\count10`).

```

7365 \ifx\bye\@undefined
7366   \advance\count10 by -2\relax
7367 \fi
7368 \ifx\@ifnextchar\@undefined
7369   \def\@ifnextchar#1#2#3{%
7370     \let\reserved@d=#1%
7371     \def\reserved@a{#2}\def\reserved@b{#3}%
7372     \futurelet\@let@token\@ifnch}
7373   \def\@ifnch{%
7374     \ifx\@let@token\@sptoken
7375       \let\reserved@c\@xifnch
7376     \else
7377       \ifx\@let@token\reserved@d
7378         \let\reserved@c\reserved@a
7379       \else
7380         \let\reserved@c\reserved@b
7381       \fi
7382     \fi
7383     \reserved@c}
7384   \def\:{\let\@sptoken= } \: % this makes \@sptoken a space token
7385   \def\:{\@xifnch} \expandafter\def\:{\futurelet\@let@token\@ifnch}
7386 \fi
7387 \def\@testopt#1#2{%
7388   \@ifnextchar[#{1}{#1[#2]}}
7389 \def\@protected@testopt#1{%
7390   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
7391     \expandafter\@testopt
7392   \else
7393     \@x@protect#1%
7394   \fi}
7395 \long\def\@whilenum#1\do #2{\ifnum #1\relax #2\relax\@iwhilenum{#1\relax
7396   #2\relax}\fi}
7397 \long\def\@iwhilenum#1{\ifnum #1\expandafter\@iwhilenum
7398   \else\expandafter\@gobble\fi{#1}}

```

## 16.4 Encoding related macros

Code from `ltoutenc.dtx`, adapted for use in the plain  $\TeX$  environment.

```

7399 \def\DeclareTextCommand{%
7400   \@dec@text@cmd\providecommand
7401 }
7402 \def\ProvideTextCommand{%
7403   \@dec@text@cmd\providecommand
7404 }
7405 \def\DeclareTextSymbol#1#2#3{%
7406   \@dec@text@cmd\chardef#1{#2}#3\relax
7407 }
7408 \def\@dec@text@cmd#1#2#3{%
7409   \expandafter\def\expandafter#2%
7410     \expandafter{%
7411       \csname#3-cmd\expandafter\endcsname
7412       \expandafter#2%
7413       \csname#3\string#2\endcsname
7414     }%
7415 %   \let\@ifdefinable\@rc@ifdefinable
7416   \expandafter#1\csname#3\string#2\endcsname

```

```

7417 }
7418 \def\@current@cmd#1{%
7419   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect\else
7420     \noexpand#1\expandafter\@gobble
7421   \fi
7422 }
7423 \def\@changed@cmd#1#2{%
7424   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
7425     \expandafter\ifx\csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname\relax
7426       \expandafter\ifx\csname ?\string#1\endcsname\relax
7427         \expandafter\def\csname ?\string#1\endcsname{%
7428           \@changed@x@err{#1}%
7429         }%
7430       \fi
7431     \global\expandafter\let
7432       \csname\cf@encoding\string#1\expandafter\endcsname
7433       \csname ?\string#1\endcsname
7434     \fi
7435     \csname\cf@encoding\string#1%
7436     \expandafter\endcsname
7437   \else
7438     \noexpand#1%
7439   \fi
7440 }
7441 \def\@changed@x@err#1{%
7442   \errhelp{Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}%
7443   \errmessage{Command \protect#1 undefined in encoding \cf@encoding}%
7444 \def\DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{%
7445   \DeclareTextCommand#1?%
7446 }
7447 \def\ProvideTextCommandDefault#1{%
7448   \ProvideTextCommand#1?%
7449 }
7450 \expandafter\let\csname OT1-cmd\endcsname\@current@cmd
7451 \expandafter\let\csname?-cmd\endcsname\@changed@cmd
7452 \def\DeclareTextAccent#1#2#3{%
7453   \DeclareTextCommand#1{#2}[1]{\accent#3 #1}
7454 }
7455 \def\DeclareTextCompositeCommand#1#2#3#4{%
7456   \expandafter\let\expandafter\reserved@a\csname#2\string#1\endcsname
7457   \edef\reserved@b{\string##1}%
7458   \edef\reserved@c{%
7459     \expandafter\@strip@args\meaning\reserved@a:-\@strip@args}%
7460   \ifx\reserved@b\reserved@c
7461     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\ifx
7462       \expandafter\@car\reserved@a\relax\relax\@nil
7463     \@text@composite
7464   \else
7465     \edef\reserved@b##1{%
7466       \def\expandafter\noexpand
7467         \csname#2\string#1\endcsname###1{%
7468           \noexpand\@text@composite
7469             \expandafter\noexpand\csname#2\string#1\endcsname
7470             ###1\noexpand\empty\noexpand\@text@composite
7471             {##1}%
7472         }%
7473       }%
7474     \expandafter\reserved@b\expandafter{\reserved@a{##1}}%
7475   \fi

```

```

7476 \expandafter\def\csname\expandafter\string\csname
7477 #2\endcsname\string#1-\string#3\endcsname{#4}
7478 \else
7479 \errhelp{Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}%
7480 \errmessage{\string\DeclareTextCompositeCommand\space used on
7481 inappropriate command \protect#1}
7482 \fi
7483 }
7484 \def\@text@composite#1#2#3\@text@composite{%
7485 \expandafter\@text@composite@x
7486 \csname\string#1-\string#2\endcsname
7487 }
7488 \def\@text@composite@x#1#2{%
7489 \ifx#1\relax
7490 #2%
7491 \else
7492 #1%
7493 \fi
7494 }
7495 %
7496 \def\@strip@args#1:#2-#3\@strip@args{#2}
7497 \def\DeclareTextComposite#1#2#3#4{%
7498 \def\reserved@a{\DeclareTextCompositeCommand#1{#2}{#3}}%
7499 \bgroup
7500 \lccode`\@=#4%
7501 \lowercase{%
7502 \egroup
7503 \reserved@a @%
7504 }%
7505 }
7506 %
7507 \def\UseTextSymbol#1#2{#2}
7508 \def\UseTextAccent#1#2#3{}
7509 \def\@use@text@encoding#1{}
7510 \def\DeclareTextSymbolDefault#1#2{%
7511 \DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{\UseTextSymbol{#2}#1}%
7512 }
7513 \def\DeclareTextAccentDefault#1#2{%
7514 \DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{\UseTextAccent{#2}#1}%
7515 }
7516 \def\cf@encoding{OT1}

```

Currently we only use the  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_\epsilon$  method for accents for those that are known to be made active in *some* language definition file.

```

7517 \DeclareTextAccent{"}{OT1}{127}
7518 \DeclareTextAccent{'}{OT1}{19}
7519 \DeclareTextAccent{^}{OT1}{94}
7520 \DeclareTextAccent`}{OT1}{18}
7521 \DeclareTextAccent{~}{OT1}{126}

```

The following control sequences are used in `babel.def` but are not defined for `PLAIN TEX`.

```

7522 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquotedblleft}{OT1}{92}
7523 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquotedblright}{OT1}{93}
7524 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquoteleft}{OT1}{96}
7525 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquoteright}{OT1}{97}
7526 \DeclareTextSymbol{\i}{OT1}{16}
7527 \DeclareTextSymbol{\ss}{OT1}{25}

```

For a couple of languages we need the  $\text{\LaTeX}$ -control sequence `\scriptsize` to be available. Because plain  $\text{T}_\text{E}\text{X}$  doesn't have such a sophisticated font mechanism as  $\text{\LaTeX}$  has, we just `\let` it to `\sevenrm`.

```

7528 \ifx\scriptsize\@undefined
7529   \let\scriptsize\sevenrm
7530 \fi

And a few more “dummy” definitions.

7531 \def\language{english}%
7532 \let\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil
7533 \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#2}%
7534 \let\bbl@language@opts\@empty
7535 \ifx\babeloptionstrings\@undefined
7536   \let\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil
7537 \else
7538   \let\bbl@opt@strings\babeloptionstrings
7539 \fi
7540 \def\BabelStringsDefault{generic}
7541 \def\bbl@tempa{normal}
7542 \ifx\babeloptionmath\bbl@tempa
7543   \def\bbl@mathnormal{\noexpand\textormath}
7544 \fi
7545 \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1#2{}
7546 \ifx\BabelModifiers\@undefined\let\BabelModifiers\relax\fi
7547 \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
7548 \def\bbl@opt@safe{BR}
7549 \ifx\@uclclist\@undefined\let\@uclclist\@empty\fi
7550 \ifx\bbl@trace\@undefined\def\bbl@trace#1{}\fi
7551 \expandafter\newif\csname ifbbl@single\endcsname
7552 \chardef\bbl@bidimode\z@
7553 <</Emulate LaTeX>>

A proxy file:

7554 <plain>
7555 \input babel.def
7556 </plain>

```

## Acknowledgements

I would like to thank all who volunteered as  $\beta$ -testers for their time. Michel Goossens supplied contributions for most of the other languages. Nico Poppelier helped polish the text of the documentation and supplied parts of the macros for the Dutch language. Paul Wackers and Werenfried Spit helped find and repair bugs. During the further development of the babel system I received much help from Bernd Raichle, for which I am grateful.

## References

- [1] Huda Smitshuijzen Abifares, *Arabic Typography*, Saqi, 2001.
- [2] Johannes Braams, Victor Eijkhout and Nico Poppelier, *The development of national  $\TeX$  styles*, *TUGboat* 10 (1989) #3, p. 401–406.
- [3] Yannis Haralambous, *Fonts & Encodings*, O’Reilly, 2007.
- [4] Donald E. Knuth, *The  $\TeX$ book*, Addison-Wesley, 1986.
- [5] Jukka K. Korpela, *Unicode Explained*, O’Reilly, 2006.
- [6] Leslie Lamport,  *$\TeX$ , A document preparation System*, Addison-Wesley, 1986.
- [7] Leslie Lamport, in:  $\TeX$ hax Digest, Volume 89, #13, 17 February 1989.
- [8] Ken Lunde, *CJKV Information Processing*, O’Reilly, 2nd ed., 2009.
- [9] Hubert Partl, *German  $\TeX$* , *TUGboat* 9 (1988) #1, p. 70–72.



- [10] Joachim Schrod, *International  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is ready to use*, *TUGboat* 11 (1990) #1, p. 87–90.
- [11] Apostolos Syropoulos, Antonis Tsolomitis and Nick Sofroniu, *Digital typography using  $\text{\LaTeX}$* , Springer, 2002, p. 301–373.
- [12] K.F. Treebus. *Tekstwijzer, een gids voor het grafisch verwerken van tekst*, SDU Uitgeverij ('s-Gravenhage, 1988).